

COMPLETE INDIAN HISTORY FOR IAS EXAM

INSIGHT IAS
ACADEMY

For IAS Aspirants



www.PunjabiLibrary.com

CONTENT

PART - I

ANCIENT INDIA

Sl.No. Topic Page No.

1. Stone Age in India 1 – 2
2. Chalcolithic Cultures (2800 BC – 700 BC) 3 – 4
3. Indus Valley Civilisation 5 – 7
4. The Vedic Age 8 – 13
5. The Mahajanapadas 14 – 22
6. Buddhism 23 – 27
7. Jainism 28 – 30
8. Various Heterodox Sects (600 BC – 300 BC) 31 – 32
9. Six Systems of Philosophy 33 – 34
10. Mauryan Period 35 – 46
11. Post Mauryan Period (200 BC – 300 BC) 47 – 53
12. The Gupta Age 54 – 60
13. Harshavardhana 61 – 63
14. Art & Architecture 64 – 66
15. Inscriptions 67 – 75
16. Miscellaneous Issues 76 – 80

PART - II

SOUTH INDIA

1. The Sangam Age 81 – 88
2. The Satavahanas 89 – 91
3. The Pallavas 92
4. The Chalukyas of Badami 93
5. The Rastrakutas 94 – 95
6. Chola Kingdom 96 – 99
7. The Vijayanagar Empire 100 – 101
8. The Bahamani Kingdom 102
9. Marathas 103 – 108

PART - III

MEDIEVAL INDIA

1. The Delhi Sultanate
2. The Mughal Empire [109 – 125](#) [126 – 147](#)

PART - IV

MODERN INDIA

1. Later Mughals
2. Marathas
3. European Trading Companies
4. Governor Generals
[148 – 153](#)
[154 – 163](#)
[164 – 169](#)
[170 – 186](#)
5. Revolutionary Terrorists Movement 187 – 192
6. Socio-Religious Reform Movements 193 – 216
7. Revolts of 1857 217 – 221
8. Indian National Movement 222 – 257
9. Circumstances leading to Partition of India 258 – 261
10. India 1947 – 64 262 – 269

PART – I ANCIENT INDIA

1

STONE AGE IN INDIA

PALAEOLITHIC AGE

The earliest phase of human life in India is known as the Palaeolithic age. It was the period of the emergence of primitive man and the manufacturing of unpolished chipped stone tools. It commenced about 1.5 million to 2 million years ago and had continued until about 8000 BC. For the convenience of the study it has been divided into three sub phases i.e. the lower Palaeolithic age, middle Palaeolithic age and the upper Palaeolithic age. **Lower Palaeolithic Age** This age marks the beginning of human life in India. During this period the earliest human being came down of trees and started living on the ground. Its characteristic feature was the use of hand axes, cleavers and choppers. The tools were made of stone and the tools were used mainly for chopping, digging and skinning in this period. The lower Palaeolithic sites are found in the valley of river Sohan in Punjab (now in Pakistan), Belan Valley in Mirzapur District in Uttar Pradesh. Some sites have also been found in the desert area of Didwana in Rajasthan, in the Valley of river Narmada and in the caves and rock Shelters of Bhimbetka near Bhopal in Madhya Pradesh. The lower Palaeolithic industries were mainly based upon the technique of Core tools.

Middle Palaeolithic Age

The Middle Palaeolithic industries were mainly based upon flakes. These Flakes have been found in different parts of India and show regional variations. The principal tools are varieties of blades, points, borers and scrapers. The geographical horizon of the Middle Palaeolithic sites coincides roughly with that of the Lower Palaeolithic sites. The artefacts of this age are also found at several places in the south of Tungbhadra River. **Upper Palaeolithic Age**

The Upper Palaeolithic phase coincided with the last phase of the great Ice Age when climate became comparatively warm. This marks the appearance of new flint industries and of men of the modern type (*Homo sapiens*). The use of blades and burins have also been found in Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra, central Madhya Pradesh, southern Uttar Pradesh, south Bihar

plateau and the adjoining areas. An Upper Palaeolithic assemblage, characterised by comparatively larger flakes, blades, burins and scrapers has also been found in the upper levels of the Gujarat dunes. Palaeolithic sites are found in many hilly slopes and river valleys of the country. They are absent in the alluvial plains of the Indus and the Ganga.

The people of Palaeolithic ages practiced painting. Prehistoric art appears at several places but Bhimbetka in Madhya Pradesh is a striking site. The rock paintings extend from the Palaeolithic to the Mesolithic period. Many bird animals and human beings are painted. In the northern spurs of the Vindhya and in the Belan valley all the three phases of the Palaeolithic followed by the Mesolithic and then by the Neolithic have been found in sequence and so is the case with the middle part of the Narmada valley.

Since the Palaeolithic man used only Quartz stone for making the tools, hence the Palaeolithic man is also known as Quartzite man.

The Palaeolithic man lived on hunting and food gathering. He had no knowledge of cultivation.

MESOLITHIC AGE

In about 10000 B.C. began an intermediate stage in Stone Age culture, which is called the Mesolithic Age. It is considered as a transitional phase between the Palaeolithic and the Neolithic. The Mesolithic people lived on hunting, fishing and food gathering. At a later stage they also domesticated animals. The characteristic tools of the Mesolithic Age are microliths.

The Mesolithic sites are found in good numbers in Rajasthan, Southern Uttar Pradesh, Central and eastern India and also south of the river Krishna. Of them Bagor in Rajasthan is very well excavated. Adamgarh in Madhya Pradesh and Bagor in Rajasthan provide the earliest evidence of the domestication of animals.

NEOLITHIC AGE

The early pastoral & agricultural communities emerged in different parts of India at periods. The earliest pastoral & agricultural communities emerged in Belan Valley region in UP. Koldihawa, Mahagara & Chopani-Mando are important sites in this region.

The Belan Valley culture shows an advanced sedentary life characterized by well-defined family units, standard pottery tradition and specialized tool types e.g. Celts, Adzes, and Chisels. Excavations have shown that the inhabitants of

this region domesticated animals like cattle, sheep, goat and horse. The Belan Valley Agriculturists produced rice around 7000BC–6000 BC. Chopani-Mando provides the earliest evidence of the use of pottery around 9000–8000 BC.

In north-western region of India sub-continent the earliest evidence of pastoral & agricultural communities comes from Mehargarh situated on the bank of river Bolan in the Kachhi Plain of Baluchistan. Neolithic people of Mehrgarh were more advanced than their contemporaries in other parts of Indian sub-continent. Archaeological excavations carried out in this region indicate that the agriculture & domestication of animals began in this region around 5000 BC. Excavations also reveal long period of cultural evolution beginning with pre-pottery Neolithic age. The production pattern was marked by mixed farming which rested on farming & herding. This was supplemented by hunting. Excavations reveal that the people of this region cultivated two varieties of barley & three varieties of wheat. Charred seeds of plum & date also have been found. Excavations have also yielded bones of animals like cattle, goat, sheep which indicate domestication of animals. The tools used by the people in this region included the stone axe, stone edges and microliths of typical blade industry. In northern region of India the Carbon14 dating fixes up a time range of 2500 BC–1500 BC for the emergence of the early pastoral & agricultural communities. The cultural life was marked by village settlements in Kashmir Valley. Burzahom & Gufkaral are the two representative sites. Excavations have yielded information about Neolithic phase. Neolithic phase has been categorized into two stages at Burzahom and three stages at Gufkaral. Excavations have also yielded great number of typical bone tools, grains of wheat, pea, barley and bones of animals such as goat, sheep, cattle etc.

Excavations provide an indication of predominantly hunting economy in beginning and later developing into agricultural economy. Pastoral & Agriculture communities were characterized by Pit Dwellings. Dog Burial is a characteristic feature of Gufkaral and Burzahom. The people of Burzahom used coarse grey pottery. In Mid Ganga Valley Region the sedentary village settlements emerged much later around 2000-1600 BC. Excavations at Chirand, Chechar and Senuwar etc. throw light on sedentary life pattern of this region. Excavations indicate cultivation of rice, barley, pea and wheat. Chirand & Senuwar have yielded large number of remarkable bone tools. Excavations at Chirand have yielded structural remains of mud floors, microliths, pottery and semi-precious stones.

In eastern India the early farmers emerged in Assam region around 2000 BC.

Early farming communal life of the region was characterized by celts, small axes and pottery.

CHALCOLITHIC CULTURES (2800 BC – 700 BC)

By the beginning of third millennium B.C several regional cultures, characterized by the use of stone and copper tools, sprang up in different parts of the Indian subcontinent. These were non-urban and non-Harappans. Hence, these cultures are termed as Chalcolithic cultures.

The Chalcolithic cultures are identified on the basis of their geographical location. These cultures included the Banas Culture (located in the Banas basin) in Rajasthan, the Kayatha Culture (type site Kayatha on the bank of river Kalisindh) and represented by other sites in other sites in central India (in the Narmada, Tapi and Mahi valleys.), Malwa Culture (Malwa and extending into other parts of Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra) and the Jorwe Culture (Maharashtra).

Daimabad and Inamgaon were the biggest settlements of Chalcolithic culture. Chalcolithic people were the first to use **Painted pottery**. The old name of Ahar is **Tambavati**.

ECONOMIC LIFE

Economic life of these cultures was associated with agriculture and cattle rearing. The archaeological evidences indicate that this was supplemented by wild game & fishery. Excavations at various sites reveal cultivation of a variety of crops. Barley was the main crop. Besides wheat, rice, gram, pea, Bajra, Jowar etc. too were cultivated. Archaeological evidences from Inamgaon establish the knowledge of the inhabitants about crop rotation, harvesting and irrigation. Certain references of use of ploughshare are also present. Excavations have also shown that the people domesticated animals like cattle, goat, sheep, dog, horse etc. Besides certain references are there about wild animals like various types of deer, buffalo, rhino. Excavations at certain sites have also yielded bones of fish, turtle, etc. This shows that people consumed all these.

RELIGIOUS BELIEFS

Various findings in excavations throw light on religious outlook of people and

their religious practices. Excavations rarely give any indication male gods. Three male figurines of clay discovered from Inamgaon provide some indication of male gods. Female figures of clay, both baked and unbaked, have been discovered; besides a headless female figure from Nevasa and terracotta female figurines from Inamgaon too have been discovered. This suggests that people worshipped mother goddess. A figure of the mother goddess, similar to that found in western Asia, has been found in Inamgaon.

Excavations also throw light on practices of disposal of dead. Burial was a common custom. Burying of dead in north-south orientation has been revealed by excavations. There are evidences of pit-burial also. A typical custom shown by excavations was burying the dead in the precincts of the house; besides cutting off the feet before the burial too show a peculiar outlook of the people (Jorwe Culture). The dead were buried with various objects like personal ornaments.

POTTERY TRADITION

Pottery was painted and was mostly black on red. The Jorwe Pottery is painted black-on-red and special forms are bowls, jars and globular vases. It is also remarkable for almost total absence of thali. Common types are bowls, dishes, basins, globular jars etc.

The Ahar Pottery shows seven varieties but the most important type being black on red ware painted in white. The Malwa Pottery possesses buff slip and various patterns are displayed in black or dark brown colour, small goblets being an important feature of the Malwa Pottery. The Kayatha Pottery is marked by three types—Red slipped ware painted in dark brown, Red painted buff ware and a combed ware. The Rangpur Pottery is known as lustrous red ware. It is derived from Harappan red and black ware, black colour was used for painting.

SOCIAL STRUCTURE

These regional Chalcolithic cultures were characterised by emergence of hierarchical pattern in social organisation. This also gives indication that the concept of social stratification was prevalent. Distribution patterns of various sites suggest existence of some kind of administrative authority. Existence of structures such as rampart, granaries, and embankment too suggest existence of some kind of administrative authority.

The burial of a large number of children in western Maharashtra shows some

weakness of Chalcolithic cultures.

PATTERN OF SETTLEMENT

Excavations of various sites suggest that distribution pattern was characterised by regional centres and village settlements. This is suggestive of existence of some kind of hierarchical system. Excavations also reveal various structures like fortification, granaries, embankment etc. (at Eran of Malwa Culture and at Inamgaon of Jorwe Culture).

The distinctive house pattern in various sites was rectangular and circular. Walls made up of mud and thatched roof were the characteristic feature of the houses in most of the sites. So far as the size of the houses is concerned, it varied from place to place. The house pattern in Ahar Culture was marked by use of mud, use of timber, fairly large size, longer axis being north-south and shorter being east-west, simple furnishing and Chullahs etc. The Malwa Houses at Daimabad, Inamgaon, and Navdatoli are large in size having partition wall made up of mud. Chullahs are common. The Jorwe Settlement is characterised by presence of a large centre in each region. House pattern shows social differentiation-houses of prosperous farmers being larger and in the central part and houses of the artisans situated in western outlying areas. Jorwe houses were large and rectangular in shape and were characterised by low mud walls.

3

INDUS VALLEY CIVILISATION

INTRODUCTION

- Till the beginning of 20th century it was believed that Indian history began with the Vedic Culture. But this belief was shattered with discovery of Indus Valley Civilisation.
- The Archaeological excavations during the early decades of 20th century brought to light an extensive Civilisation which flourished in Indian sub continent around the later half of 3rd millennium before Christ.
- Analyses of the archaeological findings from different sites belonging to Indus Valley Civilisation have established that IVC was contemporary of Egyptian, Assyrian and Mesopotamian Civilisations.
- The Mesopotamian used to call the Indus region as Meluha.
- This Civilisation was much extensive than any of its contemporary Civilisations which lived around 3rd millennium B.C. in different parts of the world. The total geographical area covered by IVC was more than 20 times of the area of Egyptian Civilisation and more than 12 times of the area of Egyptian and Mesopotamian Civilisations together.
- Till now almost 1400 settlements belonging to Indus Valley Civilisation have been discovered. This civilisation extended over a wide area of about 12, 99,600 sq. kms. The north-south spread of this civilisation was 1600 kms and the east-west spread was 1400 kms.
- During its peak the Indus Valley Civilisation covered parts of Baluchistan province, Punjab, Sind, Haryana, Gujrat, Rajasthan and parts of western Uttar Pradesh.
- The most of the IVC settlements (about 70%) were located in valley of Sarasvati river system which is extinct today. The river Sarasvati was known by the name of Ghaggar in Punjab and Hakra in Baluchistan region.
- Initially this civilisation was given the name of Indus Valley Civilisation (by John Marshal) because it was believed that the spread was limited to the valley of the Indus river. But during 1950s, 1970s and 1980s many new settlements belonging to IVC were discovered in Gujrat, Rajasthan and western U.P. After

these new discoveries the old name became irrelevant. So the new name i.e. Harappan Civilisation was adopted.

DISCOVERY OF INDUS VALLEY CIVILISATION

- Earliest reference about this civilisation was made by Charles Masson. He was an engineer in the service of East India Company. While building a road in western Punjab he came across the mound of Harappa and discovered some unidentified material in 1826 AD.
- In 1831 AD Alexander Burns visited the site of Harappa and reported the existence of a ruined citadel on left bank of river Ravi.
- In 1853 AD Gen. Alexander Cunningham carried out excavation in the region on the basis of the data provided by the Chinese Buddhist chronicles. He discovered some fragments of pots and some seals.
- Gen. Alexander Cunningham again carried out further excavations in 1873 AD and discovered some more material.
- In 1875 AD Alexander Cunningham prepared a report about the material remains he had discovered. This was the first report about Indus Civilisation. He identified Harappa with *po-fa-to* or *po-fa-to-do* mentioned by Hieun-Tsang.
- In 1886 AD M. L. Dames also published a report about the Harappan seals.
- In 1912 AD J.F. Fleet published a report about the findings from Harappa and its surroundings in the journal of Royal Asiatic Society. But Cunningham and Fleet failed to perceive the true antiquity of the material remains. They believed that the remains belonged to some historical period.
- Under the guidance of Sir John Marshall, the Director General of Archaeology excavations were carried out at various places during the second decade of 20th century.
- In 1922 AD Rai Bahadur Daya Ram Sahni discovered some seals, painted pottery and terracotta figurines from Harappa.
- In 1923 AD R.D. Banerjee also discovered one seal from Mohanjodaro. On further digging he discovered some more seals. Till now such kind of seals had been discovered only at Harappa.
- Sir John Marshall analyzed the findings from both the places and concluded that these seals and pottery did not belong to any civilisation known so far. He said that the seals and pottery belong to some ancient Civilisation. He named this ancient Civilisation as Indus Valley Civilisation.
- In 1946 AD R.E. Mortimer Wheeler carried extensive excavations at Harappa

and discovered various articles.

- G.F. Dales bored 11.70 meter deep hole at Mohenjodaro in 1966 AD and brought to light seven successive layers of habitation. This explained that this was destroyed no less than seven times and rebuilt at the same site.
- Amla Nand Ghosh discovered Sothi culture in Bikaner region of Rajasthan in 1953.

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF INDUS VALLEY CIVILISATION

- Indus Valley Civilisation was a Proto-Historic Civilization. This civilisation lived during Bronze Age. It was also an urban civilisation.
- IVC had a well developed pictographic script. This script was written in Boustrophedon style i.e. from right to left and left to right direction alternately.
- The civilization was characterised by large cities, specialised craftsmanship, surplus agriculture and favourable balance of trade.
- IVC was essentially a Riverine civilization i.e. most the settlements were situated on the bank of rivers.
- Indus Valley Civilisation did not witness sudden appearance. It emerged out of the farming communities of Sind & Baluchistan like Nal, Kuli, Zhob, Quetta, Amri, Kot Diji etc. It represented the climax of a long series of cultural evolution.
- IVC was an indigenous civilisation. Its rise was brought about by indigenous elements.
- Various Sub-Harappan Pottery types and their distribution are as follows:
Jhukar Pottery
Ochre-Coloured Pottery Lustrous Red Ware
 - Sind (Buff Ware with red slip & black paintings)
 - Punjab, Haryana & Rajasthan
 - Gujarat
- Mohana people a minority tribe of fishermen living near Mohanjodaro are supposed to be the descendants of the Harappan.
- The Harappans were peace loving people. Among the Harappans the presence of a warrior class is doubtful.
- The Harappans exhibit weak sense of decorative fervour – molasses, frescoes, glazed tiles, stucco work, decorated doorways were all missing. Wood-carving was conspicuously absent from the architectural structures.
- The Harappans channelised river water by building dams not through canals.

- Harappan sites in descending order (the first being the largest) are:
 - (a) Mohanjodaro in Sind (Pak)
 - (b) Ganeriwala in Bahwalpur (Pak)
 - (c) Harappa in West Punjab (Pak)
 - (d) Rakhigarhi in Haryana
 - (e) Dholavira in Gujarat
- The largest Harappan settlement in India is Rakhigarhi in Haryana followed by Dholavira in Gujarat.
- The earliest Sub-Harappan settlement is Prabhas Patan in Gujarat.
- People of Gujrat used to domesticate Elephants.
- The inhabitants knew the use of geometrical designs and the game of dice
- Coexistence of late Harappan pottery and Painted Grey Ware has been revealed by the places **Manda** in J & K & **Dadheri** in Haryana
- The chronology of the Indus civilization has been fixed by Radio Carbon dating (commonly know as C14 method).

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF HARAPPAN CITIES

- Harappan town had great uniformity in town planning; the fundamental lay-out of prominent urban settlements similar to large extent.
- Town planning was based on 'Grid Pattern or chess board pattern. The streets and lanes cut each other at right angles dividing the city into a number of rectangular blocks. Main streets ran from north to south and were as wide as 30 feet. The streets and lanes were not paved.
- Entire city complex was divided into two distinct parts i.e. the Citadel and Lower Town. The Citadel was a fortified area which housed important civic and religious public buildings including granaries and residences of the ruling class and the Lower Town was somewhat bigger in area and was invariably located east of the former. The Lower Town was meant for common public. The Citadel and the Lower Town were separated by a ground.
- The Archaeological excavations at have brought to light evidence of fortification of the lower towns as well at some urban centres like Surkotada and Kalibangan.
- Evidence of division of the city into three parts instead of two had been yielded from Dholavira.
- The Archaeological excavations have indicated that elaborate and planned underground drainage system exited at most of the settlements. This was the

most remarkable feature of town planning. The houses were connected to the main drain equipped with manholes. The drains were mostly made of bricks with lime mortar. The mixture gypsum and lime was used of to make the drains watertight. There were Cesspits inside the houses to deposit solid waste. Bricks culverts meant for carrying rain and storm water have also been found.

- The houses of Harappan people were plain without much decoration. The living pattern did not exhibit any refinement and beauty. So far as the decorative value of the house was concerned they lacked it. In general they were plain and had undecorative look. This shows the utilitarian outlook of Harappan people.
- An average house comprised a courtyard and four to six living rooms, a bedroom, a kitchen, and a well. Presence of staircase gives indication of the second storey. Houses had side lane entrances. Evidence of entrance to house from main road has been discovered only from Lothal. The windows were conspicuously absent.
- Houses varied from single-roomed tenements to house with a number of rooms and having even a second storey. Floors were generally made of beaten earth coated with cow dung. Fire-places are common in rooms. Walls were thick and squares holes in them suggest of use of wooden beams. Every house was separated by another by a narrow space of 'no man's land'. Staircases were usually made of wood but some staircases made up of burnt bricks have also been found. Roofs were flat. Doors were set in wooden frames at the end of the wall and the average width of a door was one meter. Square and rectangular pillars of burnt brick were used in larger rooms, round pillars were absent. Kitchen was small in size. A round oven meant for baking chapattis has been found.

TOPIC

4

THE VEDIC AGE

INTRODUCTION

- The word Veda is derived from the Sanskrit root 'Vid'.
- Vid's literal meaning is "to know"
- The Vedas are called "Apaurusheya" i.e. not created by human beings.
- The Vedas are known as "Shruti (to hear)" because the Vedas were heard by the saints from the supreme creator.
- The Vedas are known as "Nitya" i.e. the eternal.
- The Vedas are considered to be revealed books.
- The Vedic Aryans did not possess writing skills. The Vedic Aryans did not write down their knowledge. The Vedic Hymns were passed on from one generation to another through verbal transmission.
- The word Aryan refers to a linguistic category not a race. The literal meaning of the word Aryan is "of noble birth". In Rig Veda the word Aryan comes 36 times.
- The Vedas are four in number.
- The Vedas are collection of Hymns, Prayers, Charms and Sacrificial Formulae.
- The "Rishis" who composed the Vedas were known as "Mantradrashtha".
Mantradrashtha means inspired saints who received the hymns directly from the God Brahma.

PARTS OF VEDAS

Each of the Veda is divided into four parts. These parts are known as :

- The Samhitas
- The Brahmanas
- The Aranyakas
- The Upanishads

The Samhitas

The Samhitas contain the Vedic hymns without any explanation.

The Brahmanas

- The Brahmanas are elaborate prose texts.
- The Brahmanas are also known as Liturgies.
- These are texts on sacrificial rituals.
- These texts contain explanations of the hymns, their origin and describe their application.
- The Brahmanas texts are a kind of theology and philosophy of the Brahmanas (the priestly class).
- Advocate **Karma Marga** for the attainment of salvation.

The Aranyakas

- Literal meaning of the Aranyaka is forest.
- The Aranyakas deal with mysticism, moral values and philosophical doctrines of the Aryans. Because of their

special contents the Aranyakas were composed in forests.

- Because of this the Aranyaka are also known as forest books.
- The Aranyakas were meant for the ascetics and hermits living in the forests.
- The Aranyakas give emphasis on Meditation.
- The Aranyakas oppose sacrifices, formulae and rituals.
- The Aranyakas form a bridge between karma marga taught by Brahmana and Jnana Marga advocated by the

Upanishads for the attainment of salvation.

The Upanishads

- Literal meaning the Upanishad is ‘to sit down near some one’.
- This implies that the initiated pupil sat down near his teacher and the teacher imparted him the knowledge

of confidential doctrine

- The Upanishads deal with philosophical and metaphysical issues.
- The Upanishads are also known as “**Vedanta**” meaning “the end of the Vedas” for they denote the last phase

of the Vedic period and reveal the ultimate aim of the Vedas.

- They are 108 in number.
- The Upanishads reflect first reaction against Brahmanical dominance.
- The earliest Upanishads are “**Brihadaranyaka**” and “**Chhandogya**”. These are written in prose.
- The latter Upanishads like “**Katha**” and “**Svetasvatara**” are written in verse

form.

- Their discussions revolve around the realization of “Brahma”.
- The Upanishads believe Brahma is the ultimate reality of the universe and the recognition that the individual

soul is identical with that supreme soul leads to attainment of salvation.

- The Upanishads advocate salvation through knowledge (**Jnana Marga**) rather than through faith.
- The Upanishads contain the first clear exposition of belief in the passage of soul from one birth to another.
- Condemn ceremonies and sacrifices like Aranyakas. The Upanishads are anti ritualistic. The Upanishads do

not consider a life of asceticism as absolutely necessary for salvation.

- They discuss various theories for the creation of universe.

RELIGIOUS LIFE DURING VEDIC AGE

RIG VEDIC RELIGION

- Rig Vedic Religion was primarily personification of the forces of nature. When the Aryans failed to explain the natural happenings around them, they gave these natural events the names of Gods.
- The religion of the Rig Vedic Aryans is called henotheism or Kat-henotheism which means belief in single Gods, one of them being lauded as the greatest on one occasion and another receiving the same honour on a different occasion.
- Rig Vedic Religion was characterised by the predominance of male Gods. Very few Goddesses find mention in Rig Veda.
- During early Vedic age the aim of religious ceremonies was to achieve material gains i.e. to get the boons of property, cattle, long life and victory in wars.
- Prevalence of Cult of domestic hearth was another feature of Rig Vedic Religion.
- During early Vedic age the concept about life after death was vague. Though Rig Veda contains reference of world of father ruled by Yama and House of clay. The blessed ones reached world of father after their death and the cursed ones reached House of clay.
- The Rig Vedic people looked upon their Gods as living beings to whom they attached the attributes of man or animal.
- Sacrifice was the pivot of Aryan religion. It incorporated the use of formulae, performance of rituals, active role of priestly class and large-scale slaughter of

animals.

- Absence of clearly defined creator–Gods.
- The monotheistic conception is expressed in the hymns addressed to Hiranyagarbha (the golden germ) and the Visvakarman (the builder/creator).
- The Rig Vedic Gods were classified into three categories :

Terrestrial Deities Agni, Soma, Prithvi

Atmospheric Deities Indra, Rudra, Vayu, Marut, Parjanya

Celestial Deities Surya, Usha, Vishnu, Varuna, Savitri, Dyaus, Asvins, Mitra, Pushan.

LATER VEDIC RELIGION

- During later Vedic age religion was characterised by the rise of new Gods into prominence–Vishnu, Rudra and

Prajapati.

- Gods like Indra, Varuna and Agni lost their supreme position during later Vedic age. .
- The sacrifices became more elaborate and complex and gained pre-eminence over prayers. The simple

character of Rig Vedic age was slowly disappearing.

- Importance and social prestige of the priestly class increased.
- New philosophical concepts like Metempsychosis, Samsara and Karma etc emerged.
- Later Vedic Religion was also marked by the growth of pessimistic ideas. This tendency led to development of

philosophical speculation, meditation, penance, and asceticism.

- Later Vedic Religion was also marked by the rise of Upanishadic thoughts i.e. concept of Brahman, Salvation by means of knowledge & realisation etc.

SOCIAL LIFE DURING VEDIC AGE

RIG–VEDIC SOCIETY

- Rig Vedic society was tribal in nature.
- Family was the primary unit of society. Head of the family was Kulapa. He

enjoyed powers over other members

of family.

- Kinship was the basis of social structure.
- Rig Vedic society was also marked by joint family system.
- Family type was patriarchal, patrilineal and patrilocal in nature.
- Varna or colour was the basis of social stratification. Initially society was into white coloured Aryans and black

Dasas. Later on with the differentiation of functions, the Aryans were divided into Brahmana Varna, Kshatriya Varna and Vaishya Varna.

- The social stratification was not rigid because the Varna could be changed by changing the profession. Even the members of the same family could belong to different Varnas. In Rig Veda a person says that “ I am a bard, my father is a leech and my mother grinds corn. We belong to different Varnas but still we live together in the same family”.
- There is faint reference of warrior, priest and common people.
- Rathakara (Chariot maker) enjoyed high social status because of his significance for wars and battles.
- Marriage was considered a sacrament and it was not dissoluble. i.e. the concept of divorce did not exist.

Following practices existed during early Vedic period.

- Widow-remarriage was allowed but was not very popular.
- Custom of dowry.
- Practice of accepting bride-price.
- Practice of prostitution existed.
- Slavery was in vogue. Mainly woman slaves for domestic purposes. Slavery for indebtedness was absent.
- Inter-dinning among the Varnas.
- Monogamy was the established pattern of society.
- Reference of polygamy & polyandry are there but these practices were not very popular.
- Practice of **Niyoga** or Levirate.
- Inter-Varna marriages.
- Duties of householder–Dharma, Artha, Karma & Moksha.
- Position of women was high and respectable. The women enjoyed right to

attend religious ceremonies and

political assemblies like Sabha and Samiti.

- Some of the woman like Apala, Ghosha, Lopamudra, Vishvawara, Shachi and Pulomi composed Rig Vedic hymns.

Following practices did not exist during early Vedic period.

- Caste System
- Four Ashramas
- Practice of Swamvara
- Knowledge of script
- Divorce
- Beggars, wage-earners
- Incest

LATER-VEDIC SOCIETY

- Untouchability
- Eight forms of marriage
- Practice of Child marriage (the age of marriage was 16-17 years)
- Practice of sati
- Purdah System
- Desire for daughter

- The later Vedic society witnessed evolution in its various aspects.
- The four fold Varna system came to be firmly established.
- The powers of the father in the family increased to great extent.
- The later Vedic society was also marked by increased social rigidity. Change of occupation was not easy and various professions became hereditary.
- The power and prestige of Brahmans increased immensely. This was mainly because of excessive growth of sacrifices and rituals.
- Knowledge of iron led to the rise of various functional groups in the society. Later on these groups emerged as distinct castes.
- The later Vedic society was also marked by beginning of the practice of Primogeniture (the eldest son succeeding the father.)
- Position of women underwent some decline. Women lost the right to the **Upanayana** ceremony. They were also not allowed to take part in Sabha and Samiti. Birth of a daughter came to be regarded as a source of misery. Women were not allowed to own property.

- Gotra system came into being.
- Rathakara (Chariot maker) enjoyed high social status because of his significance for wars and battles.
- Ashrams system also came into being. **Chhandogya Upanishad** mentions first three Ashramas i.e. Brahmacharya Ashrama, Grihastha Ashrama and Vanaprastha Ashrama. **Jabla Upanishad** contains the reference of all the four Ashramas.
- Sudra Varna was firmly established. Various restrictions were imposed on them. Sudras could not approach the sacred fire, perform sacrifice and read sacred texts.

ECONOMIC LIFE DURING VEDIC AGE

ECONOMIC LIFE OF RIG-VEDIC AGE

- Rig Vedic economic life was pastoral in nature.
- References suggest that people were aware of agriculture but it was not very popular. The 4th Mandala of Rig

Veda contains a reference of agricultural process.

- Cattle rearing was the main occupation Rig Vedic people.
- People lived nomadic or non-sedentary life.
- Rig Vedic economy was characterised by the practice of gift exchange and redistribution.
- Bali (voluntary offerings) and war booty played important part in economy
- Coins were not used. Barter system characterised Rig Vedic economy.
- Cow and Nishka (Gold ornaments) were used as media of exchange
- Concept of private property in the form of land ownership did not exist.
- **Yava** (barley) was the main crop.
- Rig Vedic people used tools made of stone and copper. They **were not aware of Iron.**
- Fire was used to clear the forests.
- References suggest that people carried out transaction of goods (trade and commerce) but this was not in

developed form.

- The Aryans used the spoked wheel.

ECONOMIC LIFE OF LATER-VEDIC AGE

- During this age the Aryans gave up nomadic life and started living settled life.

- Later Vedic Age economic life was characterised by transition from a pastoral economy to a sedentary agrarian

economy.

- Knowledge of Iron technology transformed economic life and brought about far reaching changes.
- By this age (1000 B.C.) the Aryans had entered in Gangetic valley. The availability of fertile soil made possible

the growth of agriculture.

- People were familiar with plough cultivation. Satapatha Brahmana devotes one whole chapter to rites connected with ploughing rituals.
- Knowledge of Iron technology gave birth to various arts and crafts. Various specialized groups associated with art and craft emerged.
- Though coins were still not used but Nishka and Satamana which were gold ornaments during Rig Vedic period came to be used for trade and commerce.
- Atharvaveda mentions the trade of cloths (dursha) and goat skin (Ajin).
- The word Nagara is used in later Vedic texts but there was only faint beginning of towns towards the end of later Vedic age.

POLITICAL LIFE DURING VEDIC AGE

RIG-VEDIC POLITICAL LIFE

- The political life was tribal in nature.
- Kula (family) was the basic unit of political life.
- **Gramini** (head of village) also played important role during Rig Vedic Age.
- Political units in ascending order were **Kula, Grama, Vis, Jana**.
- Wars and battles were common phenomenon. Most common cause of war was the issue of cattle theft.
- The term for war in the Rig Veda is *Gavishthi* or search for cows.
- The Rig Veda mentions the defeat of Sambara (Dasa chief) by a chief called Divodasa of Bharata clan.
- The head of Samiti was known as Isan
- The king was mere tribal head and functioned more like a leader.

- Protection of members of the tribe from the attack of other Aryan and non Aryan tribes was the main function

of the king

- References suggest that elaborate administrative machinery did not exist during Rig Vedic Age.
- Rig Veda mentions only three officials i.e. the Yuvaraja, the Purohita and the Senapati
- No regular system of taxation. Rig Veda does not mention any official for collection of taxes.
- Bali was a tax paid by the members of tribe to the king. This was more of a voluntary offering. War spoils

constituted the most important source of income.

- Various political assemblies like Sabha, Samiti, Gana and Vidatha existed during this period.

- Vrajapati was the head of the pasture land.
- There was no standing army during this period.
- **The Battle of ten Kings:**

- This battle was fought on the bank of river Parushani (Ravi).
- The cause of the war was the appointment of Vashistha as chief priest of Bharata tribe in place of Vishwamitra because of his superior knowledge.
- Vishwamitra organized five Aryan (Anu, Druha, Yadu, Puru and Turvasa) and five non- Aryan tribes (Anil, Pakth, Bhalanas, Shivas and Vishanin) against the Bharata.
- It gave victory to King Sudas of Bharata tribe and established the supremacy of the Bharata tribe.
- Subsequently the Bharatas joined hands with the Purus and formed a new ruling tribe called the Kurus.

LATER-VEDIC POLITICAL LIFE

- During later Vedic period the process of amalgamation of tribes led to the rise of large kingdoms.
- Aitareya Brahmana contains rules of coronation and names of various kings. Aiteriya Brahmana describes the

origin of state and state system.

- The increase in the size of the kingdoms led to the growth of royal power. This undermined the role of popular assemblies like Sabha and Samiti. The **Vidhat** completely disappeared during later Vedic period.
- During later Vedic period rulers assumed various kinds of epithets like **Rajavisvajnana** (Universal monarch), **Sarvabhumi** (the lord of all earth), **Ekarat** (the sole ruler).
- Various kinds of sacrifices were performed to strengthen royal power.
- The Upanishads mention that king Ashvapati was a great philosopher king of Kakaya Janapada. He was great patron of scholars.
- Pariskshit as king of Kurus is mentioned in Atharvaveda
- Satapatha Brahmana mentions Gandhara, Shakya, Kaikya, Kuru, Panchala, Vidheya etc.
- Later Vedic polity was also marked by beginning of rudimentary system of administration.
- Tribal political assemblies lost their previous prestige and significances due the extension of boundaries of state and rise of power of the king.
- Large number of officials like—**Bhagadugha, Sangrihtri, Akshavapa** etc. emerged during this age. Divine characters were added to kings.
- Ugra and Jivagrabha were the Police officials.
- Judges were known as Prashnavinak.
- Territorial identity got attached to political life. The early Vedic tribal identity disappeared to a large extent.
- Beginning of regular taxation system. Various kinds of taxes are mentioned in later Vedic texts. **Specific Titles assumed by the rulers of different regions :**

REGION TITLE Kings of northern India Virat Kings of middle country Raja
Kings of outlying parts in the east Samrat Kings of south India Bhoja Kings of
western India Swarat

TOPIC

5

THE MAHAJANAPADAS

INTRODUCTION

- Mahajanapadas literally means “Great kingdoms”. Ancient Buddhist texts like Anguttara Nikaya make frequent reference to sixteen great kingdoms and republics (16 Mahajanapadas) which had evolved and flourished in the northern/north-western parts of the Indian sub-continent prior to the rise of Buddhism in India.

- Kashi
- Anga
- Vajji (or Vriji)
- Chedi
- Kuru
- Matsya
- Asmaka
- Gandhara
- Kosala
- Magadha
- Malla
- Vatsa (or Vamsa)
- Panchala
- Surasena
- Avanti
- Kamboja

- Another Buddhist text Digha Nikaya mentions only first twelve Mahajanapadas and omits the last four in the above list.

- Chulla-Niddesa, another ancient text of the Buddhist canon, adds Kalinga to the list and substitutes Yona for Gandhara, thus listing the Kamboja and the Yona as the only Mahajanapadas from Uttarapatha.

- The Jaina Bhagvati Sutra gives slightly different list of sixteen Mahajanapadas viz: Anga, Banga (Vanga), Magadha, Malaya, Malavaka, Accha, Vaccha,

Kochcha (Kachcha?), Padha, Ladha (Lata), Bajji (Vajji), Moli (Malla), Kasi, Kosala, Avaha and Sambhuttara. Obviously, the author of Bhagvati has a focus on the countries of Madhydesa and of far east and south only. He omits the nations from Uttarapatha like the Kamboja and Gandhara. The more extended horizon of the Bhagvati and the omission of all countries from Uttarapatha clearly shows that the Bhagvati list is of later origin and therefore less reliable.

MAGADHA

HARIYANKA DYNASTY (545 BC-412 BC)

- Magadha formed one of the sixteen so-called Mahâjanapadas in ancient India. The core of the kingdom was the portion of Bihar lying south of the Ganges, with its capital at Rajagriha/ Girivrija (modern Rajgir).
- Magadha expanded to include Eastern Uttar Pradesh most of Bihar and Bengal with the conquest of Licchavi and Anga respectively.
- The first reference to the Magadha occurs in the Atharva-Veda where this is found listed along with the Angas, Gandharis and the Mujavats as a *despised* people.
- King Bimbisara of the Haryanka dynasty led an active and expansive policy, conquering Anga in what is now West Bengal.
- Bimbisara acquired Anga and placed it under the viceroyalty of Ajatashatru at Champa.
- When Pradyota was attacked by jaundice, at the Avanti King's request Bimbisara sent the royal physician Jivaka to Ujjain.
- After the death of Bimbisara at the hands of his son, Ajatashatru, the widowed princess of Kosala also died of grief, causing King Prasenajit to revoke the gift of Kashi and triggering a war between Kosala and Magadha. Ajatashatru was trapped by an ambush and captured with his army. After a long war later on Ajatsatru succeeded in defeating King Prasenajit by manipulating his minister Dirghacharayan. In a peace treaty Kashi was restored to Magadha, and Ajatsatru married Prasenajit's daughter.
- Accounts differ slightly as to the cause of Ajatashatru's war with the Licchavi republic. It appears that Ajatashatru sent his minister Vassakara, who for three years worked to undermine the unity of the Licchavis at Vaishali. Torn by disagreements the Licchavis were easily defeated.
- Jaina texts tell how Ajatashatru used two new weapons – a catapult (Mahasilakantak) and a covered chariot (Rathamusal) with swinging mace that

has been compared to modern tanks.

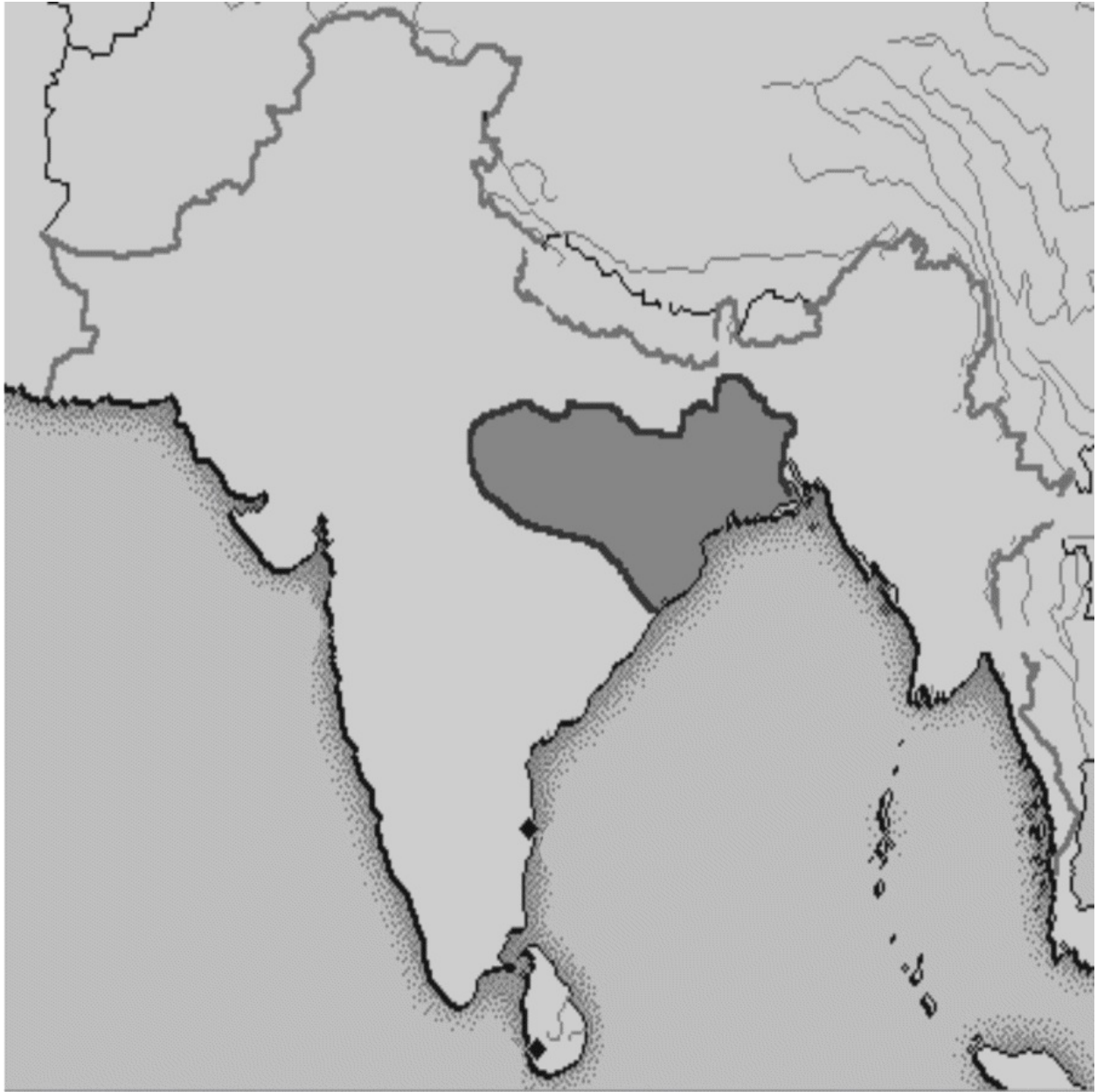
SHISHUNAGA DYNASTY (412-344 BC)

- Shishunaga successfully ended the war with Avanti which was going on since last 100 years.
- He temporarily shifted his capital to Vaishali.

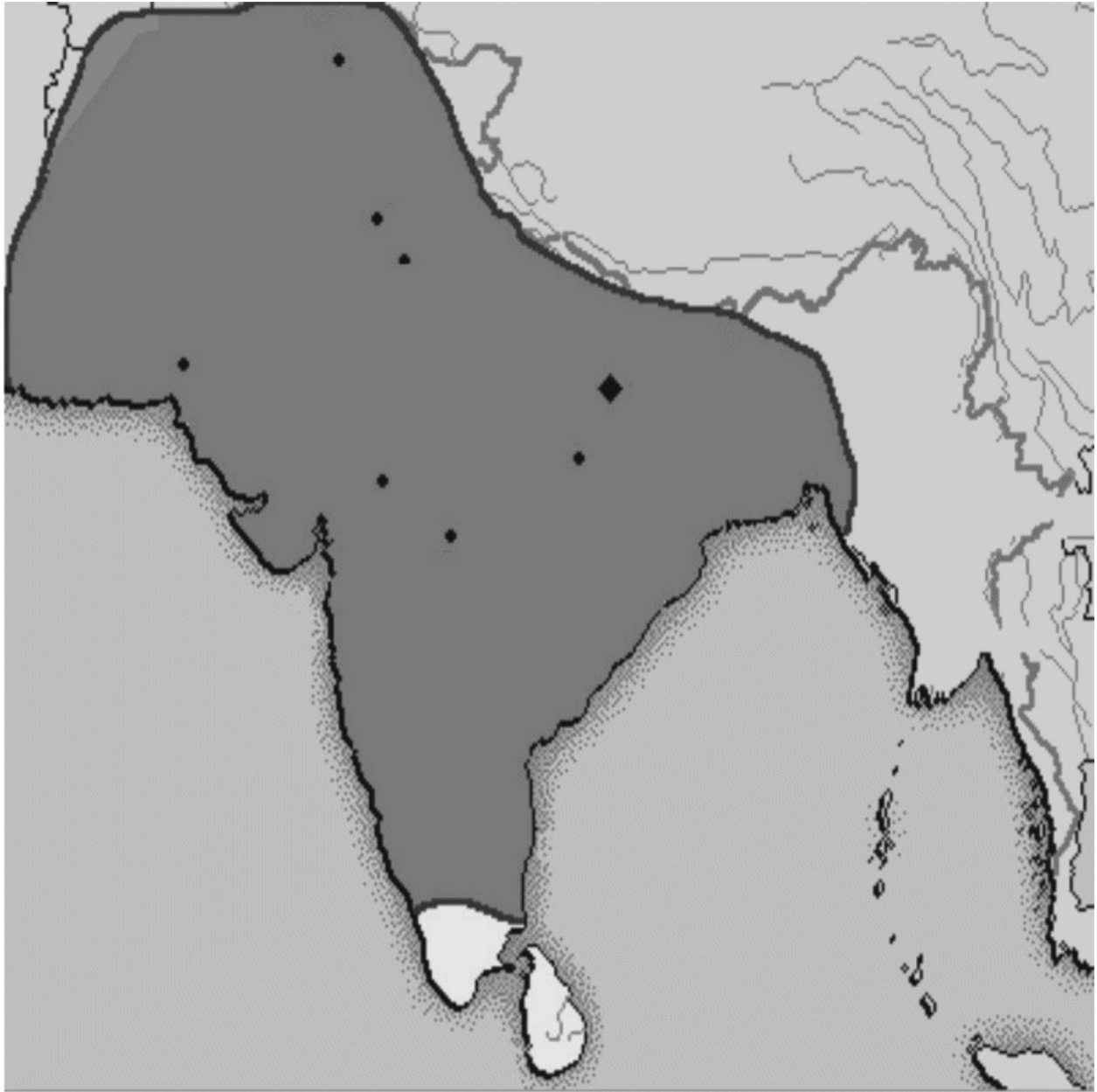
NANDA DYNASTY (344-321 BC)

- Mahapadmananda conquered Kalinga and from there he brought an image of the Jina as a victory trophy.
- He adopted the title of Ekarat.

MAURYA EMPIRE



The Magadha state circa 600 BC, before it expanded



The Maurya Empire at its greatest extent

In 321 BC, Chandragupta Maurya founded the Maurya dynasty after overthrowing the reigning Nanda king Dhana Nanda to establish the Maurya Empire. During this time, most of the subcontinent was united under a single government for the first time. Capitalising on the destabilization of northern India by the Persian and Greek incursions, the Mauryan empire under Chandragupta could not only conquer most of the Indian subcontinent, but also push its boundaries into Persia and Central Asia, conquering the Gandhara region. Chandragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusara, who expanded the

kingdom over most of present day India, barring the extreme south and east. The only regions that were not under the Mauryan's were present day Tamil Nadu and Kerala (which was a Tamil kingdom then). There are references in one of the oldest Tamil Sangam literature, Purananuru, that a Mauryan army was driven out by a unified Tamil army under the leadership of Ilanchetchenni, a Chola King. This unified Tamil force is supposed to be broken by King Kharavela, a Kalinga ruler, as per one of his inscriptions. The kingdom was inherited by his son Ashoka the Great who initially sought to expand his kingdom. In the aftermath of the carnage caused in the invasion of Kalinga, he renounced bloodshed and pursued a policy of nonviolence or ahimsa after converting to Buddhism. The Edicts of Ashoka are the oldest preserved historical documents of India, and from Ashoka's time, approximate dating of dynasties becomes possible. The Mauryan dynasty under Ashoka was responsible for the proliferation of Buddhist ideals across the whole of East Asia and South-East Asia, fundamentally altering the history and development of Asia as a whole. Ashoka the Great has been described as one of the greatest rulers the world has seen.

SUNGA DYNASTY

The Sunga dynasty was established in 185 BC, about fifty years after Ashoka's death, when the king Brihadratha, the last of the Mauryan rulers, was assassinated by the then commander-in-chief of the Mauryan armed forces, Pushyamitra Sunga, while he was taking the Guard of Honour of his forces. Pushyamitra Sunga then ascended the throne.

KANVA DYNASTY

The Kanva dynasty replaced the Sunga dynasty, and ruled in the eastern part of India from 73 BC to 26 BC. Devabhuti, the last ruler of the Sunga dynasty was overthrown by Vasudeva of the Kanva dynasty in 73 BC. The Kanva ruler allowed the kings of the Sunga dynasty to continue to rule in obscurity in a corner of their former dominions. Magadha was ruled by four Kanva rulers. In 30 BC, the Satavahana swept away both the Kanvas and Sungas and the province of Eastern Malwa was absorbed within the dominions of the conqueror. Following the collapse of the Kanva dynasty, the Satavahana dynasty of the Andhra kingdom replaced the Magadhan kingdom as the most powerful Indian state. Susharma was the last king of Kanva dynasty.



The Gupta Empire around 500 AD
KINGS OF MAGADHA

Hariyanka dynasty (545 BC-412 BC)

- Bimbisara (545-493 BC), founder of the first Magadhan empire^{[2][3]}
- Ajatashatru (493-461 BC)
- Darshaka (from 461 BC)
- Udayin

Shishunaga dynasty (412-344 BC)

- Shishunaga (412 BC), established the kingdom of **Magadha**

- Kakavarna
- Kshemadharman
- Kshatrujas
- Nandivardhana
- Mahanandin (until 344 BC), his empire is inherited by his illegitimate son Mahapadma Nanda **Nanda Dynasty (344-323BC)**
- Mahapadma Nanda (from 344 BC), illegitimate son of Mahanandin, founded the Nanda Empire after inheriting

Mahanandin's empire

- Dhana (Agrammes, Xandrames) (until 323 BC), lost his empire to Chandragupta Maurya after being defeated by him

Maurya Dynasty (323-184 BC)

- **Chandragupta** Maurya (Sandrocottus) (324-301 BC), founded the Mauryan Empire after defeating both the Nanda Empire and the Macedonian Seleucid Empire, claimed descent from Shakyas dynasty
- Bindusara Amitraghata (301-273 BC)
- **Ashoka** Vardhana (Ashoka the Great) (269-232 BC), considered the greatest ancient Indian emperor, first emperor to unify India (after conquering most of South Asia and Afghanistan), adopt Buddhism, grant animal rights and promote non-violence
- Dasaratha (232-224 BC)
- Samprati (224-215 BC)
- Salisuka (215-202 BC)
- Devavarman (202-195 BC)
- Satadhanvan (195-187 BC), the Mauryan Empire had shrunk by the time of his reign
- Brhadrata (187-184 BC), assassinated by Pushyamitra Shunga

Shunga Dynasty (185-73 BC)

- Pusyamitra Shunga (185-149 BC), founded the dynasty after assassinating Brhadrata
- Bhagabhadra, mentioned by the Puranas
- Devabhuti (83-73 BC), last Sunga king

Kanva Dynasty (73-26 BC)

- Founder : Vasudeva Kanva (from 73 BC)
- Last ruler : Susharma (until 26 BC)

OTHER MAHAJANAPADAS

KASHI

- The Kasi were Aryan people who had settled in the region around Varanasi (modern Banaras).

- The capital of Kasi was at Varanasi. The city was bounded by rivers Varuna and Asi on north and south which

gave Varanasi its name.

- Before Buddha, Kasi was the most powerful of the sixteen Mahajanapadas. Several Jatakas bear witness to

the superiority of its capital over other cities of India and speaks high of its prosperity.

- The Jatakas speak of long rivalry of Kasi with Kosala, Anga and Magadha. A struggle for supremacy went on among them for a time. Kasi was later incorporated into Kosala during Buddha's time. The Kasi along with the Kosala and Videha find mention in Vedic texts and appear to have been a closely allied people.

- Matsya Purana and Alberuni read Kasi as Kausika and Kaushaka respectively.

All other ancient texts read Kasi. **KOSALA**

- Kosala was an ancient Indian Aryan kingdom, corresponding roughly in area with the region of Oudh.

- In sixth century BCE, Kosala formed one of the sixteen powerful realms of India (Mahajanapadas) of Buddhist traditions, and its cultural and political strength earned it the status of great power.

- **Shravasti** was the capital of Kosala Kingdom between 6th century BC to 6th century AD. However, it was later weakened by a series of wars with the neighbouring kingdom of Magadha and, in the 4th century BC, was finally absorbed by it.

- Saket was another famous city of Kosala. Ayodhya was another name of Saket.

- Kosala was the seat of much Sanskrit epic literature including the Ramayana, being ruled by the Raghuvamsa

(Dynasty of Raghu) the family from which Rama hails. Buddha and Mahavira, the 24th Tirthankara of Jainism, taught in the kingdom. Prasenchit was the King of Kosala and he was a follower of Buddha. **ANGA**

- The earliest reference **to Anga** occurs in the Atharvaveda where it finds mention along with the Magadha, Gandhara and the Mujavata, all apparently as despised people.
- The JainaPrajnapana ranks the Anga and the Vanga in the first group of Aryan peoples.
- According to Buddhist textsAnguttara Nikaya, Anga was one of the sixteen Mahajanapadas which had flourished in central and north-west India in the 6th century BC.
- Anga also finds mention in the Jaina Bhagvati-Sutra's list of ancient Janapadas.
- The kingdom of the Angas roughly corresponded to the region of Bhagalpur and Mongheyr in Bihar and parts of Bengal; later extended to include most of Bengal.
- The River Champa (modern Chandan) formed the boundaries between the Magadha in the west and Anga in the east. Anga was bounded by river Kosi on the north.
- The capital of Anga was **Champa**. According to Mahabharata and Harivamsa, Champa was formerly known as **Malini**. Champa was located on the right bank of river Ganga near its junction with river Champa. It was a very flourishing city and is referred to as one of six principal cities of ancient India (Digha Nikaya). **Rajagriha, Shravasti, Saket, Koshambi and Banaras** were other five most important cities of the period.
- Other important cities of Anga are said to be Assapura and Bhadrika.
- Buddhayana Dharma Sutra groups the Angas with people of mixed origin and Mahabharata brands an Anga prince (not Karana of the Mahabharata) as a Mlechchhas and barbarian.
- Between the Vatsas and the realm of Anga, lived the Magadhas, who initially were comparatively a weak people. A great struggle went on between the Angas and its eastern neighbours. The Vidhura Pandita Jataka describes Rajagriha (Magadhan Capital) as the city of Anga and Mahabharata also refers to a sacrifice performed

by the king of Anga at Mount Vishnupada (at Gaya). This indicates that Anga had initially succeeded in annexing the Magadha, and thus its borders extended to the kingdom of Matsya country.

- This success of Anga did not last long. About the middle of 6th century BC, Bimbisara, the crown prince of Magadha had killed Brahmadatta, the last independent king of Anga and seized Champa. Bimbisara made it as his head-quarters and Ajatashatru ruled over it as his father's Viceroy. Thenceforth, Anga became an integral part of growing Magadha empire.

VAJJI OR VRIJI MAHAJANAPADA

- Vajji mahajanapada was one of the principal mahajanapadas of ancient India. The territory of the Vajji mahajanapada was located on the north of the Ganga River and extended up to the Terai region of Nepal. On the west, the Gandak River was probably the boundary between it and the Malla mahajanapada and possibly also separated it with the Kosala mahajanapada. On the east, its territory was probably extended up to the forests along the banks of the rivers, Koshi and Mahananda.
- The capital of this mahajanapada was **Vaishali**. Other important towns and villages were Kundapura or Kundagrama (a suburb of Vaishali), Bhoganagara and Hatthigama.
- The rulers of this mahajanapada were a confederacy of the **eight clans** (atthakula) of whom the Vrijis, the Lichchavis, the Jnatrikas and the Videhas were the most important. The identities of the other four clans are not certain. However, in a passage of the Sutrakritanga, the Ugras, the Bhogas, the Kauravas and the Aikshvakas are associated with the Jnatrikas and Licchavis as the subjects of the same ruler and the members of the same assembly.
- It was one of the world's first democracies. It was known as Vajji Sangha (union of Vajji), which consisted of several janapadas, gramas (villages), gosthas (groups).
- The eminent people were chosen from each khandas (districts) to represent on their behalf in Vajji gana

parishad (people's council of Vajji). These representatives were called gana mukhyas. The chairman of the council was called Ganapramukh (head of the democracy), but often he was addressed as the king, though his post was not dynastic. The other executives were **Mahabaladhrikrit** (equivalent to the minister of internal security), **binishchayamatya** (chief justice), **dandadhikrit** (other justices) etc.

- Vajji's capital Vaishali was a prosperous city. In the introductory portion of the Ekapanna Jataka, the Vaishali was described as encompassed by a triple wall with the three gates with watch-towers. The main gosthas were Lichchhavis, Mallas, Eakyas etc.

- In around 600 B.C. the Lichchhavis were disciples of Lord Mahavira, but later they shifted to Buddha Marga (Buddhism). During his life time Lord Buddha visited Vaishali several times, the vihara where he used to stay in Vaishali was called **Kuthagarshala**. It was gifted to him by a Ganapramukh, Chetaka. **MALLA**

- The Malla Mahajanapada was situated north of Magadha. It was a small Mahajanapada. The Mahajanapada was divided into two main parts and the river Kakuttha (present day Kuku) was probably the dividing line. The capitals of these two parts were **Kusavati or Kuúinâra** (modern Kasia near Gorakhpur) and **Pv**, modern Padrauna, 12 miles from Kasia). Ku[inra and Pava are very important in the history of Buddhism since Buddha took his last meal and was taken ill at Pava and went to his MahâparinirvâGa at Ku[inra.

- The Mallas were **republican** people and according to Kalpa Sutra and Nirayavali Sutra their dominion consisted of nine territories.

- The Mallas, like the Licchhavis, are mentioned by Manusmriti as Vratya Kshatriyas. They are called Vasishthas (Vasetthas) in the Mahapparnibbana Suttanta.

- The Mallas originally had a monarchical form of government but later they switched to Samgha (republic) of which the members called themselves rajas. The Mallas were a brave and warlike people. **CHEDI KINGDOM**

- Chedi kingdom was one among the many kingdoms ruled during early periods by Paurava kings and later by Yadava kings in the central and western India.
- It falls roughly in the Bundelkhand division of Madhya Pradesh regions to the south of river Yamuna and along river Betwa or Vetravati.
- The Chedi kingdom was ruled by Sisupala, an ally of Jarasandha of Magadha and Duryodhana of Kuru. He was a rival of Vasudeva Krishna who was his uncle's son. He was killed by Vasudeva Krishna during the Rajasuya sacrifice of the Pandava king Yudhisthira. Bhima's wife was from Chedi.
- The city called **Suktimati** was the capital of Chedi.

VATSA

- Vatsa's geographical location was near the confluence of the Ganges and Yamuna rivers. Its capital was **Kau[mb+** (present day Kosam, 35 miles southwest of Allahabad).
- The Puranas state that after the washing away of Hastinapura by the Ganga, the Bhrata king Nicakcu, the great-great grandson of Janamejaya, abandoned the city and settled in Kau[mb+. This is supported by the Svapnavsavadatt and the Pratijña-YaugandharyaGa attributed to Bhsha. Both of them have described the king Udayana as a scion of the Bhrata family (Bhrata-kula).
- Udayana, the son of Satanika II by the Videha princess succeeded him. Udayana, the romantic hero of the Svapnavsavadatt, the Pratijña-YaugandharyaGa and many other legends was contemporary of Buddha and of Pradyota, the king of Avanti. The Kathasaritsgara contains a long account of his conquests. The Priyadarshika narrates the event of his victory over the ruler of KaliEga and restoration of Drdhavarman to the throne of Anga.
- The commentary on the Dhammapada describes the story of his marriage with Vsavadatt or Vasuladatt, the daughter of Pradyota, the king of Avanti. It also mentions about his two other consorts, Mgandiya, daughter of a Kuru Brahmin and Samavati, the adopted daughter of the treasurer Ghosaka.

The Milindapañho refers to a peasant girl Gopāmt who became his wife. The Ratnavali narrates a story of romance between him and

Sgarik, an attendant of his chief queen, Vśavadatt.

- The Buddha visited Koushambi several times during the reign of Udayana in his effort to spread the dharma, the Eightfold Path and the Four Noble Truths. Udayana was an Upasaka (lay follower) of Buddha. The Chinese translation of the Buddhist canonical text Ekottara Āgama states that the first image of Buddha, carved out of sandalwood was made under the instruction of Udayana.

KURU

- Kuru was the name of an Indo-Aryan tribe and their kingdom in the Vedic civilization of India, and later a republican Mahajanapada state. Their kingdom was located in the area of modern Haryana (Kurukshetra). They formed the first political centre of the Indo-Aryans after the Rigvedic period, and after their emergence from the Punjab, and it was there that the codification and redaction of the Vedic texts began. Archaeologically, they most likely correspond to the black and red ware culture of the 12th to 9th centuries BC. At this time, iron first appeared in western India. Iron was still absent from the Rig Vedic hymns, and makes its first appearance as “black metal” (úyâma ayas) in the Atharvaveda.

- The Atharvaveda refers to Parikshita as the king of the Kurus. His son Janamejaya figures in Satapatha Brahmana as well as in the Aitareya Brahmana. The Kurus in association with the Panchalas are frequently mentioned in the later Vedic literature.

- The whole kingdom roughly corresponded to modern Thanesar, Delhi and the greater part of Upper Gangetic Doab.

- At the time of Buddha, the Kuru realm was only three hundred leagues in extent. Legendary Buddhist stories -the Jatakas attest that the capital of the Kurus was Indraprastha (Indrapatta) near modern Delhi. It extended

for seven leagues. The other city in the realm was Hatthinipura i.e. Hastinapur.

- During Buddha's time, Ratthapala, son of the Kuru ruler had embraced Buddhism.
- The Buddha taught important and profound discourses in the Kurus such as the "Mahâsatipamhâna Sutta", the Great Discourse on the Foundation of Mindfulness, "Mahânidâna Sutta", The Great Discourse on Causation, and "Âneñjasappâya Sutta", the Way to the Imperturbable. Other discourses, as recorded in the Pali Canon, taught by the Buddha in the Kurus are Mâgandîya Sutta, Rammhapâla Sutta, Sammasa Sutta, Dutîya Ariyâvâsa Sutta.
- The Kurus of the Buddhist period did not occupy the same position as they did in the Vedic period but they continued to enjoy their ancient reputation for deep wisdom and sound health. The Kurus had matrimonial relations with Yadavas, the Bhojas and the Panchalas.
- Kurus are mentioned by Panini (Astadhyayi) as one of the fifteen powerful Kshatriya Janapadas of his times, with Hastinapur as its capital.

PANCHALA

- Panchala corresponds to the geographical area between the Ganges River and Yamuna River around the cities of Kanpur and Varanasi.
- The Panchalas occupied the country to the east of the Kurus, between the mountains and river Ganga. It roughly corresponded to modern Budaun, Farrukhabad and the adjoining districts of Uttar Pradesh. The country was divided into Uttara-Panchala and Dakshina-Panchala.
- The northern Panchala had its capital at **Ahhichhatra or Chhatravati** (modern Ramnagar, Uttar Pradesh in the Bareilly District), while southern Panchala had its capital at **Kampilya** or Kampil in Farrukhabad District. The famous city of Kanyakubj or Kannauj was situated in the kingdom of Panchala.
- Panchala was the second "urban" centre of Vedic civilization, as its focus moved east from the Punjab, after the focus of power had been with the Kurus in the early Iron Age. This period is

associated with the Painted

Grey Ware culture, arising beginning around 1100 BC, and declining from 600 BC, with the end of the Vedic

period. The Shaunaka and Taittiriya Vedic schools were located in the area of Panchala.

- In the great Indian Hindu epic Mahabharata, Draupadi (wife of the five Pandava brothers) was the princess of Panchala; Panchali was her other name.

MATSYA KINGDOM

- Matsya or Machcha (Sanskrit for fish) was the name of a tribe and the state of the Vedic civilization of India. It lay to south of the kingdom of Kurus and west of the Yamuna which separated it from the kingdom of Panchalas.

It roughly corresponded to former state of Jaipur in Rajasthan, and included the whole of Alwar with portions of Bharatpur.

- The capital of Matsya was at **Viratanagara** (modern Bairat) which is said to have been named after its founder king Virata.

SURASENA

- Surasena (or Shourasena) was the kingdom around the modern Brajabhumi. The etymology of the name is not clear. Some say it was named after a famed Yadav king Sursain, while others see it as an extension of Surabhir (Abhira). According to Megasthenes, people of this place worshipped the shepherd God Herakles, which according to many scholars was due to a misconception while others see in it connotations of Scythic origin of Yadus. It was the sacred land of Lord Krishna in which he was born, raised, and ruled. It was an ancient Janapada. It has been well mentioned in Mahabharata.

- It's capital was **Mathura** which was situated at the bank of the river Yamuna. Now it is a holy place for all Hindus. The main Gosthis which ruled the Surasena were Shorasenees, Brishnis, Yadavas or Yadukul, etc. **ASMAKA/ASSAKA**

- Assaka, or Asmaka, was one of the sixteen Mahajanapadas of ancient India (700–300 BCE) mentioned in the

Buddhist text Anguttara Nikaya. This Mahajanapada was located on the banks of the Godavari River.

- Its capital was **Potali/Potana/Podana**, which now lies in the Nandura Tehsil.
- It was the only Mahajanapada situated to the south of the Vindhya Range and was in Dakshinapatha. The

Buddhist text Mahagovinda Suttanta mentions about a ruler of Assaka, Brahmadatta who ruled from Potana.

- Later the people spread southward to the territory of the Rashtrakuta empire, which is now in modern Maharashtra.

AVANTI

- Avanti(modern Malwa) was an important kingdom of western India and was one of the four great monarchies in India when Buddhism arose, the other three being Kosala, Vatsa and Magadha.

- Avanti was divided into north and south by river Vetravati. Initially, **Mahissati** (Sanskrit Mahishamati) was the capital of Southern Avanti, and **Ujjayini** (Sanskrit Ujjayini) was of northern Avanti, but at the times of Mahavira and Buddha, Ujjayini was the capital of integrated Avanti.

- The country of Avanti roughly corresponded to modern Malwa, Nimar and adjoining parts of the Madhya Pradesh.

- Both Mahishamati and Ujjayini stood on the southern high road called Dakshinapatha extending from Rajagriha to Pratishthana (modern Paithan).

- Avanti was an important centre of Buddhism and some of the leading theras and theris were born and resided there. King Nandivardhana of Avanti was defeated by king Shishunaga of Magadha. Avanti later became part of Magadhan Empire.

GANDHARA

- Gandhara, also known as Waihind in Persian, is the name of an ancient Mahajanapada, in what is now northern Pakistan and eastern Afghanistan.

- Gandhara was located mainly in the vale of Peshawar, the Potwar plateau and on the Kabul River. Its main cities were Purushapura (modern Peshawar) and Takshashila.

- The Kingdom of Gandhara lasted from the 6th century BCE to the 11th century CE. It attained its height from the 1st century to the 5th century under the Buddhist Kushana Kings. After it was conquered by Mahmud of Ghazni in 1021 CE, the name Gandhara disappeared. During the Muslim period the area was administered from Lahore or from Kabul. During Mughal times the area was part of Kabul province.
- Gandhara was located on the northern trunk road (Uttarapatha) and was a centre of international commercial activities. It was an important channel of communication with ancient Iran and Central Asia.
- The kingdom was ruled from capitals at **Pushkalavati (Charsadda)**, Taxila, Purushapura (Peshawar) and in its final days from **Udbhandapura** (Ohind) on the Indus.

KAMBOJA

- Kamboja was located in the Uttarapatha. In ancient literature, the Kamboja is variously associated with the Gandhara, Darada and the Bahlika (Bactria). Ancient Kamboja is known to have comprised regions on either side of the Hindukush.
- The original Kamboja was located in eastern Oxus country as neighbor to Bahlika, but with time, some clans of Kambojas appear to have crossed Hindukush and planted colonies on its southern side also. These latter Kambojas are associated with the Daradas and Gandharas in Indian literature and also find mention in the Edicts of Ashoka.
- The evidence in Mahabharata and in Ptolemy's Geography distinctly supports two Kamboja settlements. The cis-Hindukush region from Nurestan up to Rajori in southwest of Kashmir sharing borders with the Daradas and the Gandharas constituted the *Kamboja* country.
- The capital of Kamboja was probably **Rajapura** (modern Rajori) or **Hatak** in south-west of Kashmir. The Kamboja Mahajanapada of the Buddhist traditions refers to this cis-Hindukush branch of ancient Kambojas.

TOPIC

6

BUDDHISM

PERSONAL HISTORY OF GAUTAMA BUDDHA

- 1. Real name**
- 2. Titles**
- 3. Birth Place**
- 4. Birth Year**
- 5. Death (year)**
- 6. Death (place)**
- 7. Clan**
- 8. Class**
- 9. Gotra Name**
- 10. Father's Name**
- 11. Mother's Name**
- 12. Foster Mother**
- 13. Married at the age of**
- 14. Wife**

- 15. Cousin**
- 16. Son**
- 17. Horse**
- 18. Charioteer**
- 19. Teachers**

- 20. The girl who offered him milk, when he was meditating at Bodhgaya**

- 21. Left home at the age of**
- 22. Place of enlightenment**
- 23. Age of enlightenment**
- 24. Tree**

- 25. Period of meditation
leading to enlightenment**

26. King of spirits and demons who disturbed him during his mediation
Siddhartha
Buddha, Sakya Muni, Tathagata (one who attained truth) Lumbini (Modern
Rumindei) in Kapilvastu (Piprahwa) 563 BC
483 BC (at the age of 80 years)
Kushinagar (Kushinara) in U.P. (the capital of the Mallas) Sakya
Kshatriya
Gautama
Suddhodhana
Mahamaya/Mayadevi
Prajapati Gautami
16 yrs.
Yasodhara. Traditionally his wife was known as Bhadda Kanchana, Subhadraka,
Bimba, Gopa, Yasodhara
Devadutta
Rahul
Kanthaka
Channa
Alara Kama & Ruddaka Ramputta. From Alar Kama he learned the technique of
meditation and the teachings of the Upanishads
Sujata

29 years
Uruvela (modern Bodhgaya) on the bank of the river Niranjana.
35 yrs
He got enlightenment under the **Pipal** tree (known as Boddhi tree)
48 days (at dawn of 49th day he got enlightenment)

Mara **27.** Revered day in Buddhism

28. His words at the time of birth

29. His Last words

30. The person who offered pork which led to his death

31. His five disciples

32. Preached maximum of his Baishakha Purnima (Full moon day) because
birth, enlightenment and death of Buddha took place on this day. This is my last
birth-hence forth there is no more birth for me. All composite things decay,

strive diligently.
Chunda

Asvajit, Upali, Mogallana, Sari-Putra & Ananda Sravasti
sermons at

FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS/CHATUR-ARYANI SACCHANI

1. Sorrow (dukkha)–The world is full of sorrow
2. The cause of sorrow (dukkha samudaya) is desire
3. Cessation of sorrow (dukkha–nirodha) is possible.
4. The path leading to the cessation of sorrow (dukkha- nirodhagamini pratipad) is Ashtangikamarga

EIGHT FOLD PATHS/ASHTANGIKA MARG

1. Right belief/observation/views (Samma-Ditthi)
2. Right thought/determination(Samma-Sankalpa)
3. Right speech (Samm-Vaka)
4. Right action /effort (Samma – Karmanta)
5. Right means of livelihood (Samma- Ajiva)
6. Right endeavour/conduct (Samma- Vayamma)
7. Right recollection /memory (Samma Sati)
8. Right meditation (Samma-Samadhi) Understanding that desire is the cause of sorrow and the ending of it will lead to the liberation of the soul.
Avoiding the enjoyment of the senses and luxury & to love humanity & increase the happiness of others.
Always tell truth.
Unselfish action.
Man should lie by honest means.
Proper way of controlling senses for preventing bad thoughts through correct mental exercises that one can destroy desire & attachment. Emphasises the meditation for the removal of worldly evils.
leads to peace.

IMPORTANT POINTS ABOUT BUDDHIST ORDER (SANGHA)

- There was provision of the membership in the Buddhist Sangha. There was no Caste restriction. Slaves, soldiers, debtors and other persons under obligation were not to enter it without the permission of their superior.
- Criminals, lepers and persons affected by infectious diseases were not given admission into it.
- On the repeated requests of the chief disciple Ananda and his foster mother Prajapati Gautami, Buddha admitted the women in the Sangha.
- Novice might be admitted from the age of eight upwards but qualified for full membership at the minimum age of twenty.
- His foster mother Gautami became the first woman to join the Sangha.
- During the four months of the rainy season the monks took up a fixed abode and meditated.
- The **Sangha** also promoted education among the people.
- The Sangha was governed by democratic principles and was empowered to enforce discipline amongst its members.

• The Sangha had the power to punish the erring members.

• **The rites of admission**

a. Putting on the three yellow or orange robes

b. Ceremonial shaving of the head

c. Pronouncing the Three Jewels and the Ten precepts

THREE JEWELS IN BUDDHISM

1. Buddha (enlightenment)
2. Dhamma (doctrine)
3. Sangha (order)

THREE TRAININGS OR TRISIKSHA

1. Morality (Sila)
2. Meditation (Samadhi)
3. Wisdom (Prajna)

TEN PRECEPTS IN BUDDHISM

1. Not to harm living beings
2. Not to take what is not given

3. Abstain from false speech
4. Abstain from evil behaviour
5. Abstain from alcoholic drinks
6. Abstain from eating at forbidden times
7. Abstain from dancing/Singing/Music/Dramatic performance.
8. Abstain from use of Jewellery/Perfumes/Garlands
9. Abstain from receiving gold/silver
10. Abstain from use of high or broad bed

SYMBOLS SIGNIFYING DIFFERENT EVENTS OF BUDDHA'S LIFE

Birth

Renunciation Enlightenment First sermon Death

Lotus & Bull Horse

Bodhi tree Wheel

Stupa

FOUR GREAT EVENTS IN THE LIFE OF BUDDHA

Mahabhiniskarman

Nirvana

Dhammachakapavartan

Maha Parinirvana or Parinirvana Renunciation Enlightenment First sermon Death

BUDDHIST COUNCILS

FIRST COUNCIL

- Year –
- Place –
- Presided over by –
- Under –
- Purpose – **Outcome**

483 BC

Satparni Cave (Near Rajagriha) Mahakassapa

Ajatasatru

To compile the Buddhist scriptures.

- All the teachings of Buddha were divided into two Pitakas.
- Vinaya Pitaka – established under the leadership of Upali.
- Sutta Pitaka – settled under the leadership of Ananda.

SECOND COUNCIL

- Year –
- Place –
- Presided over by –
- Under –
- Purpose – 383 BC

Vaisali

Saba Kami

Kalasoka/ Kakavarmin

To settle down the dispute between the two opposing groups monks of Vaishali and Patliputra and monks of Kausambi and Avanti regarding the code of discipline.

Outcome

- The council failed to bring about a compromise between the two opposing groups.
- The council ended in a permanent split of the Buddhist order into Sthaviravadins and Mahasanghikas. **THIRD COUNCIL**

- Year – 246 BC
- Place – Patliputra
- Presided over by – Moggali Putta Tissa
- Under – Ashoka
- Purpose – To revise the scriptures

Outcome

- The philosophical interpretations of the doctrines of Buddha were collected into third Pitaka called Abhidham

Pitaka.

- Heretical monks numbering sixty thousand were expelled from the order.

FOURTH COUNCIL

- Year
- Place
- Presided over by
- Under

- Purpose

Outcome

- 100 AD
- Kundalavana in Kaskhmir
- Vasumitra
- Kaniska
- To settle the disputed doctrines
- Rise of Mahayana and Hinanyana
- Compiled commentaries (Upadesa Sastras & Vibhasa Sastra) of the three pitakas.
- Decided certain controversial questions of differences that arose between the sarvastivada teachers of Kashmir and Gandhara.

PHILOSOPHY OF BUDDHISM

- Doctrine of Karma is the essential part of the teachings of Buddha.
- Nirvana is the ultimate goal of life.
- Emphasized on the moral life of an individual.
- Neither accepted nor rejected the existence of God.
- Did not believe in the permanence of soul
- Emphasised on Ahimsa (non-killing)
- Advocated the observance of middle path.
- Opposed the caste system.
- Rejected the Vedas & Vedic rituals.
- Condemned sacrifices.
- Did not acknowledge a permanent existence of anything.
- Philosophy of Patika-Samuppada according to which there is chain of twelve causes and one produces another the first being ignorance and the twelfth cycle of birth and death. According to it the root cause of all desire is ajnana (ignorance)
- It is religion without God and Soul-every object of the creation is mortal and short lived
- Nirvana is the ultimate goal of life-it is a state of supreme bliss, neither of being nor of annihilation can be attained even when still in body.
- World is full of sorrow and man is unhappy—suffering is due to desire/craving—end of desire leads to nirvana and this can be achieved by following Eight-fold

path.

- Every man in this world is made of 5 psychosomatic elements - body, feeling, perceptions, states of mind & Awareness.

CAUSES OF DECLINE OF BUDDHISM

- After Buddha no great leader could emerge in Buddhism.
- Buddha was by that time considered as one of the incarnations of Vishnu and thus became a part of Vaishnavism.
- The invading tribes from Central Asia till the time of last Gupta king adopted Hinduism and persecuted Buddhists.
- Evils associated with wealth had entered Buddhism.
- Buddhism got divided into large number of sects and sub-sects.

TOPIC

JAINISM

PERSONAL HISTORY OF MAHAVIRA

1. Real Name 2. Titles

3. Birth

4. Palace of Birth

5. Father's Name

6. Mother's Name

7. Wife

8. Son-in-Law

9. Became Monk at the age of

10. Class

11. Clan

12. Got Enlightenment at

13. Period of Asceticism

14. Companion

15. At first he followed the practices of an ascetic group Nirgranthas founded by

16. Age of Death

17. Death year

18. Place of Death

Vardhamana

Mahavira, Nirgrantha, Nayaputa, Kasava, Vasaliya, Vedehadinna, Arhat, Jaina,

Nataputta

540 BC

Kundanagrama (Basukunda) in Vaishali, Identical with Basarh Siddhartha

Trishala/ Priyankami (a Licchavi Princess, sister of Chetaka) Yashoda

Jamali

30

Kshatriya

Nyaya (Jnatrika in Sanskrit and NATA in Pali)

Jrumbikagrama/ Rijupalika under a Sal Tree at the age of 42 yrs. 12 years

Gosala Makkhaliputta

Parsvanath

72 years

468 BC

Pavapur near Rajgriha

PARSVANATH

1. 23rd Jaina Tirthankara.
2. Lived household life for 30 yrs.
3. Got enlightenment after doing penance for 84 days.
4. Described as Purushadaniya (beloved of men)
5. Died in Bengal at Mt. Sammeta.

DETAILS ABOUT JAINISM FIVE PRINCIPLES/ VOWS

Ahimsa

Satya

Asteya

Aparigraha

Brahmacharya

Non-violence Non-lying

Non-stealing Non-Possession Celibacy

- The vows observed by a Householder are known as Anuvratas and the vows observed by a monk are known as Mahavratas.
- The last principle was added by Mahavira whereas former four principles were advocated by Parsvanatha

THREE JEWELS/THREE WAY TO ATTAIN KAIVALYA

Right knowledge

Right Faith/Liberation

Right Action /Conduct Understanding of religious principles

Belief in Jinas

Observance of 5 vows (Anuvratas/ Mahavratas)

JAINA PHILOSOPHY

- Rejected the authority of the Vedas and the vedic rituals

- Advocated an austere and simple life.
- Did not believe in the existence of God.
- Believed in Karma and the transmigration of soul
- Opposed the caste system
- Gods are lower than Jina
- World not created, maintained and destroyed by a personal God but by a universal law.
- Cycle of birth and death is due to Karma, atomic layer on the soul because of the past actions.
- Annihilation of karma through practicing extreme asceticism and prevention of inflow and fixation of karma by disciplined conduct. Soul thus liberated rises to the top of the universe and stays in bliss.
- Monastic life is essential for salvation.
- Extreme non-violence
- **Anekantawada**—The doctrine which suggests that an object of knowledge is of infinite characteristics.
- **Nyayavada**—The philosophy which postulates that an individual understands an object of knowledge through a particular point of view.
- **Saptbhangi Nyaya**—According to it there are seven point of view to understand an object of knowledge.
- **Syadvada**—According to it understanding of an object of knowledge is conditional and true in a way so one should be cautious and use syat before any statement.

JAINA COUNCILS

FIRST COUNCIL

- Year
 - Place
 - President
- ### **SECOND COUNCIL**
- Year
 - Place
 - President
 - Purpose

Outcome

300BC

Pataliputra Sthulabhadra

512 AD

Vallabhi (Gujarat)

Devardhi Kshemasarmana

To collect the sacred texts and write them down systematically

- 12th Anga drawn at the first council was lost
- All the remaining Angas were written in Ardhamagadhi

MISC. INFORMATION ABOUT JAINISM

- Concept of Salaka- Purusha is associated with Jainism. According to this philosophy 63 great men arrive in each period.
- Karma is annihilated not through the knowledge as some Upanisadic teachers may have thought, but through the Penance.
- Jainism took better care of its layman than Buddhism. This is one of the reasons for the survival of Jainism and death of Buddhism in India.
- A deity Chakresvari was worshipped by the Jainas

SIMILARITIES BETWEEN BUDDHISM & JAINISM

- Both gave no importance to God
- Protest movements against some practices of Vedic rituals of Brahmanism.
- Opposed to the caste system.
- Accepted the doctrine of karma & rebirth
- Founders belonged to Kshatriya class.
- Both Mahavira & Buddha preached their religion in the common language of the people.
- Emphasised on making efforts for salvation.

HINDU COSMOLOGY

- According to Hindu cosmology the cosmos passes through cycles.
- The basic cycle is Kalpa.
- Within each Kalpa there are fourteen Manvantaras. We are now in the Manvantaras of the Kalpa of which the Manu is known as Manu Vaivasvata.
- Each Manvantaras contains seventy one Mahayugas.
- Each Mahayuga is divided into four Yugas known as Krta, Treta, Dvapara and Kali. Their lengths are 4800, 3600, 2400 and 1200 years respectively.

- We are at present in Kaliyuga which began in 3102 BC which is believed to be the year of the Mahabharata war.
- A day of Brahma is equivalent to 4320 million years.

- Vamana (Dwarf)
- Matsya (Fish)
- Kurma (tortoise)
- Varaha (Boar)
- Narasimha (Man Lion)
- Parsurama (Ram with axe)
- Rama (Prince of Ayodhya)
- Krishna
- Buddha
- Kalkin

VISHNU'S 10 AVATARAS

Measured the Universe with three steps

To save the earth when it was overwhelmed by floods

To help in the sea Manthan

To kill the demon Hiranyakashyapa.

To save Prahalad and kill Hiranyakashyapa.

To kill Kshatriyas

To kill Ravana

To kill Kansa

To save animals and put an end to sacrifices

He is yet to come. He will ride on a white horse with a sword in his hand.

8 VARIOUS HETERODOX SECTS (600 BC–300 BC

UCHCHEDAVADA/JARVADA/ANNIHILATIONISM

- Founder Ajit Kesakambalin (meaning with the hair blanket).
- Believed in materialistic philosophy.
- Ajita was the earliest propounded of materialism.
- Believed that all ended with death.
- Believed that there was no sin in doing anything.

- Believed in enjoying the pleasure of the world.
- Charvaka and Lokayata schools emerged from it.

NIYATIVADA

- Established by Nanda Vachcha.
- Second religious chief was Kisa Sankichcha.
- Third religious chief was Makhali Gosala (Supposed to be the real founder who popularised it).
- Followers are known as Ajivikas.
- Also known as Sudra Sanyasins.
- Philosophy is based on Niyati (Destiny) which means everything in the world is pre-determined.
- Denied the theory of Karma- did not believe in human efforts.
- Held that all creatures were helpless against destiny.
- Makhali Gosala was a companion of Mahavira and this sect had a lot in common with Jainism.
- Practiced complete nudity and rigorous practices.
- Flourished during the Mauryan Age.
- Atheistic in nature
- Makhali Gosala died about 487 BC after a fierce altercation with Mahavira of sravasti.
- Prospered till 1400 AD in parts of eastern Mysore and Madras.

MATERIALISM

- Developed by Brihaspati or Charvakas
- Followers are known as Charvakas or Lokayatas.
- The word Charvaka means one who believes in eat drink and the merry.
- They are also known as Nastika Shiromani.
- Believed that nothing existed which could not be understood by five senses.
- Believed the earth, water, fire and air are the only elements.
- Believed that death was ultimate and everything ended after death.
- Believed that there was no soul, no god, no rebirth, no karma
- Believed Pratyaksha i.e. perceptions was the only means of valid knowledge.
- Believed that enjoyment should be the only aim of life, by whatever means possible.
- Rejected the authority of Vedas.

- The only existing text of this philosophy is Tattvopaplavasimha of Layarashi Bhatt.

AKRIYAVADA/ANTINOMISM

- Founder was Purana Kasyapa (a Brahmin of Kasyapa Gotra)
- Believed that soul was distinct from body unaffected by anything that happened to body
- Believed in the doctrine of non-action.
- Believed that actions do not lead to either merit or demerit.
- Merged with Ajivikas.
- Sankhya school of philosophy emerged from it.

AKRITTAVADA/ASASVATAVADA/ANUVADA

- Founder was Pakuda Katayana
- Believed in the existence of seven Nikayas (elements) viz. Earth, water, air, light, sorrow, happiness, and life-these elements could neither be created nor destroyed.
- Believed that life was born out of and dissolved into these seven elements.
- Out of these seven elements four viz. Earth, water, air and light were primary elements to which Pakuda Katayana added three more viz. happiness, sorrow and life.
- Merged with Ajivikas.
- Vaisheshika school of philosophy emerged from it.

ANICHCHITVADA

- Founder was Sanjay Vetiputta.
- Believed in the doctrine of non approval and non denial of the existence of anything.
- Believed in the theory of uncertainty.

9

SIX SYSTEMS OF PHILOSOPHY

MIMAMSA

- Founder was Jaimini.
- Principal text was Jaimini's Sutas
- Also known as Purva Mimansa
- Associated with explanation of Vedas
- Vedas considered eternal, infallible and self-existent
- Vedas considered source of all knowledge
- Associated with explanation of sacrifices
- Associated with Akhyativad (Non-acceptance of illusion)
- Bhavdas wrote a Bhashya on Mimansa
- Sabar Swami wrote a Bhashya on Mimansa
- Other scholars associated with Mimansa were :
- Kumaril Bhatt
- Mandan Misra –wrote Vidhi Vivek and Bhawana Vivek.

VEDANTA

- Founder was Badrayana
- Principal text was Badryan's Brahma sutra
- Known as End of Vedas
- Known as Uttar Mimansa
- Based on Upanishadic philosophy
- Gaudi Pada was a great teacher of Advaita (new interpretation of Vedanta). He wrote Mandukya Karika
- Another great teacher and interpreter was Shankaracharya

VAISESIKA

- Founder was Uluka Kannada. Also known as Kanabhuk and Kashyap
- Principal text was Uluka's sutras
- Based on system of atomism – according to this philosophy nature is atomic

and atoms are eternal

- Recognizes five atomic elements – each has Visesa (Special characteristics) , so the philosophy is known as Vaisesika.
- These five atomic elements are- (a) Earth (b) Water, (c) Fire, (d) Air , (e) Akash (Ether)
- Recognises for non-atomic elements- (a) Time (b) Space (c) Soul (d) Mind
- Recognises dualism of matter & Soul – atoms are different from soul.
- Salvation is possible through realising this dualism and atomic nature of universe
- Shankaracharya called it Ardh Vainashik
- Prastpad wrote the commentary Padarthadharm Granth on this philosophy
- Uddaya and Sridhar also wrote commentary on Vaiseshika

NAYAYA

- Founder was Akshapad Gautama
- Principal text was Gautama's sutras
- This is school of logic & analysis
- Recognises four sources of knowledge
- Pratyaksha–Perception
- Anuman–Inference
- Upamana–Comparison
- Shabda–Verbal testimony
- Clear thinking and logical arguments considered essential means to highest bliss.
- Scholars associated with this philosophy are
- (a) Vatsayayana (wrote a Bhashya), (b) Udhotkar (c) Jayank Bhatt (d) Udayayancharya

SANKHYA

- Founder was Kapila
- Principle text was Kapila's Shasti Tantra
- Oldest School
- Atheistic philosophy
- Resembles Jainism in atheism and dualism of soul & matter
- Accepts existence of 25 basic principles known as Tatvas.
- Among 25 first is Prakriti (Matter) and twenty fifth is Purusha (person or soul)

- These 25 Tatvas give rise to creation
- Recognises Doctrine of 3 gunas (constituent qualities)
- Recognizes Theory of Satkaryavad (Action lies in its cause before its origin)
- Ishwar Krishna wrote Sankhyakarika on Sankhya philosophy
- Vachaspati Misra wrote Tattva Kaumudi on Sankhya philosophy

YOGA

- Founder was Patanjali
- Principal text was Patanjali's Yoga Sutras
- Recognises 25 Tatvas of Samkhya school with God
- In the above-mentioned context it is known as Ishwar Sankhya
- According to it God is not creator but an exalted soul which exists in eternity.
- According to it perfect control over body and senses leads to knowledge of ultimate reality
- Om is a sacred symbol
- Yoga is partial or complete arrest or cession of mental state which gives rise to new type of wisdom (Prajna) and causes destruction of Avidya.
- Bhoj wrote the commentary Bhojvriti on Yoga
- Not accepted by the Charvakas

10

ARTHASHASTRA

- Discovered by
- Written by

MAURYAN PERIOD

SOURCES OF MAURYAN HISTORY

- R Shamashashtri in 1905 AD
- Chanakya/Kautilya
- Chanakya/Kautilya was the prime minister of Chandragupta Maurya.
- Chanakya was born at Taxila in a Brahmana family. He was a highly qualified person and was the head of Taxila University.
- Arthashastra deals with mainly Political and administrative issues. It also refers to economic system. It teaches how to acquire the state and preserve it.
- Arthashastra is divided into 15 Adhikarnas (parts)
- It contains 150 Prakarnas (Chapters)
- No. of verses–4000
- After original composition it was expanded and perfected by Vishnugupta (300-400 A.D.)
- **Bhattasvamin** wrote a commentary on Arthashastra and the name of commentary is **Pratipada – Panchika**
- **Various parts of Arthashastra and the issues these parts deal with:**

1st Part Revenue matters

2nd Part Civil Administration

3rd & 4th Parts Civil Laws, Criminal Laws and Personal Laws

5th Part Duties and responsibilities of King's followers and Councillors

6th Part Seven limbs of state are mentioned

7-15 Parts deals with foreign policy, military campaigns, ways to succeed in war, how to gain popularity in enemy country, about opportunities of war and peace etc.

INDICA OF MEGASTHENES

Megasthenes was the ambassador of Seleucus Nikator in the court of Chandragupta Maurya. He lived in India from 304 BC to 299 BC. The Indica is not available in original form but some of its references are given by Strabo & Diodorus (1st C. BC), Arrian (3rd C. BC) and Pliny (1st C. AD). Strabo termed Megasthenes' references as untrue and unbelievable.

Megasthenes' references

- The references of Megasthenes throw light on the political, social, religious and economic condition of

Mauryan period.

- According to him Indian Society was divided into seven castes. These castes were

(a) Philosopher **(b)** Farmers/Husbandmen

(d) Trades & artisans **(e)** Warriors

(g) Councillors & assessors

- Slavery was absent.

- Usury (Money lending) was absent.

(c) Herdsmen/Shepherds **(f)** Overseers

- The city of Patliputra was surrounded by a wooden palisade
- Laws were severe and the crimes were rare.
- Generally people did not guard their houses and properties.
- Municipal administration of Patliputra.
- Peace and prosperity prevailed throughout Mauryan Empire.
- Wheat and barley constituted the food of the public.
- Indian worshiped Dionysius (Shiva) and Heracles (Krishna).
- The traders and the merchants had their separate organisations.

MAURYAN RULERS

CHANDRA GUPTA MAURYA (324 BC–298 BC)

- He was the founder of Mauryan Empire. He overthrew Dhana Nanda, the ruler of Nanda dynasty with the help of Chanakya. According to Milindpanho the Nanda army was commanded by its general Bhaddasala
- Greek Sources mention Chandragupta Maurya as Sandrocottus & Androcottus
- Mudrarakshasa of Vishakhadatta informs that Chandragupta Maurya received assistance from Chanakya in overthrowing the Nanda dynasty. Mudrarakshasa also informs that Chandragupta Maurya had a council which assisted him in

administrative works.

- Chandragupta played an important part in the liberation of India from the Greek rule.
- According to **Plutarch** Androcottus (Chandragupta) overran and subdued the whole of India with an army of 600000.
- Chandragupta fought a war with Seleucus, the Greek ruler of Babylon and defeated him.
- Seleucus gave the satrapies of Arachosia (Kandhar), the Paropanisdae (Kabul) and Gandhara together with portions of Ariana (Herat) and Gedrosia (Baluchistan) to Chandragupta.
- Appian refers to the matrimonial alliance between the two kings. Chandragupta married with the daughter of Seleucus.
- Chandragupta presented Seleucus with 500 elephants.
- Seleucus also sent Megasthenes as ambassador to the Mauryan court. Megasthenes lived at Pataliputra between 304 BC and 299 BC. Coming of Megasthenes as ambassador of Seleucus to the court of Chandragupta Maurya is mentioned by Athenaeus.
- **Mamulanar**, an ancient Brahmana Tamil poet and scholar, referred frequently to the invasions of South India by the Mauryans in early times. The invaders advanced as far south as Madurai and the neighbouring parts of the Tennevelly district with a great army.
- It is stated in the **Raja-vali Katha** that Chandragupta, the king of Pataliputra, abdicated the throne in favour of his son and followed **Bhadrabahu** to Sravanabelgola in the South.
- This book also mentions that Chandragupta killed himself by starving (performed Sallekhana).
- According to **Parisishtaparvan** of Hem Chandra Chandragupta Maurya was converted to Jainism, he abdicated throne and went to Sravanabelgola.
- Chandragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusara.
- Plutarch tells that Chandragupta Maurya met Alexander when he was young.
- **Justin** – refers to the meeting between Chandragupta and Alexander. Alexander got annoyed with the behaviour of Chandragupta and ordered to kill him but Chandragupta could escape.
- **Eudemus** was the last Greek king who was compelled to leave India by Chandra Gupta Maurya.

BINDUSARA (298 BC–273 BC)

- There was a council of 500 at the court of Bindusara whose head was

Khallataka.

- The people of Taxila revolted twice during the reign of Bindusara. On the first occasion, the revolt was on account of the bad administration of the province by prince Susima. The revolt was put down by Ashoka. The second revolt could not be suppressed on account of the death of Bindusara.
- **Arya-Manjusri-Mulkalpa** states that Chanakya survived his master and continued to work as the Minister of Bindusara.
- Taranath, the Tibetan historian, tells us that “Chanakya accomplished the destruction of the nobles and kings of 16 towns and made Bindusara master of all the territory between eastern and western sea.
- Bindusara conquered the whole area between the eastern & western oceans—Taranath
- **Daimachus** succeeded Megasthenes as ambassador to the court of Bindusara. He tells that Bindusara requested Antiochos I Soter, king of Syria, to send him some dried figs, sweet wine and a sophist. Antiochus sent dried figs and sweet wine but he refused to send Sophist because it was unlawful in Greeks to buy or sell a human being.
- Pliny tells that Ptolemy Philadelphus was a contemporary of Bindusara and ruled in Egypt. He also sent his envoy named **Dionysius** to India.

ASHOKA (269 BC – 232 BC)

- Succeeded his father Bindusara but seems to have fought a battle of succession.
- Coronation took place in 269 BC after winning the battle of succession.
- Divyavadana—Ashoka was sent to quell rebellion at Taxila.
- Divyavadana—Ashoka was the viceroy of Ujjain.
- Divyavadana—Upagupta initiated Ashoka into Buddhist fold.
- Dipavamsa & Mahavamsa—Ashoka was initiated into Buddhist fold by Nigrodh, a seven year old monk and later on under the influence of Mogaliputta Tissa Ashoka became a full Buddhist.
- Ashoka reduced the land revenue of Lumbini village to 1/8th of produce.
- The ideals of Ashoka’s Dhamma are found in Sigolovadasutta of Digha Nikaya.
- Ashoka instructed his officials—Vhyushtha, Rajjuka, Pradeshika & Yuktas to visit their regions.
- When Ashoka was only 18, he was appointed by his father the viceroy of Avanti Rashtra with its capital at Ujjayini. It was there that Ashoka married Mahadevi and his son Mahendra and his daughter Sanghmitra were born from her.

- Ashoka captured the throne with the help of the ministers headed by Khallataka and Radhagupta.
- He summoned the third Buddhist council.
- Sri Lankan chronicle mentions that there was an interregnum of Four years during the rule of the Mauryas

Queens of Ashoka

- Asandhimitta
- Tissarakkha
- Karuvaki

- Padmavati Chief Queen

The queen of Ashoka responsible for injuring the Bodhi-tree

Mentioned in the queens edict inscribed on a Pillar at Allahabad in which religious and charitable donations are referred to. Mother of Kunala, Referred to in the Divyavadana.

Important events during Ashoka's reign

- Kalinga war
- Visit to Bodhi Tree
- Creation of the post of Dhamma Mahamatras
- Visit to Rummindei (the birth place of Buddha)
- Visit to Khotan

Various references about Ashoka

- Ashoka killed 99 of his brother but spared one Tissa
- Ashoka put six of his brother to death

9th year 11th year 14th year 21st year 33rd year

- Ashoka freed prisoners on the occasion of his day of coronation
- Vidisha Mahadevi was the wife of Ashoka
- The name Ashoka

Mahavamsa

Taranath

5th pillar edict

Mahabodhivamsa

Maski Gurjara, Nittur and Udegolan Edicts

- Mahendra was the illegitimate son of Ashoka
- Mahendra was the younger brother of Ashoka
- Ashokan Pillars at Rajagriha and Shravasti
- Sakum was the great grandfather of Ashoka
- Revolt at Taxila & sending of Ashoka to suppress it
- Role of Ashoka in spreading Buddhism to Sri Lanka
- Ashokavardhan was the personal name and Piyadassi the title of Ashoka
- Revolt in Taxila during the time of Bindusara against the higher officials
- Three different phases of life of Ashoka Kamasoka, Chandasoka and

Dhamasoka

INSCRIPTIONS OF ASHOKA INTRODUCTION

- Ashoka was the first Indian ruler to issue edicts.

Mahavamsa Dipavamsa Hiuen Tsang

Hiuen Tsang

Rajatarangini

Ashokavadana

Dipavamsa & Mahavamsa V. Smith

Ashokavadana

Taranath

- Ashoka began the tradition of issuing the edicts in 259-260 BC (after ten years of his coronation).
- Maximum Ashokan ins. had been discovered from Mysore.
- 6th pillar edict mentions that Ashoka began to issue major rock edicts in his 13th regnal year.
- First Ashokan edict was discovered by Padre Teifentheilar in 1750 AD at Delhi (Delhi-Meerut pillar).
- First Ashokan edict was deciphered by James Prinsep in 1837 AD. In 1837 Prinsep published his complete reading of the entire Delhi-Topra pillar Edict.
- Decipherment was helped by the discovery of bilingual edict from Share-Kuna (near Kandhar). This edict was written in Greek and Aramaic Script.
- Most of the inscriptions are composed in Brahmi Script (Left to Right) and Prakrit language. The language used in Ashokan edicts except Kandhar is Prakrit. The Prakrit language was used mostly because it was spoken and

understood by majority of common public.

- Yerragudi Inscription (AP) is in old Brahmi Script (Right to Left)
- Manshera & Shabazgarhi Inscriptions are in Kharosthi Script. The Kharosthi Script was born out of Aramaic Script.
- Taxila & Laghman Inscriptions are in Aramaic Script.
- **Maski, Gurjara, Nittur and Udegolan** inscriptions mention full name Ashoka i.e. Devanampiya Ashoka Piyadassi.
- Lauriya Nandangarh pillar has sign of Peacock.
- **Mahasthan** (Bogra district Bangladesh) and **Sohgaura** (Gorakhpur district, U.P.) copper plates inscriptions give information about Mauryan village administration, mention construction of granaries and describes measures for famine relief..
- Ashoka's inscriptions make a mention of three kinds of regions –

Vijita Ashoka's Empire

Ant or Pratyant Neighbouring independent countries

Aprant Independent tribals in boarder areas.

- Among queens only Karuvaki and among sons only Tivara find mention in inscriptions.
- In edicts Ashoka generally refers to himself by the title Devanampiya Piyadassi.

DETAILS OF ASHOKAN EDICTS

A. Major Rock Edicts

- Throws light on the Personal history of Ashoka
- These edicts have been discovered from 8 places.
- The sites of major rock edicts are –
 - a.** Shabazgarhi (Peshawar) **b.** Manshera (Peshawar)
 - Written in Kharosthi script
 - Written in Kharosthi script
 - c.** Kalsi (near Dehradun, Uttranchal)
 - d.** Sopara (Maharashtra)
 - e.** Girnar (Gujarat)
 - f.** Dhauli (Orissa)
 - g.** Jaugada (Orissa)
 - h.** Yerragudi inscription (Kurnool district, A.P.)

B. Minor Rock Edicts

- Throws light on the Personal history of Ashoka
- These edicts have been discovered from various places.
- Maski minor R.E. is related to Ashoka's coronation. Here Ashoka has addressed himself as **Buddha Shakya**.
- The sites of minor rock edicts are –

Rupnath (MP)

Gurjara (MP)

Aharara (UP)

Shasaram (Bihar)

Bairat (Rajasthan)

Siddapura (Karnataka)

Jatinga Rameshwar (Karnataka) Brahmagiri (Karnataka)

Maski (Karnataka)

C. Pillar Edicts

Gavimath (Mysore, Karnataka)

Palkigundu (Mysore, Karnataka)

Rajula Mandagiri (Karnataka)

Yerragudi (Karnataka)

Saro Maro (Sahdol, M.P.)

Nittur (Karnataka)

Udegolan(Karnataka)

Pangaduria (M.P.- recently discovered by K.D. Vajapeyi)

- The commemorative pillar edicts are Rummindei and Nigalisagar (both in Nepal).
- Seventh pillar edict is the longest pillar edict.
- The Kausambi Pillar was brought to Allahabad by Akbar. This Pillar contains first six pillar edicts, Queen's edict, Kosam Schism edict, Prashasti of Samudragupta written by Harisena and some decrees of Jahangir.
- Chapada is the only known scribe from Asokan epigraphs.
- Two Ashokan pillars originally located at Topra & Meerut were brought to Delhi by Firoz Shah Tughluq.
- The Meerut pillar was installed on a hill in the Kush ki Shikar (hunting palace) on Wazirabad ridge.

- The Topra pillar was installed on the top of his palace at Firoz Shah Kotla. It bears all the seven edicts of Ashoka. The seventh pillar edict is found only on this pillar. It also contains three short inscriptions of Visaldeva Chahamana of Sakambhari dated 1164 AD.
- Nagalisagar pillar makes a mention of construction of the Stupa of Buddha Konkanmana.
- Total number of pillar edicts are thirteen, they are inscribed on ten pillars – out of thirteen seven are major pillars edicts four are minor pillar edicts and two are commemorative pillar edicts.
- Schism edicts (one each) are found on Allahabad, Sanchi and Sarnath Pillars.

D. Major Pillar Edicts

- The major pillar edicts are seven in number. The contents of major pillar edicts are appendix to rock edicts.
- These edicts have been discovered from 6 places.
- The sites of major pillar edicts are –
- Delhi Topra (Punjab)
- Delhi-Meerut (UP)
- Allahabad (UP)
- Lauriya Araraj (Bihar)
- Lauriya Nandangarh (Bihar)
- Rampurva (Bihar)

E. Minor Pillar Edicts

- Contains regal announcements of Ashoka and also highlight Ashoka's obsession with Dhamma
- These edicts have been discovered from 3 places.
- The sites of minor pillar edicts are –
- a. Allahabad (UP) b. Sanchi (UP) c. Sarnath (UP)

F. Cave Inscriptions

- These inscriptions are located in Barabar and Nagarjuni hills located in north of Gaya in Bihar.
- Barabar group contains four caves. Three of these caves bear the inscription of Ashoka. The names of these

caves are Karna Chaupar cave, Sudama cave and Lomasa Rishi cave.

- These caves were donated to Ajivaka monks.
- Nagarjuni caves bear the inscription of Dasaratha, the grand son of Ashoka.

- Fourth cave of Barabar group contain the inscription of Maukhri king Anantvarman
- Barabar hills were also known by the name of Khalatika hills/ Pravara hills/Gorathgiri hills.

BHABRU/ BAIRAT EDICT

- This was discovered by Capt. Burt in 1840 AD from Bairat (42 miles north east of Jaipur) in Rajasthan.
- Bhabru Inscription is inscribed on a wheel of rock and is written in boustrophedon style.
- This edict is now preserved in Calcutta museum. Alexander Cunningham shifted it to Calcutta.
- Mentions Ashoka's faith in Buddha, dharma and Sangha (Buddhist Trinity). It refers to Ashoka's conversion to Buddhism and his reverence for this religion.

KALINGA EDICTS

- The Dhauli and Jaugada inscriptions do not contain edict number XI, XII, XIII. Instead of these edicts the

Dhauili and Jaugada inscriptions contain two separate edicts (edict no. XIV and XV).

- These edicts contain instructions to the officials and city magistrates of Tosali and Samapa (in Kalinga).
- Ashoka asked them to perform their duties honestly and in an impartial manner.
- The edict XV contains instructions for the officials at Ujjain and Taxila also.

CONTENTS OF ASHOKAN EDICTS

1st Major Rock Edict

- Ashoka orders prohibition of animal sacrifices and holding of festivals which involved killing of animals.
- Earlier in his kitchens large number of living animals were killed daily for meat. But now killing of only three

animals - two peacocks and a deer and the latter not invariably were permitted for royal kitchen, **2nd Major Rock Edict**

- The Cholas, Pandyas, Satyaputra and Keralaputra (Chera) and Greek king

Antiochus are mentioned.

- Provision of two medical services one for human beings and the other for animals

- Roads were built, wells were dug and Medicinal herbs and fruit trees were planted for the use of men and

beasts.

3rd Major Rock Edict

- Royal order to Yuktas, Rajukas and Pradesikas to go on tour every five years to instruct people in Dhamma

and other matters.

- Advice to show obedience to parents, friends and relatives and to be generous to Brahmanas and Sramanas.

- Advice to refrain from killing animals and possessing wealth and spending much.

4th Major Rock Edict

- Good effect of dharma on society, its impact in the creation of harmony.

5th Major Rock Edict

- Appointment of Dhamma Mahamatras to disseminate the idea of Dhamma and to look after the welfare of

those devoted to Dhamma in his 14th regnal year.

- Mention of the people of west—the Greeks, the Kambojas, the Gandharas, the Risthikas and the Pitiniks. **6th Major Rock Edict**

- Promotion of the welfare of the people and their happiness so that they may gain heaven.

- Instructs to be informed about public business at all times and at all places

7th Major Rock Edict

- Kings wishes that all men should develop self-control, purity of mind, gratitude and firm faith **8th Major Rock Edict**

- Mention of the visit to Bodhi tree in 11th regnal year.

- Mention of Dhamma Yatras in place of pleasure tours to promote general welfare of the people. **9th Major Rock Edict**

- Highlights fruitlessness of various ceremonies.

- Emphasises on the performance of the ceremony of Dhamma i.e. to have regard for teachers, to make

donations to Sramanas and Brahmanas etc.

10th Major Rock Edict

- Desirability of Ashoka not for worldly fame and glory but the glory in sphere of Dhamma. **11th Major Rock Edict**

- Extols the efficacy of the gift of Dhamma. This leads to gain in this world, and in the next there is infinite

merit.

12th Major Rock Edict

- Highlights the policy of tolerance of Ashoka. Mentions that the king honours all sects and works for the

advancement of the essential doctrines of all sects.

- Beloved of the gods does not consider gifts or honour to be as important as the advancement of the essential doctrine of all sects.

- Whosoever honours his own sect or disparages that of another man, wholly out of devotion to his own sect, he harms his own sect even more seriously.

13th Major Rock Edict

- Largest Ashokan Edict

- Mentions conquest of Kalinga after 8 years of his coronation and horrors of war.

- Writes that one hundred thousand people were killed and hundred and fifty thousand people were deported.

- King's remorse over the war and large scale killing and his adoption of Dhamma.

- King's consideration of victory by Dhamma to be foremost victory

- Mentions names of five Greek Kings: Antiochus, Ptolemy, Antigonus, Magas & Alexander

- Mentions names of a number of tribes within the territory of the empire: Gandhara, Yona, Kambojas,

Nabhakas, Nabhapantis, Bhojas, Pitiniks, Andhras & Parindas

- This edict also explains the policy of Ashoka that one who does wrong should be forgiven as far as it is possible to forgive him.

- Conciliates the forest tribes of his empire, but he warns them he has power

even in his remorse, and he asks them to repent, lest they be killed.

- Ashoka considers victory by Dhamma to be the foremost victory.

MAURYAN ADMINISTRATION CENTRAL ADMINISTRATION

1. Tirthas
2. Adhyakshas
3. Mahamatyas

4. Amatyas Highest category of officials formed the inner council apart from council of ministers, They were eighteen in number

High ranking officials next to Tirthas concerned mostly with economic functions and some military duties. They were twenty-seven in number.

Higher ranking officials irrespective of the duties assigned to them. There are references to them as a member of ministerial or advisory council as well. The Arthashastra used this term in the sense of a minister.

High ranking officers who acted as present-day secretaries, who functioned in administrative and judicial capacity.

TIRTHAS

1. Mantrin
2. Purohita
3. Senapati
4. Yuvaraja Chief Minister

Chief priest

Commander-in-chief Crown-prince

These four were the highest functionaries among the eighteen Tirthas

5. Dauvarika
6. Antarvesika
7. Prasasta
8. Samaharta
9. Sannidhata
10. Pradeshtri
11. Nayaka
12. Paura
13. Vyavaharika
14. Karmantika

15. Mantri Parisadha Adhyaksha

16. Dandapal

17. Dvara Pala

18. Antapal

ADHYAKSHAS

1. Panyadhayaksha

2. Samsthadhyaksha

3. Pautavadhyaksha

4. Navadhyaksha

5. Sulkadhyaksha

6. Akaradhyaksha

7. Lohadhyaksha

8. Sauvarnika

9. Sitadyaksha

Chamberlain

Chief of the harem

Inspector-General of Prisons Collector-General

Treasury- chief

Divisional Commissioner City constable

Governor of the Capital

Chief Judge

Chief of the mines

President of the Council Police Chief

Chief of the Home Defence Chief of the Frontier Defence

Superintendent of Commerce/fixed prices

Superintendent of Markets/Check wrong practices , Trade routes

Superintendent of Weight & measures

State Boats

Superintendent of Tolls/Customs

Superintendent of Mines

Superintendent of Iron

State goldsmith

Superintendent of Crown lands, Agriculture **10. Akasha patala Adhyaksha** **11.**

Rathadhyaksha

12. Hastyadhyaksha
13. Ayudhgaradhyaksha 14. Kosadhyaksha
15. Kosthagaradhyaksha 16. Kupyadhyaksha
17. Manadhyaksha
18. Mudradhyaksha
19. Pattanadhyaksha
20. Ganikadhyaksha
21. Devatadhyaksha
22. Lakshanadhyaksha
23. Rupadarshaka
24. Vivitadhyaksha
25. Sutradhyaksha
26. Sitadhyaksha
27. Go'dhyaksha

IMPORTANT MAHAMATYAS

1. Vaharikamahamatta
2. Senanaya Mahamatta
3. Sabbatthaka Mahamatta
4. Drona mapaka mahamatta Superintendent of Accounts Superintendent of Chariot
Superintendent of Elephant force Production & maintenance Superintendent of Treasury Superintendent of Store-house Conservator of forests
Superintendent of Measurement Superintendent of Passports Superintendent of Ports
Superintendent of Courtesan Religious institutions
Superintendent of Mint
Regulation of currency
Superintendent of Pastures Superintendent of Weaving Head of Slaughter houses
Superintendent of cattle
5. Dhammamahamattas
6. Antamahamattas
7. Itijhakamahamattas **ESPIONAGE SYSTEM**
 1. Pulisani
 2. Pativedaka
 3. Sanstha

4. Sancharah

5. Cara

6. Gudhapurushah Judicial officer

Military officer

Chief Minister

Assessment officer

Officer for Dhamma

Office in charge of frontier areas Officer-in-charge of women/harem

Public relation officers, gathered public opinion and reported to the king Special reporter, had direct access to the king at any hour

Spies who worked by remaining at a place

Spies who were mobile

Secret agents mentioned in Arthashastra

Secret agents mentioned in Arthashastra

ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS AND OFFICERS ASSOCIATED WITH THEM

1. Province

2. District

3. Group
of Villages

4. Village

Kumara (Governors, title given to sons of king)

Aryaputra (Governors, title given to persons of royal blood, usually king's relatives) Pradesikas (head of the district, looked after law & order and revenue collection) Rajuka (looked after rural administration and justice)

Yukta (secretarial staff)

Sthanika (looked after tax collection)

Gopa (Accountant)

Gramika (Village headman)

PROVINCES DURING THE MAURYAN AGE

Province

a. Uttarapatha **b.** Dakshinapatha **c.** Prachya

d. Kalinga

e. Avantiratha **f.** Aparanta

MAURYAN ARMY

Capital

Taxila

Suvarnagiri Patliputra Tosali

Ujjain

Saurashtra

- There is no definite source which could provide exact information about the strength of the Mauryan army.

But some references of Arthashastra and references of some Greek writers throw light on Mauryan army.

- According to **Pliny** it comprised 6 lakh infantry 30000 cavalry, and 9000 elephants.
- According to **Plutarch** it consisted of 200000 infantry, 80000 horses, 6000 elephants and 8000 war chariots.
- Chanakya refers to Chaturangbala comprising infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants.
- According to Megasthenes Army administration was run a council of 30 members. This council was divided

into by six committees. Each committee consisted of five members. Each committee was entrusted with a particular branch namely infantry, cavalry, elephants, chariots, admiralty and transport & supplies.

- The officers and soldiers were paid in cash.

• Salaries of some important officers

Mantri, Purohita & Senapati – 48000 Pana

Treasurer & chief collector – 24000 Pana

Minister

Accountants & clerks

– 12000 Pana

– 500 Pana

DIFFERENT TYPES OF TAXES

Bhaga

Bali

Kar or Pratikar

Pranaya
Pindkar
Senabhaktam
Aupayinak
Parshva
Kaushtheyak
Parihinak
Rajju
Vibit
Utsang
Chor Rajju
Land revenue (Reference of 1/6th in Arthashastra)
Additional Tax (other than Bhaga)
Additional Tax (other than Bhaga)
Emergency Tax
Collected annually from the entire village
Tax for Army (During Military Expedition)
Offering taken on special occasion
Tax collected from traders on excess profit
Tax collected from the land which was benefited from irrigation facilities
Tax collected on destroying the state agricultural land by animals
Tax collected at land measurement
Tax collected for the security of animals
Offering to king
Tax collected for the search of thief

TAXES IN CASH AND IN KIND MENTIONED IN ARTHASHASTRA

1. Customs duty (**Sulka**) which consists of: import duty (**Pravesya**), export duty (**Nishkramya**) and octroi and other gate tolls (Dwarbahirikadeya)
2. Transaction tax (Vyaji) including Manavyaji (Transaction tax for crown goods)
3. Share of production (**Bhaga**) including 1/6th share (Shadbhaga)
4. Tax (Kara) in cash
5. Taxes in kind (**Pratikara**) including Labour (Vishti). Supply of soldiers (Ayudhiya)
6. Countervailing duties or taxes (Vaidharana).

7. Road cess (Vartani)
8. Monopoly tax (Parigha)
9. Royalty (Prakriya)
10. Taxes paid in kind by villages (Pindakara)
11. Army maintenance tax (Senabhaktam)
12. Surcharges (Parshva).

ANIMAL CAPITALS SURMOUNTING THE ASHOKAN PILLARS

Rampurva I
Lauriya–Nandangarh Basarh
Rampurva II
Sarnath
Sanchi
Sankisa
Single Lion
Peacock
Single Lion
Single Bull
Four Lions
Four Lions
Single Elephant

BUDDHIST MONKS SENT AS MISSIONARIES

Mahind & Sanghmitra Majhantika
Sona & Uttara
Maharakshita
Mahadeva
Rakshita
Dhammarakshita
Maha Dhammarakshita Majjhima
Sri Lanka
Kashmir & Gandhara Suvarnabhumi Yona
Mahisa Mandala Vanavasi
Aparantaka
Maharashtra
Himalayan Region

MAURYAN ART

PILLARS

- Mainly found in association with the inscriptions.
- Majority of the art remains are animal capitals of the pillars.
- Pillars were normally cut from a single block of stone.
- The Pillars are tapering from bottom to top.
- The Pillars are also polished with glossy shine.
- These pillars are made up of two different types of stone.
- Spotted white and red sandstone from the Mathura region.
- Buff-coloured fine grained hard sandstone usually with small black spots from Chunar near Banaras.
- Stone was cut and polished with great technical skill.
- There is striking uniformity of style in the pillar capitals.

STUPAS

- A Stupa was a funeral mound which was originally made of earth but later on of bricks and stone.
- It was also called Chaitya which literally means a monument raised on the spot of the funeral pyre.
- It was usually the practice to plant a tree on the spot where the dead body was buried or burnt. Hence, the

sacred tree is called Chaitya tree.

- A Stupa consisted of the following elements. On a low circular base, there was a hemispherical dome called

Anda.

- The top of the Stupa was truncated to accommodate another structure called Harmika which was considered

of the platform was fixed a post surrounded by umbrellas or Chatravali.

- In course of time, the domes of the Stupas became more elongated and gradually they assumed a cylindrical form.

- There was a natural development sides to demarcate it as a holy spot.
- The railing was provided on the four sides by four gateways called Tornos.
- The path of circumambulation (Pradakshina) was provided around the Stupa on the ground level inside the railing.

- In course of time, second Pradakshina-patha was provided about the middle of the dome by creating a raised platform around the Stupa.
- The second Pradakshina was also furnished with railing (Vedika). A third railing was provided around the Harmika.
- The Stupas at Bharhut and Sanchi are most important.

TOPIC

POST MAURYAN PERIOD (200 BC–300 AD)

THE INDO-GREEKS

The post Mauryan period of Indian history was characterised by the arrival of various foreign ruling groups in India. These groups got settled in north-western part of Indian sub-continent in the beginning and thereafter gradually moved into other parts of India. Among all these groups, the Indo-Greeks were the first to enter India. They were followed by the Sakas and Kushanas.

The Indo-Greek Kingdom (or sometimes Greco-Indian Kingdom) covered various parts of the northwest and northern Indian subcontinent from 183 BCE to around 30 BCE. It was ruled by a succession of more than thirty Hellenic and Hellenistic kings, often in conflict with each other.

The kingdom was founded when the Greco-Bactrian king Demetrius invaded India in 183 BCE, ultimately creating an entity which seceded from the powerful Greco-Bactrian Kingdom centred in Bactria (today's northern Afghanistan). Since the term "Indo-Greek Kingdom" loosely describes a number of various dynastic polities, it had numerous capitals, but the city of Taxila in northern Pakistan was probably among the earliest seats of local Hellenic rulers, though cities like Pushkalavati and Sakala (apparently the largest of such residences) housed a number of dynasties in their times, and based on Ptolemy's *Geographia* and the nomenclature of later kings, a certain Theophila (unidentified till now) in the south was also probably a satrap or royal seat at some point. During the two centuries of their rule, the Indo-Greek kings combined the Greek and Indian languages and symbols, as seen on their coins, and blended ancient Greek, Hindu and Buddhist religious practices, as seen in the archaeological remains of their cities and in the indications of their support of Buddhism. The Indo-Greek kings seem to have achieved a very high level of cultural syncretism, the consequences of which are still felt today, particularly through the diffusion and influence of Greco-Buddhist art.

The Indo-Greeks ultimately disappeared as a political entity around 30 BCE following the invasions of the Indo-Scythians, although pockets of Greek populations probably remained for several centuries longer under the subsequent rule of the Indo-Parthians and Kushanas.

EARLY GREEK PRESENCE IN INDIA

- In 326 BCE Alexander the Great conquered the north-western part of the Indian subcontinent as far as the

Hyphasis (Beas) River, and established satrapies as well as several cities, such as Bucephala (on the name of his horse), until his troops refused to go further east. The Indian satrapies of the Punjab were left to the rule of Porus and Taxiles, who were confirmed again at the Treaty of Triparadisus in 321 BCE, and remaining Greek troops in these satrapies were left under the command of general Eudemus. Sometime after 321 Eudemus toppled Taxiles, until he left India in 316 BCE. Another general also ruled over the Greek colonies of the Indus: Peithon, son of Agenor, until his departure for Babylon in 316 BCE, and a last one, Sophytes, may have ruled in northern Punjab until around 294 BCE.

- According to Indian sources, Greek (“Yavana”) troops seem to have assisted Chandragupta Maurya in toppling the Nanda Dynasty and founding the Mauryan Empire. By around 312 BCE Chandragupta had established his rule in large parts of the north-western Indian territories. In 305 BCE, Seleucus I led an army to the Indus, where he encountered Chandragupta. The confrontation ended with a peace treaty, and “an intermarriage agreement”, meaning either a dynastic marriage or an agreement for intermarriage between Indians and Greeks. Accordingly, Seleucus ceded to Chandragupta his north-western territories i.e. Ariana (Herat), Arachosia (Kandhar), Gedrosia (Makran Coast/Baluchistan) and Paropanisdae (Kabul) and received 500 war elephants”.
- The Greco-Bactrians maintained a strong Hellenistic culture at the door of India during the rule of the Mauryan empire in India, as exemplified by the archaeological site of Ai-Khanoum. When the Mauryan empire was toppled by the Sungas around 185 BCE, the Greco-Bactrians expanded into India, where they established the Indo-Greek kingdom.

ESTABLISHMENT OF THE INDO-GREEK KINGDOM

- The founder of the Indo-Greek Kingdom was Demetrius I “the Invincible” (205–171 BCE).
- The invasion of northern India, and the establishment of what would be known as the “Indo-Greek kingdom”,

started around 180 BCE when Demetrius, son of the Greco-Bactrian king Euthydemus I, led his troops across the Hindu Kush. In the process of the invasion, the Greeks seem to have occupied territory as far as the capital

Patliputra, before ultimately retreating and consolidating in north-western India. Apollodotus, seemingly a relative of Demetrius, led the invasion to the south, while Menander, one of the generals of Demetrius, led the invasion to the east. Following his conquests, Demetrius received the title Invincible, a title never given to any king before.

- Written evidence of the initial Greek invasion survives in the Greek writings of Strabo and Justin, and in Sanskrit in the records of Patanjali, Kâlidâsa, and in the Yuga Purana, among others. Coins and architectural evidence also attest to the extent of the initial Greek campaigns.

EVIDENCE OF THE INITIAL INVASION

- The Roman historian Justin also mentioned the Indo-Greek conquests, describing Demetrius as “King of the Indians” (“*Regis Indorum*”), and explaining that after vanquishing him Eucratides in turn “put India under his rule”.
- Greek and Indian sources tend to indicate that the Greeks campaigned as far as Pataliputra until they were forced to retreat following the coup staged by Eucratides back in Bactria circa 170 BCE, suggesting an occupation period of about eight years. Alternatively, Menander may merely have joined a raid led by Indian Kings down the Ganga, as Indo-Greek territory has only been confirmed from the the Kabul Valley to the Punjab.
- To the south, the Greeks occupied the areas of the Sindh and Gujarat down to the region of Surat (Greek: Saraostus) near Mumbai (Bombay), including the strategic harbour of Barigaza (Bharuch), as attested by several sources and as evidenced by coins dating from the Indo-Greek ruler Apollodotus I.
- The 1st century CE Periplus of the Erythraean Sea describes numerous Greek buildings and fortifications in Barigaza, although mistakenly attributing them to Alexander, and testifies to the circulation of Indo-Greek coinage in the region.
- From ancient authors (Pliny, Arrian, Ptolemy and Strabo), a list of provinces, satrapies, or simple regional designations, and Greek cities from within the Indo-Greek Kingdom can be discerned (though others have been lost), ranging from the Indus basin to the upper valley of the Ganges.
- The Indo-Greeks were the first to issue gold coins in India. Their copper coins were known as ***Drama***.

INDIAN SOURCES

- Various Indian records describe Yavana attacks on Mathura, Panchala, Saketa, and Pataliputra.

- Patanjali, a grammarian and commentator on Panini around 150 BCE, describes in the *Mahâbhâsya*, the

invasion in two examples using the imperfect tense of Sanskrit, denoting a recent event; “The Yavanas (Greeks) were besieging Saketa” and “The Yavanas were besieging Madhyamika” (the “Middle country”).

- The *Anushasanaparava* of the Mahabharata affirms that the country of Mathura, the heartland of India, was under the joint control of the Yavanas and the Kambojas. The *Vayupurana* asserts that Mathura was ruled by seven Greek kings over a period of 82 years.

- Accounts of battles between the Greeks and the Sunga in Central India are also found in the *Mâlavikâgnimitram*, a play by Kâlidâsa which describes an encounter between Greek forces and Vasumitra, the grandson of Pushyamitra, during the latter’s reign.

- Also the Brahmanical text of the Yuga Purana, which describes Indian historical events in the form of a prophecy, relates the attack of the Indo-Greeks on the capital Pataliputra, a magnificent fortified city with 570 towers and 64 gates according to Megasthenes, and describes the ultimate destruction of the city’s walls.

- According to the Yuga Purana a situation of complete social disorder follows, in which the Yavanas rule and mingle with the people, and the position of the Brahmins and the Sudras is inverted.

EPIGRAPHIC REMAINS

- The pillar of Heliodorus at Vidisa.

- Reh inscription - A pillar discovered in Reh, in the Ganges valley 350 km south-east of Mathura mentions

Menander: “The great king of kings, the great king Menander, saviour, steadfast in the Law (dharma), victorious and unvanquished...”

- Another inscription 17km from Mathura, the **Maghera inscription**, contains the phrase “In the 116th year of the Greek kings...”, suggesting Greek rule in the area until around 70 BCE, as the “Greek era” is thought to have started around

186 BCE.

CONSOLIDATION

- The first invasion was completed by 175 BCE, as the Indo-Greeks apparently contained the Sungas to the area eastward of Pataliputra, and established their rule on the new territory. Back in Bactria however, around 170 BCE, an usurper named Eucratides managed to topple the Euthydemid dynasty. He took for himself the title of king and started a civil war by invading the Indo-Greek territory, forcing the Indo-Greeks to abandon their easternmost possessions and establish their new oriental frontier at Mathura, to confront this new threat.
- The Hathigumpha inscription, written by the king of Kalinga, Kharavela, also describes the presence of the *Yavana* king “Demetrius” with his army in eastern India, apparently as far as the city of Rajagriha about 70 km southeast of Pataliputra and one of the foremost Buddhist sacred cities, but claims that Demetrius ultimately retreated to Mathura on hearing of Kharavela’s military successes further south.
- Menander was another important Indo-Greek ruler of India. According to Periplus the coins of Menander were in circulation in Bharooch. Coins of Menander and his son Strato-I have been discovered from Mathura. His capital was at Sialkot (Sakala). Milindpanho of Nagasen contains the philosophical discussions between Menander and Nagasen.
- Menander was succeeded by son Strato-I. He was minor at the time of sitting at throne. He was followed by Strato-II. With him the Euthydemus dynasty came to an end.
- The Euthydemus dynasty was followed by Eucratides dynasty emerged on the forefront. Antialkidas and Hermius of this dynasty ruled in India. Antialkidas sent Heleodorus as his ambassador in the court of Sunga ruler Bhagabhadra. Hermius was the last Indo-Greek ruler of India.

THE INDO-SCYTHIANS

- The Indo-Scythians were a branch of the Indo-Iranian Sakas (Scythians), who migrated from southern Siberia into Bactria, Sogdiana, Arachosia, Gandhara, Kashmir, Punjab, and into parts of Western and Central India, Gujarat and Rajasthan, from the middle of the 2nd century BCE to the 4th century CE.
- The first Saka King in India was Maues or Moga who established Saka power in Gandhara and gradually extended supremacy over north-western India. Indo-Scythian rule in India ended with the last Western Satrap Rudrasimha III in 395

CE.

- The invasion of India by Scythian tribes from Central Asia, often referred to as the Indo-Scythian invasion, played a significant part in the history of India as well as nearby countries. In fact, the Indo-Scythian war is just one chapter in the events triggered by the nomadic flight of Central Asians from conflict with Chinese tribes which had lasting effects on Bactria, Kabul, Parthia and India as well as far off as Rome in the west.
- The Scythian groups that invaded India and set up various kingdoms, may have included besides the Sakas other allied tribes, such as the Parama Kambojas, Bahlikas, Rishikas and Paradas.

Settlement in Sakastan

- The Sakas were settled in areas of southern Afghanistan, still called after them Sakastan. From there, they progressively expanded into the Indian subcontinent, where they established various kingdoms, and where they are known as “Indo-Scythians”.
- The Arsacid emperor Mithridates II (c 123-88/87 BCE) had scored many successes against the Scythians and added many provinces to the Parthian empire, and apparently the Bactrian Scythian hordes were also conquered by him. A section of these people moved from Bactria to Lake Helmand in the wake of Yue-chi pressure and settled about Drangiana (Sigal), a region which later came to be called “Sakistana of the Skythian (Scythian) Sakai”, towards the end of first century BCE. The region is still known as Seistan.
- Sakistan or Seistan of Drangiana may not only have been the habitat of the Saka alone but may also have contained population of the Pahlavas and the Kambojas. The Rock Edicts of king Ashoka only refer to the Yavanas, Kambojas and the Gandharas in the northwest, but no mention is made of the Sakas, who immigrated in the region more than a century later.
- The Kshaharat dynasty of Sakas ruled in Maharashtra region and the Kardamaka dynasty ruled in Saurashtra region.
- Bhumaka was the first ruler of Kshaharat dynasty. Nahapana was the most important ruler of Kshaharat dynasty. He issued gold coins (Suvarna) and silver coins (Karshapana). 1 Suvarna was equal to 35 Karshapanas. He was defeated and killed by Gautmiputra Satkarni.
- Chastana was the first ruler of Kardamaka dynasty. Rudradaman was the most

important ruler of Kardamaka dynasty. The famous Junagarh inscription belongs to him.

THE INDO-PARTHIAN KINGDOM

- Parthia was located in the west of Bactria towards Caspian sea. It was a bordering province of Selucid empire.
- Mithradat I (171 BC–131BC) was the real founder of the Indo-Parthian Kingdom.
- Gondophernes (20 CE–46bCE) was the most powerful ruler of Indo-Parthian Kingdom. His kingdom extended into areas that are in present-day Afghanistan, Pakistan and Northern India. Saint Thomas came to India during the reign of king Gondophares in about 45 AD.
- For most of its history, the capital of the kingdom was at Taxila (in present-day Pakistan), but during the last few years of its existence the capital was at Kabul (present-day Afghanistan).
- The kingdom barely lasted one century. It started to fragment under Gondophares' successor Abdagases. The northern Indian part of the kingdom was captured by the Kushans around 60 CE.

Indo-Parthian territories

- The Parthians ended up controlling extensive territories in Northern India, after fighting many local rulers such as the Kushan Empire ruler Kujula Kadphises, in the Gandhara region. Gondophares was the ruler of areas comprising Arachosia, Seistan, Sindh, Gandhara, and the Kabul valley, but it does not seem he held territory east beyond the Punjab.
- The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea is a surviving 1st century guide to the routes commonly being used for navigating the Arabian Sea. It describes the presence of Parthian kings fighting with each other in the area of Sindh, a region traditionally known at that time as "Scythia" due to the previous rule of the Indo-Scythians there:
- An inscription from **Takht-i-Bahi** near Hadda bears two dates, one in the regnal year 26 of the Maharaja Guduvhara (again thought to be Gondophares), and the year 103 of an unknown era.
- The Indo-Parthians seemingly occupied the area of Gandhara between around 20 CE, when Gondophares took over from the Indo-Scythians, to around 60 CE, when Kujula Kadphises established Kushan rule there.

KUSHANA EMPIRE

- The Kushan Empire was created by the Kushan tribe of the Yuezhi confederation, an Indo-European people from the eastern Tarim Basin, China, possibly related to the Tocharians. They had diplomatic contacts with Rome, Persia and China, and for several centuries were at the center of exchange between the East and the West.

ORIGINS

- Chinese sources describe the *Guishuang*, *i.e.* the “Kushans”, as one of the five aristocratic tribes of the Yuezhi, also spelled Yueh-chi, a loose confederation of Indo-European peoples. The Yuezhi are also generally considered as the easternmost speakers of Indo-European languages, who had been living in the arid grasslands of eastern Central Asia, in modern-day Xinjiang and Gansu, possibly speaking versions of the Tocharian language, until they were driven west by the Xiongnu in 176–160 BCE. The five tribes constituting the Yuezhi are known in Chinese history as Xiûmì, Guishuang, Shuangmi, Xidun, and Dûmì.
- Chinese sources tell of the construction of the Great Wall in the third century BC and the repulse of various marauding tribes. Forced to head west and eventually south, these tribes displaced others in an ethnic knock-on effect which lasted many decades and spread right across central Asia. The Parthians from Iran and the Bactrian Greeks from Bactria had both been dislodged by the Shakas coming down from somewhere near the Aral Sea. But the Shakas had in turn been dislodged by the Yueh-chi who had themselves been driven west to Sinkiang by the Hiung-nu. But the Yueh-chi continued to press on the Shakas, and having forced them out of Bactria, it was sections or clans of these Yueh-chi who next began to move down into India in the second half of the first century AD.”
- The Yuezhi reached the Hellenic kingdom of Greco-Bactria, in the Bactrian territory (northernmost Afghanistan and Uzbekistan) around 135 BCE. The displaced Greek dynasties resettled to the southeast in areas of the Hindu Kush and the Indus basin (in present day Pakistan), occupying the western part of the Indo-Greek Kingdom.

EARLY KUSHANS

- In the following century, the *Guishuang* gained prominence over the other Yuezhi tribes, and welded them into a tight confederation under Commander Kujula Kadphises.

- Gradually wresting control of the area from the Scythian tribes, the Kushans expanded south into the region traditionally known as Gandhara (An area lying primarily in Pakistan's Pothwar, and Northwest Frontier Provinces region but going in an arc to include Kabul valley and part of Qandahar in Afghanistan) and established twin capitals near present-day Kabul and Peshawar then known as Kapisa and Pushklavati respectively.
- The Kushan writing system used the Greek alphabet, with the addition of the letter Sho.
- The Kushans adopted elements of the Hellenistic culture of Bactria. They adapted the Greek alphabet (often corrupted) to suit their own language and soon began minting coinage on the Greek model. On their coins they used Greek language legends combined with Pali legends (in the Kharoshthi script), until the first few years of the reign of Kanishka. After that date, they used Kushan language legends (in an adapted Greek script), combined with legends in Greek (Greek script) and legends in Pali (Kharoshthi script).
- The Kushans are believed to have been predominantly Zoroastrian and later Buddhist as well. However, from the time of Wima Takto, many Kushans started adopting aspects of Indian culture like the other nomadic groups who had invaded India, principally the Royal clans of Gujjars. Like the Macedonians and Egyptians they absorbed the strong remnants of the Greek Culture of the Hellenistic Kingdoms, becoming at least partly Hellenised. The first great Kushan emperor Wima Kadphises may have embraced Saivism, as surmised by coins minted during the period. The following Kushan emperors represented a wide variety of faiths including Zoroastrianism, Buddhism, and possibly Saivism.
- The rule of the Kushans linked the seagoing trade of the Indian Ocean with the commerce of the Silk Road through the long-civilized Indus Valley. At the height of the dynasty, the Kushans loosely oversaw a territory that extended to the Aral Sea through present-day Uzbekistan, Afghanistan, and Pakistan into northern India.
- The loose unity and comparative peace of such a vast expanse encouraged long-distance trade, brought Chinese silks to Rome, and created strings of flourishing urban centers.

TERRITORIAL EXPANSION

- Direct archaeological evidence of a Kushan rule of long duration is basically available in an area stretching from Surkh Kotal (located in the southern part of the region of Bactria), Begram, Peshawar (the summer capital of the Kushans),

Taxila and Mathura (the winter capital of the Kushans).

- Other areas of probable rule include Khwarezm (Russian archaeological findings) Kausambi (excavations of the Allahabad University), Sanchi and Sarnath (inscriptions with names and dates of Kushan kings), Malwa and Maharashtra, Orissa (imitation of Kushan coins, and large Kushan hoards).
- The recently discovered Rabatak inscription tends to confirm large Kushan dominions in the heartland of India. The lines 4 to 7 of the inscription describe the cities which were under the rule of Kanishka, among which six names are identifiable: Ujjain, Kundina, Saketa, Kausambi, Pataliputra, and Champa (although the text is not clear whether Champa was a possession of Kanishka or just beyond it).
- Northward, in the 2nd century CE, the Kushans under Kanishka made various forays into the Tarim Basin, seemingly the original ground of their ancestors the Yuezhi, where they had various contacts with the Chinese. Both archaeological findings and literary evidence suggest Kushan rule, in Kashgar, Yarkand and Khotan.
- As late as the 3rd century CE, decorated coins of Huvishka were dedicated at Bodhi Gaya together with other gold offerings under the “Enlightenment Throne” of the Buddha, suggesting direct Kushan influence in the area during that period.

MAIN KUSHAN RULERS

Kujula Kadphises (15CE – 65 CE)

- His conquests probably took place sometime between 45 and 60, and laid the basis for the Kushan Empire which was rapidly expanded by his descendants.
- Kujula issued an extensive series of coins and fathered at least two sons, Sadashkana (who is known from only two inscriptions, especially the Rabatak inscription, and apparently never have ruled), and seemingly Vima Taktu.
- Kujula Kadphises was the great grandfather of Kanishka.

Vima Kadphises (65CE – 78 CE)

- Vima Kadphises was a Kushan emperor from around 90–100 CE, the son of Sadashkana and the grandson of Kujula Kadphises, and the father of Kanishka I, as detailed by the Rabatak inscription.
- Vima Kadphises added to the Kushan territory by his conquests in Afghanistan and north-west India. He issued an extensive series of coins and inscriptions.

Kanishka I (78CE – 101 CE)

- The rule of Kanishka I, the second great Kushan emperor, fifth Kushan king,

who flourished for at least 28 years from c. 127. Upon his accession, Kanishka ruled a huge territory (virtually all of northern India), south to Ujjain and Kundina (It is thought that is it the locality of Kaundinyapura on the Wardha River in the Amravati Division of Vidarbha, or Berar in Maharashtra) and east beyond Pataliputra, according to the Rabatak inscription: “In the year one, it has been proclaimed unto India, unto the whole realm of the governing class, including Koonadeano (Kaundinya<Kundina) and the city of Ozeno (Ozene, Ujjain) and the city of Zageda (Saketa) and the city of Kozambo (Kausambi) and the city of Palabotro (Pataliputra) and so long unto (i.e. as far as) the city of Ziritambo (Sri-Champa).”

- The Qila Mubarak fort at Bathinda was built by Kanishka.
- His territory was administered from two capitals: Purushapura (now Peshawar in northern Pakistan) and Mathura, in northern India. He is also credited (along with Raja Dab) for building the massive, ancient Fort at Bathinda (Qila Mubarak), in the modern city of Bathinda, Indian Punjab.
- Nagarjuna, the founder of Madhyamika School of philosophy, lived in his court. He wrote Prajnaparamitasutra.
- Charaka, the author of Charaka Samhita, lived in his court.
- The Buddhist scholars Ashvaghosha and Vasumitra also lived in his court. Ashvaghosha wrote Buddhacharita, Saundriyananda and Shariputraprakranana.
- Kanishka organised 4th Buddhist council. This council was presided by Vasumitra. Ashvaghosha was its vicepresident.
- Parshava, Sangharaksha and Matrachetta were other scholars living in the court of Kanishka. Sangharaksha was the chief priest of Kanishka.

Vâsishka

- Vâsishka was a Kushan emperor, who seems to have a short reign following Kanishka. His rule is recorded as far south as Sanchi (near Vidisa), where several inscriptions in his name have been found, dated to the year 22 (The Sanchi inscription of “Vaksushana”—i.e. Vasishka Kushana) and year 28 (The Sanchi inscription of Vasaska—i.e. Vasishka) of the Kanishka era.

Huvishka

- Huvishka was a Kushan emperor from the death of Kanishka (assumed on the best evidence available to be in 140 CE) until the succession of Vasudeva I about forty years later. His rule was a period of retrenchment and consolidation for the Empire. In particular he devoted time and effort early in his reign to the exertion of greater control over the city of Mathura.

Vasudeva I

- Vasudeva I was the last of the “Great Kushans.” Named inscriptions dating from year 64 to 98 of Kanishka’s era suggest his reign extended from at least 191 to 225 CE. He was the last great Kushan emperor, and the end of his rule coincides with the invasion of the Sassanids as far as north-western India, and the establishment of the Indo-Sassanids or Kushanshahs from around 240 CE.

TOPIC

12

THE GUPTA AGE

The SOURCES OF GUPTA PERIOD

LITERARY SOURCES

- A. Devichandraguptam of Vishakhadatta
- B. Kalidasa
- C. Mrichchhakatikam of Shudraka
- D. Kamasutra of Vatsyayana
- E. Nitisara of Kamandaka
- F. Fa-hien

DESCRIPTIONS OF FA-HIEN

- Visited India during 399 AD – 414 AD
- Visited India during the reign of Chandragupta II Vikramaditya.
- Fa-Hien wrote his experiences in his book named **Fu-kuo-Ki**.
- He came to India by the land route and went back by the sea route.
- Four other persons joined him in his mission but unlike Fa-hien, they have not left behind any account what

they saw and did.

- Fa-hien did not mention the name of Chandragupta II.
- Fa-hien tells us that the region south of Mathura was called the Middle Kingdom (Malwa). This region was

the stronghold of Brahmanism. The Government was very much enlightened and efficient.

- The people were numerous and were happy.
- They have not to register their households, or attend to any magistrates and their rules; only those who

cultivate the royal land have to pay a portion of the grain from it. The king did not impose any restrictions on the movements of his subjects.

- There were no wine-shops or shambles in market-places.
- The king governs without decapitation or other corporal punishments.

Criminals were simply fined, lightly or heavily, according to the circumstances of each case. Even in cases of repeated attempts at wicked rebellion, they only have their right hands cut off.

- The king's bodyguard and attendants received salaries.
- Throughout the whole country the people do not kill any living creature, nor drink intoxicating liquor, nor eat onions or garlic.
- In buying and selling commodities they used cowries.
- Fa-hien tells us that the Chandalas lived separately from the other people.

When they entered a city or a bazar, they were required to strike a piece of wood as warning of their approach so that the other people may not be polluted by their contact with them. They were the only offenders against the laws of piety.

- They used to go for hunting and deal in flesh.
- It was the custom of the kings, elders and gentry to build shrines give lands, houses, gardens, with men and bullocks for cultivation. Binding title-deeds were written out, which subsequent kings did not dare disregard.
- The revenue of the Government was mainly derived from the rents of the Crown lands. The royal officers were paid fixed salaries and there was no occasion for them to live on the people.
- Charitable institutions were numerous. People built alongside or out of the way roads, homes of charity where shelter with bed and food and drink is offered to travellers and wandering monks passing to and fro; but the time allowed for remaining is different in each case.
- Fa-hien tells that the rich people have instituted in their capitals free hospitals, and hither come all poor or helpless patients, orphans, widows and cripples. They are well taken care of, a doctor attend them, food and medicine being supplied according to their needs. They were all made quite comfortable, and when they were cured, they go away.
- Fa-hien was very much impressed by the city of Pataliputra and also the palace of Asoka. According to him, the palace with its various halls was built by spirits who piled up stones, constructed walls and gates, carved designs, engraved and inlaid after no human fashion.
- Ashoka's palace was still in existence at the time of Fa-hien's visit.
- Near a Stupa built by Asoka, Fa-hien saw two monasteries, one of which was occupied by the followers of the Mahayana school and the other by the Hinayana school. The total number of monks living in both the monasteries was six or seven hundred. However, they were so famous for their learning that their lectures were attended by students and inquirers from all quarters. Fa-hien

himself spent three years there studying Sanskrit. He was happy to get certain books on monastic discipline. Fa-hien admired the splendid procession of images carried on about 20 huge cars richly decorated. These processions were taken out every year and paraded through the city on the 8th day of the second month. Those were common in other parts of the country.

- Fa-hien also tells us that the city of Gaya was empty and desolate. The holy places of Bodhgaya were surrounded by jungle. An extensive tract of the country near the foot of the mountains which was thickly populated in the 5th century B.C. was now sparsely inhabited. There were only 200 families in the city of Shravasti. The holy places of Kapilvastu and Kusinagara were waste and deserted. There were only a few monks and lay attendants who clung to the places on account of their sanctity and devotion and lived on the alms offered to them.
- It appears from his description that Buddhism was flourishing in the Punjab and Bengal and that it was gradually gaining ground in Mathura where he noticed twenty establishments.
- Cowry shells formed the ordinary currency for smaller transactions but gold Suvarnas and Dinaras mentioned in inscriptions were also in free circulation.

INSCRIPTIONS

Prayaga Prashasti of Samudragupta

- Composed by Harisena, the court poet of Samudragupta. Harisena was also the minister of peace and war (Sandhivigrahika).
- Mentions the military campaigns of Samudragupta.
- Language—Sanskrit
- Script—Brahmi
- Style—Champu
- Does not mention the Asvamedha sacrifice performed by Samudragupta.

Eran inscription of Samudragupta

- Mentions Samudragupta as great donor when he was happy and dangerous when angry.

Bhittari inscription of Skandagupta

- Mentions Huna invasion
- Mentions that Samudragupta revived Asvamedha sacrifice.

Junagarh rock inscription of Skandagupta

- Mentions repairs carried out to the Sudarsana Lake and construction of Vishnu Lakshmi temple.

Poona copper plate inscription of Prabhavati Gupta

- Mentions Ghatotkacha as the founder of Gupta Empire.
- Mentions that Samudragupta performed many Asvamedha sacrifices.

THE GUPTA MONARCHS

SRI GUPTA

- The origin of the Gupta Empire shrouded in obscurity. According to the genealogical list, the founder of the dynasty was person named Sri Gupta.
- He is given the simple title of Maharaja, which shows that he was only a minor chief ruling a small territory in Magadha.
- He has been identified with Maharaja Che-li-ki-to (Sri-Gupta), who according to I-tsing, built a temple near Mrigashikhavana for some pious Chinese pilgrims.
- Gupta was succeeded by his son, Ghatotkacha, who is also styled Maharaja.

CHANDRAGUPTA-I (319 AD – 350 AD)

- After Ghatotkacha, his son Chandragupta I came to the throne.
- Unlike his predecessors, the latter assumed the grandiloquent title of Maharajadhiraja.
- We may therefore, regard him as the first monarch to raise the power and prestige of the dynasty.
- He married the Licchavi princess, Kumaradevi as is evident from the epithet “Licchavidauhitrā applied to Samudragupta in inscriptions.
- The marriage is also attested by some gold coins, which bear on the obverse the standing figure of the king offering a ring or bracelet to his spouse with the legends Chandra or Chandragupta on the right and on the left Kumaradevi or Sri-Kumaradevi, and on the reverse we have the legend Licchavayah, and the goddess (perhaps Simbavabini Durga) seated on a lion.

SAMUDRAGUPTA (350 AD – 375 AD)

- Samudragupta was a great conqueror. He fought many battles and won all of them. Prayaga Prashasti provides detail explanation of his military achievements. The Prayaga Prashasti classifies the campaigns of Samudragupta into four categories –

Campaign against 12 kings of south India

Campaign against 9 kings of Aryavata

Campaign against the chiefs of wild forest tribes

Campaign against frontier kingdoms and republics

- During his campaign in south India Samudragupta defeated 12 monarchs of Dakshinapatha. But these monarchs were released and re-instated after they

accepted his suzerainty. In south India he followed the policy of Grahnamokshanugraha.

- The policy followed by Samudragupta was different in case of north India. He defeated and exterminated nine kings of Aryavata. This policy was known as Prasabhodharan.
- Samudragupta also defeated the kings of the forest countries (Atavika kings). He compelled them to become his servants. Their territories probably lay in Central India.
- According to Chinese source Samudragupta's contemporary Ceylonese king Meghavarna sent two monks to Bodhgaya on a religious mission. The monks faced difficulty in finding suitable accommodation. So they complained to their king after returning home. Meghavarna sent a formal embassy with rich gifts to Samudragupta seeking his permission to build a monastery at Bodhgaya for the use of Ceylonese pilgrims.
- This request was granted by Samudragupta. A magnificent structure was built at Bodhgaya. This structure was known as the Mahabodhi Sangharama in the time of Yuan Chwang.
- Bhattari inscription of Skandagupta mentions that Samudragupta revived Asvamedha sacrifice which had long been in abeyance.
- He issued gold coins, showing a horse standing before a sacrificial post (Yupa) on the obverse and on the reverse the queen and the legend "Asvamedhaparakramah."
- He was called Kaviraja which indicates that he was a great poet.
- Samudragupta was also a proficient player of lute. Some coins depict him sitting on a high blacked couch and playing on the lute (Veena).
- The Allahabad pillar inscription also says that Samudragupta put to shame Brihaspati, Tumburu and Narada.
- Samudragupta adopted the title of Sarvarajochcheta. He was the only Gupta ruler to adopt this title.
- V.A. Smith called him Napoleon of India.

CHANDRAGUPTA II (375 AD – 415 AD)

- He was the son of Samudragupta by queen Dattadevi.
- His daughter Prabhavati Gupta was married to Vakataka king Rudrasena II. She was born of Kuberanaga, a Naga princess. Besides Kuber Naga, Chandragupta had another wife named Dhruvadevi or Dhruvaswamini.
- He had at least two sons -Kumaragupta I and Govindagupta. Latter was a Viceroy at Vaisali.

- Chandragupta II fought a war against the Saka ruler of Western India.
- He issued silver currency in close imitation of that of the Shakas after the occupation of their territory. Bana's Harshacharita gives a reference to this event. According to its testimony Chandragupta II killed his adversary by strategy and not in an open fight. According to Bana the king of the Shakas, while courting another man's wife, was butchered by Chandragupta.
- Chandragupta made Ujjain his second capital. Ujjain enjoyed pre-eminence as a religious and political centre.
- Fa-Hien stayed in the Imperial city of Pataliputra for three years. He learnt Sanskrit language and translated various Buddhist works.
- On his return journey Fa-Hien proceeded to Tamralipti (Tamluk, Midnapur district). Here he embarked for Ceylon and Java.

KUMARAGUPTA I (415 AD – 455 AD)

- Certain gold coins of Kumaragupta I prove that he performed the Asvamedha sacrifice.
- We learn from the Bhitari pillar inscriptions that the last years of Kumaragupta I were seriously disturbed owing to the invasion of the Pusyamitras.
- It appears from certain gold and silver coins of Kumaragupta I that his object of adoration was Kartikeya rather than Vishnu

SKANDAGUPTA (455 AD – 467AD)

- Sudarsana Lake was repaired during his reign. The embankment of the lake was restored which had burst due to excessive rain-fall.
- Parnadatta was the governor of Girnar. His son Chakrapalita rebuilt the embankment in Solid masonry at an immeasurable cost. To commemorate the successful completion of the work, a temple of the god Chakrabhrit or Vishnu was constructed in 458 A.D.
- Skandagupta's usual title was Kramaditya.
- On some of his silver coins he bears the more famous title of Vikramaditya as well.
- In the Kahaum inscription he is called "Ksitipatasatapatih" or lord of a hundred kings.

PURUGUPTA (467 AD – 473 AD)

- Was the son of Kumaragupta by queen Ananta Devi.
- On his coins Purugupta assumes the title, Sri-Vikrama.
- Appointed Vasubandhu, the famous Buddhist teacher as the teacher of his queens and the crown prince Baladitya.
- From Bharsar a hoard of coins was discovered. These coins have the legend

Prakashaditya written on the reverse. In the opinion of Hornell and Dr Raychaudhary Prakashaditya was another title of Purugupta. These scholars have attributed these coins to king Purugupta.

5. Vasubandhujivanvrita written by Parmartha mention Purugupta as Buddhist.

KUMARAGUPTA II (473 AD – 477 AD)

- Ruled as provincial head during the rule of Purugupta.
- Adopted the title of Kramaditya.
- Issued only one type of gold coin i.e. Archer type.
- In Sarnath inscription he is mentioned as protector of earth. This inscription is inscribed on a Buddha image.

This Buddha image was constructed by one Abhaymitra.

- It was in his time in 472-73 ad that a guild of silk-weavers repaired the temple of the Sun at **Dasapura**, originally constructed in 436-37 A.D. during the reign of Kumaragupta I.

BUDDHA GUPTA (477 AD – 497 AD)

- Re-established the old glory of Guptas.
- Was the son of Purugupta by queen Chandradevi.
- Various inscriptions of Buddhagupta have been discovered. These inscriptions include – Eran inscription, Nalanda inscription, Sarnath inscription.
- In Damodarpur inscription he has been referred as Parambhattaraka Maharajadhiraja.
- He issued copper coins also.
- He was the strongest Guptas ruler after Skandagupta.
- Territory between river Kalindi and Narmada, Pundravardhana (north Bengal), Malwa were part of his empire.
- According to Huiyen Tang he was Buddhist. He gave donations to Nalanda Vihara.

- Title – Sri Vikrama

NARASIMHA GUPTA

- He bore the epithet, **Baladitya**.
- Was a Buddhist.
- Was disciple of Vasubandhu.
- Was the son of Purugupta by queen Chandradevi.
- According to Huiyen Tang he defeated and imprisoned Huna King Mihirakula.

But released Mihirakula under the influence of his mother.

- Adopted the title of Parambhagvata.
- The Guptas empire got fragmented into three parts during his rule. These parts were –

Sl. No. Name of the King Region

1. Narasimha Gupta Magadha
2. Bhanu Gupta Malwa
3. Vainya Gupta Bengal

- Narasimha Gupta was succeeded by Krishnagupta, Harshagupta and Jivitagupta-I.

BHANUGUPTA

- Established independent rule in Malwa.
- During the latter's reign, the Hunas under Toramana wrested Malwa from the Guptas.
- The Eran inscription, dated 510 A.D., testifies that Bhanugupta's general, Goparaja, died in a very famous

battle against Hunas, and his wife performed sati. This is the earliest recorded reference of the practice of Sati.

VAINYAGUPTA

- Established independent rule in Bengal.
- A copper plate inscription discovered from Gunaidhar (modern Bangladesh) provides information about him.

KUMARAGUPTA-III

- Rose to the throne of Magadha after Jivitagupta-I.
 - Was the last significant ruler of Guptas dynasty.
 - His funeral rites were performed at Prayaga.
 - He was succeeded by Damodargupta.
 - Last rulers of Guptas dynasty – Damodargupta – Mahasenagupta – Devagupta II – Madhavagupta – Adityasena
- Devagupta III – Vishnugupta II - Jivitagupta-II.
- Jivitagupta-II was the last ruler of Guptas dynasty.

ROYAL OFFICERS ASSOCIATED WITH ECONOMIC AFFAIRS

- Agraharika –
- Saulkika –
- Gaulmika –
- Varnadhikarin –
- Akshapatalika –
- Rupadarasaka –
- Mahapramatri –
- Atavikapalaka –
- Tadayukataka –
- Hiranyasamudayika –
- Panchakula –

- Nisada
- Kaivarta
- Karavara
- Paulkasa
- Ayaskara
- Charmakara
- Karmara
- Napita
- Rajaka
- Rajiuvartaka
- Shilpi
- Matsyabhandhaka
- Pindaraka
- Lekhaka
- Yantrika

–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–

-
-
-
-
-
-
- Collector of land tax

Collector of tolls

Collector of tax on woods & forests Upholder of Varna-Dharma in society

Incharge of accounts

Examiner of coins

In charge of survey

Conservator of forests

Treasury officer

Currency officer

Tax collector

CASTES & PROFESSIONS

Hunter

Fisherman

Leather worker

Sweeper

Potter

Leather worker

Smith / blacksmith

Barber

Washer man

Rope maker

Artist/Sculptor

Fishermen

Buffalo herdsman

Clerk

Technician

VARIOUS PORTS

On Eastern coast

Arikamedu

Korkai

Kaveripattanam Masulipatnam Pouduca of Periplus Traces of Roman settlement

Also known as Colchoi

Also known as Puhar or Poompuhar. Famous port of Sangam Age Masalia of Periplus

Nagapattanam Tamarlipti

Barygaza Barbricum Cambay

Goa

Kalyan

Quilon

Sopara

Also known as Nikam

Also known as Tamruk and Gang of Periplus. The most famous port during the Mauryan and post–Mauryan period on eastern coast

On Western Coast

Also known as Broach and Bhargukachha

Near the mouth of Indus

Known as Khambhat in Arabian Sources, known as Stambhatirth in Sanskrit literature Entriport of horse trade during medieval times

Also known as Kalliena

Most important in medieval times

Also known as Soparaka

DIFFERENT TYPES OF LANDS

1. Kshetra – Cultivable land
2. Khilya – Waste land
3. Vasti – Habitable land
4. Aparantaka – Forest land
5. Gapathasarah – Pasture land

TRADE ROUTES

- The most important internal route during the pre-Gupta was known as the Uttarapatha or the Great Northern

Route, which went from Taxila to Chandraketugarh and connected several important commercial centres.

- There were many subsidiary routes of this main route, such as those from Varanasi to Mathura, Varanasi to Vaishali, Saketa to Shravasti, Kapilvastu to Rajgir, Vaishali to Rajgir viz Pataliputra and Champa to Tamarlipti.
- The route between north India and South India lay through Avanti across the Vindhyas and was known as the Dakshinapatha or the Great Southern Route. It connected Mahismati with Amaravati.
- This route also consisted of several segments, such as those from Pratishthana (Paithan) to Nasik, Bharukachchha to Soparaka and Kalyan and Kaveripattanam or Poompuhar.

TOPIC

HARSHAVARDHANA

INTRODUCTION

- He was the son of Prabhakar Vardhan and younger brother of Rajyavardhan, a king of Thanesar. He was born into a royal family of the Bais Rajput, a royal Rajput clan.
- The origin of Harsha's ancestors is obscure and little is known about them. According to Banabhatta, *Harshaæárita* they were descended from a certain *Pushpabhuti* who founded and ruled the kingdom of *Sthanvisvara* or modern Thanesar.
- The famous Chinese Buddhist pilgrim monk, Xuanzang (Huien-Tsang/Yuan Chuang), states that Harsha was a or of the Vaishya caste but makes no comment about his family's origins.
- According to Alexander Cunningham, Xuanzang must have mistaken the *Vaisa* for Bais Rajput. Thomas Watters has pointed out this is most unlikely as Xuanzang, "had ample opportunities for learning the antecedents of the royal family, and he must have had some ground for his assertion." However, Banabhatta clarifies that the *Bais Rajput* descent must have been correct considering the *Harshacarita* the author Bâna never stated his background to be strangely non Kshatriya. Harsha's Royal descent being known (rulers of Sthanvisvara, modern Thanesar) and his sister being married into prominent Kshatriya families of Maukharis. (a highly contentious occurrence, had Harsha's family not been of royal or Kshatriya descent).
- Moreover, upon his formal coronation ceremony, Harsha took the title *Rajputra*.

EARLY HISTORY OF VARDHAN DYNASTY

- After the downfall of the Gupta Empire in the middle of the sixth century CE, North India was split into several independent kingdoms. The Huns had established their supremacy over the Punjab and parts of central India. The northern and western regions of India passed into the hands of a dozen or more feudatory states.
- Naravardhana was the founder of Pushyabhuti dynasty.
- Prabhakar Vardhan, the ruler of Sthanvisvara, who belonged to the Pushyabhuti

family, extended his control over neighbouring states. Prabhakar Vardhan was the first king of the Vardhana dynasty with his capital at Thaneswar.

- After Prabhakar Vardhan's death in 606 CE, his eldest son, Rajya Vardhan, ascended the throne. Harsha Vardhana was Rajya Vardhan's younger brother.
- This period of kings from the same line has been referred to as the Vardhan dynasty for distinction purposes in some publications, though the dynasty was not necessarily known as the Vardhan dynasty in its era.

HARSHA AND HIS REIGN

- Rajya Vardhan's and Harsha's sister Rajyasri had been married to the Maukhari king, Grahavarman. This king, some years later, had been defeated and killed by king Deva Gupta of Malwa and after his death Rajyasri had been cast into prison by the victor. Harsha's brother, Rajya Vardhan, then the king at Thanesar, could not stand this affront on his family, marched against Deva Gupta and defeated him. But it so happened at this moment that Sasanka, king of Gauda in Eastern Bengal, entered Magadha as a friend of Rajya Vardhana, but in secret alliance with the Malwa king. Accordingly, Sasanka treacherously murdered Rajya Vardhan.
- The news of this disaster was communicated to Harsha by Cavalier named ***Kuntala***. On hearing about the murder of his brother, Harsha resolved at once to march against the treacherous king of Gauda and killed Deva Gupta in a battle. Harsha ascended the throne at the age of 16.
- Titles of Harsha—Rajaputra, Magadharaja, Sakalottarapatha, Shiladitya.

Harsha's wars

- Though quite a young man when he came to power, Harsha proved himself a great conqueror and an able administrator. After his accession, Harsha united the two kingdoms of Thanesar and Kanauj and transferred his capital from Thanesar to Kanauj. He also brought Bengal, Bihar and Orissa under his control. He conquered Dhruvasena of Gujarat and gave his own daughter in marriage to him. He also conquered Ganjam, a part of the modern Orissa State.
- Harsha's ambition of extending his power to the Deccan and Southern India were stopped by Pulakeshi II, the Chalukya king of Vatapi in Northern Karnataka. Pulakeshi defeated Harsha's army on the banks of the river Narmada. A truce was agreed upon and the river Narmada was marked as the southern boundary of Harsha's kingdom.

Patron of Buddhism and Literature

- Harsha's father, Prabhâkara was, apparently a sun-worshipper and of Bargujar

clan, his brother followed Hinayana Buddhism while, according to Bana, Harsha himself was a Mahayana Buddhist. Harsha was a tolerant ruler and supported all faiths - Buddhism, Hinduism and Jainism. Early in his life, he seems to have been a follower of Sun Worship, becoming a patron of Shaivism and Buddhism later on.

- His sister Rajyashri's conversion to Buddhism presumably had a positive effect on his support to the religion. His approach to religion is evident in his celebrated play *Nagananda*. The play's theme is based on the Jataka tale of the Bodhisattva Jimutavahana, but Harsha introduces the Goddess Gauri, Shiva's consort, as the saviour of Jimutavahana, a feature not found in the Jataka.
- According to the Chinese Pilgrim Xuanzang, who visited his kingdom in 636 CE, Harsha built numerous stupas in the name of Buddha. Xuanzang entered a grand competition organized by Harsha and won the theological debate. Harsha also became a patron of art and literature. He made numerous endowments to the University at Nalanda. Two seals of Harsha have been found in Nalanda in the course of the excavations. All these favours and donations of the great emperor were crowned by the construction of a lofty wall enclosing all the buildings of the university to defend the institution from any other possible attack. In 643 he held a Buddhist convocation at Kanauj which was reputedly attended by 20 kings and thousands of pilgrims.
- In 641, following Xuanzang's visit, Harsha sent a mission to China which established the first diplomatic relations between China and India. The Chinese responded by sending an embassy consisting of Li Yibiao and Wang Xuanze, who probably traveled through Tibet and whose journey is commemorated in inscriptions at Rajagriha - modern Rajgir, and Bodhgaya.
- Harsha was a noted author on his own merit. He wrote three Sanskrit plays – *Nagananda*, *Ratnavali* and *Priyadarsika*. His reign is comparatively well documented, thanks to his court poet Bana and Xuanzang. Bana composed an account of Harsha's rise to power in *Harsha Charita*, the first historical poetic work in Sanskrit language. Xuanzang wrote a full description of his travels in India.

Fiscal system of Harsha

- The primary source of the income of the state was land revenue called Bhoga, which was one-sixth of the produce and was paid in kind.
- Hiranya, Bali, sales tax, toll tax etc were other sources of income besides presentation by feudatory chiefs to the emperor.
- On the whole the burden of taxation was not heavy on the subjects. The main

items of expenditure were the personal expenditure of the king and his household and place, the army, the salary of civil officers, public welfare works, charity etc.

POST HARSHA PERIOD

- Harsha died in the year 647 AD. He ruled for 41 years. After Harsha's death, apparently without any heirs, his empire died with him. The kingdom disintegrated rapidly into small states. The succeeding period is very obscure and badly documented, but it marks the culmination of a process that had begun with the invasion of the Huns in the last years of the Gupta Empire.
- Neither Bana's nor Huan Tsang's account gives any details of this period. A few tantalising glimpses are offered in some ancient Chinese and Tibetan Books. The one in the Tibetan book *The White Annals* tells that Harsha had sent an envoy to the Chinese Emperor, who in turn sent a Chinese one (named in the Chinese sources as Wang Xuance) with a convoy of thirty horsemen. When they reached India they found that Harsha was dead and his minister Arjuna had usurped the throne. Arjuna is said to have been persecuting the Buddhists and attacked the envoy who had to flee to Tibet. The Tibetan king decided to avenge the insult to the Chinese emperor and sent the envoy back with an army that finally managed to defeat and take Arjuna and his family as prisoners, and sent them back as prisoners to the Chinese emperor.

TOPIC

ART & ARCHITECTURE

PRE-MAURYAN ART

- The word stupa finds mention in the Rigveda twice.
- Various palaces find mention in the Jatakas. They are known as Vimana, Rajasthan & Vasdhav.
- Deul & Chaitya too find mention in the Jatakas. These words were used for place of worship.
- Eastern slope of Vaibhargiri hills of Rajgir has a rectangular platform which is known as Jarasandh ki Baithak
- The most important place of Rajgir is Saptaparni cave.
- The famous residence of Buddha in Rajgir was Gridhkut Vihara.
- Madkrishh Vihara and Amravan Vihar of Jivak are in Rajgir.
- Maniyar math is in Rajgir.

MAURYAN ART

- Megasthenes description of Patliputra—the biggest city of India—known as Palibothra—length is 80 stadia and width is 15 stadia—surrounded by a wooden palisade—has 64 gates.
- Ashoka built Dharamrajika stupa at Sarnath.
- Ashoka founded the city of Lalitpatan in Nepal.
- His queen Vidisa-Mahadevi built a Vihara at Sanchi.
- Kumhrar is a place near Patna which contains two tanks Katu & Chaman. It has yielded ruins of the Mauryan palace.
- Ashok built great stupa at Sanchi in bricks.

POST-MAURYAN ART

- Stupa at Sanchi was expanded; railings & gates were added during Shunga period.
- The ancient name of Sanchi was Kakandabot.
- Black stupa was built at Sanchi.

- One stupa at Sanchi was built over the remains of Sariputta and Mahamoggallayan.
- Mahabodhi Sangharam was constructed at Bodhgaya.
- The place Buddha where got enlightenment is known as Bodhimanda.
- Nahpan Vihar was built at Nasik by Dakshmitra, the daughter of Nahapana.
- The Bodhi – temple of Bodhgaya came to be known as Vrihadganadhkuti Prasad.
- A stupa was built by Shunga at Bharhut
- Kanishka built stupa at Peshawar.
- Satvahanas built stupa at Amravati
- Ishkavakus built stupa at Nagarjunkonda

GUPTA PERIOD

- In the temple of Deogarh near Jhansi lord Shiva has been presented as yogi
- In Kosam there is a statue blade of 458 AD on which lord Shiva and Parvati are inscribed.
- In Khoh and Bhumara, the one Mukh Linga is famous.
- In Bhitargaon near Kanpur Shiva images and subjects are inscribed on beautiful blades of burnt clay
- In Udayagiri temple lord Vishnu is depicted in Varaha form.
- From Pathari, Jhansi & Mandasor the idols of Vishnu and Krishna have been found
- In the temple of Bhumara there is an idol of God Sun.
- There is a famous temple named Mahakaal situated at the bank of Shipra River in Ujjain. It contains artistic remains of Gupta period.
- Pataliputra School got specialization in the art of making idols of metals; Nalanda & Kurkihar were its important centre.
- Prikrama – path is seen in the temples of Bhumara and Nachana.
- Different pillars were used in Gupta architecture like the stone pillar of Eran.
- Dashavatar temple of Deogarh, the temple of Bhitargaon and Mahabodhi temple of Bodhgaya are the beautiful specimens of the monuments.
- Vishwakarma Chaitya of Ellora is a magnificent art of its style among Chaityas.
- The idol of Buddha (Victorious pose) made up of eight metals (Ashtadhatu) found in Sultanganj represented kindness, pity and spiritual revolution.
- So many idols of this type are inscribed on the walls of main Stupa of Nalanda

and in Maniyarmath of Rajgir.

- Samudragupta was himself proficient in playing Veena.

IMPORTANT ARCHITECTURAL MONUMENTS OF GUPTA PERIOD

Place

Deogarh

Shirpur

Bhoomara (Nagod) Tigwa (Jabalpur) Udaigiri

Sarnath

Bhittari

Khoh (Nagod)

Nalanda

Bhitargaon

Temple/Stupas

Dashavatar temple

Laxmana temple (temple of bricks) Shiva temple

Vishnu temple

Vishnu temple

Dhamekh Stupa (made of bricks) Temple of bricks

Buddha Monastery

Shiva temple

Temple made up of bricks

VESARA STYLE

- Associated with Chalukyas of Badami
- Temple are semi-circular
- This style is amalgamation of Nagara & Dravida style.
- Three important centres–Aihole, Badami And Pattadakal
- Aihole has 70 structures. It is known as the city of temples, Ravikirti built the Meguti temple here. Two

famous temples at Aihole are Durga temple and Ladhkhan temple.

- Malgeti Shivalaya temple was built at Badami.
- Virupaksha, Papnath and Sangmaheshwar are three important temples at Pattadakal.

ELLORA TEMPLES

- Built by Rashtrakutas
- Krishna I built Kailash temple, (a rock cut temple)
- Important temples are–Dashavatar temple, Ravan ki Khai, Lambeshwar temple, Rameshwar temple, Nilkanth temple.

TEMPLES OF SOLANKIS

- Two Jaina temple (of marble) at Mount Abu–Adinath temple and Tejpal temple
- Sun temple at Modhera
- Kumarapala reconstructed Somnath temple after it was plundered by Mahmud of Ghazni.

TEMPLES OF KHAJURAHO

- Built during 900–1200 AD
- Use of granite and red sandstone
- 25 in number
- Built by Chandellas
- They are in Nagara style.
- Buddhist, Jaina and Hindu impact
- Maximum numbers of temples are Shaiva.
- In big temples Mandap are known as Mahamandapa.
- Entrance known as Makar–Torana
- The Shikhar has many smaller Shikhars known as Urushringa
- Famous temples are–Kanderiya Mahadeo, Parshvanath, Viswanath and Chaturbhuj temples.

TEMPLES OF KALINGA GROUP/ORISSA

- Temples are in Nagara style
- Temples are at Bhuvneshwar, Puri and Konarak
- Built during 800 – 1300 AD
- Nat-Mandir & Bhoja - Mandir are characteristics of Orissa temples
- Interior of the temples are plain
- Garbhagriha is known as Deol.
- Jagmohan is important part of temple
- Sun temple of Konarak is known as black pagoda.
- Temples at Bhuvneshwar are mainly Shaiva temples.

SUN TEMPLES

Famous sun temples are at :

- Konarak, Martand (Kashmir)
- Mandasor, Aihole (Ladkhhan temple)
- Modhera (Gujarat)
- Multan (Pakistan)

TOPIC

INSCRIPTIONS

KATTAITE AND MITTANI INSCRIPTIONS

- Some Aryan names mentioned in the Kassite inscriptions of about 1600 B. C. and the Mitanni inscriptions of the fourteenth century B. C. found in Iraq.
- This suggests that from Iran a branch of the Aryans moved towards the west.

BOGAJKOI INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from Silesia in Asia Minor.
- Its time period is 1400 B.C.
- It belongs to Aryans.
- It contains the names of Aryan deities like Indra, Mitra, Varuna and Nasatyas.

DAMILI INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from Damili located in southern India.
- Its time period is 200 B.C.
- This inscription contains the names of various kings of Sangam Age.

BHARHUT INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Shunga period.
- This inscription was engraved on railing of Bharhut Stupa.
- Its time period was about 180 B.C.
- According to this inscription the Yavanas invaded Saket and Madhyamika (Chittore). The Gargi Samhita has also mentioned this event. According to Gargi Samhita the Yavanas conquered Saket, Panchala and Mathura and reached upto Patliputra.
- According to Malvika-Agnimitram when Pushyamitra Shunga conducted Asvamedha sacrifice, the horse was freed under the protection of Vasumitra. This horse was captured by the Yavanas on the right bank of river Sindhu. This resulted in fierce fight between Vasumitra and the Yavanas.

AYODHYA INSCRIPTION OF DHANDEV

- This inscription was engraved by Dhandev. He was vassal of Pushyamitra Shunga.
- Its time period is 160 B.C.
- According to this inscription Pushyamitra Shunga performed two Asvamedha Sacrifices.
- According to this inscription Ayodhya was made his capital by Pushyamitra Shunga.
- According to this inscription Pushyamitra Shunga defeated Yavanas.

BESNAGAR/BHILSA/VIDISHA INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was engraved by Greek ambassador Heliandoras. He was the ambassador of Greek ruler Antialkidas and he came to the court of 9th Shunga king Khashiputra Bhagbhadrā.
- In this inscription the conquests of Satākarni and dedication to religion have been highlighted.
- Its time period is 100 B.C.
- In this inscription Heliandoras had called himself Bhagavata. He constructed a Garuda Dhvaja.
- This inscription is dedicated to God of Gods Vasudeva.

GHOSUNDI INSCRIPTION

- Ghosundi is located near Jaipur in modern Rajasthan.
- This inscription is dated 50 B.C.
- According to this inscription Kanva king Sarvāhatra/Sarvātata erected walls around the place of workshop Vasudeva and Sankarshana. This is the first epigraphical reference of temple containing images.

HATHIBADA INSCRIPTION

- This inscription is dated about 50 B.C.
- This inscription contains reference of Vasudeva and Sankarshana.

HATHIGUMPHA INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from the wall of Jaina cave named Hathigumpha located in Udaigiri-Khandagiri hills. These hills are located in Puri district of

Orissa.

- The inscription is written in Prakrit language.
- Though the date is not mentioned in the inscription but it has been established that this inscription belonged to 1st century B.C.
- Its time period was about 30 B.C.
- This inscription was discovered by Bishop Sterling in 1825 AD.
- The inscription was deciphered by James Prinsep. In 1880 AD R.L. Mitra published its translation.
- In 1877 AD Gen. Alexander Cunningham and in 1885 AD Bhagwan Lal Indraji published its exact translation. They could successfully read the name of King Kharavela correctly.
- This inscription mentions the achievements of king Kharavela. After the first year of his coronation he repaired the temple and palaces destroyed by the storm.
- He invaded Satavahana kingdom without caring for king Satakarni and plundered the Asik town.
- He defeated the Rashtriks and Bhojaks during fourth year of his reign.
- During fifth year of his reign king Kharavela extended the canal originally constructed by Nanda king three hundred years ago.
- During sixth year of his reign he remitted many taxes.
- During eighth year of his reign he invaded Gorathgiri and Yavana king Dimimi escaped to Mathura.
- During twelfth year of his reign he terrified the kings of Uttarapatha and invaded Magadha. He carried away the famous image of Jina, which was brought to Magadha by Nanda king from Orissa.

MORA INSCRIPTION

- Mora village is located near Mathura in modern U.P.
- This inscription is dated 100 AD.
- According to this inscription a woman named Tosha installed the images of five Vrishni heroes.
- This inscription belongs to reign of Saka Satrapa Sodasa.

NANAGHAT INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was engraved by Nagnika/Nayanika, the queen of Satavahana king Satakarni.
- In this inscription the achievements of Satakarni have been highlighted. He has

been termed as the gem of Simuka clan. He has been also termed as

Dakshinapathapati.

- Its time period is 130 AD.
- This inscription contains the reference of Asvamedha Sacrifice performed by him.
- This inscription contains the reference of Sankarshana, Vasudeva, Indra, Surya, Yama and Varuna etc.

NASIK INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was engraved by Gautmi Balshri, the mother of Satavahana King Gautamiputra Satakarni after his death.
- Its time period is 130 A.D.
- In this inscription the conquests of Satakarni and his dedication to religion have been highlighted.
- In this inscription he has been termed as propagator of Brahmana faith, one who knows Agmas and **Samudrtoyapitta Vahana**.
- He has been termed as the annihilator of the pride of Kshatriyas.
- He compared himself with Parshurama.
- According to this inscription he defeated the Sakas, Yavanas and the Pallavas. He established his control over Gujrat, Saurashtra, Malwa, Berar and Konkan.
- The Nasik cave also contains the inscriptions of king Pulameyi.
- These inscriptions were published by Arthur West and Edward West in 1865 AD. Later on R.G. Bhandarkar, Bhyular, Bhagwan Lal Indraji and Senart published their translations of these inscriptions.
- The Nasik inscriptions are written in Prakrit language and Brahmi script.
- This is the only inscription which throws light on the origin of Satavahanas and the achievements of Gautamiputra Satakarni.
- The main objective of this inscription was record the donations granted to the monks.

JUNAGARH INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Saka ruler Rudradaman.
- It is dated 150 A.D.
- According to this inscription Rudradaman defeated the Satavahana king Satakarni.
- This inscription contains the history of Sudarshana Lake of Junagarh. This lake

was constructed by Vaishya Pushyagupta, the provincial governor of Chandragupta Maurya.

- During the rule of Ashoka Yavanaraja Tushaspa repaired it.
- Rudradaman himself also repaired it during his reign and he did not impose any new tax for it.

PRAYAGA PRASHASTI OF SAMUDRAGUPTA

- Composed by Harisena, the court poet of Samudragupta. Harisena was also the minister of peace and war (**Sandhivigrahika**).
- Mentions the military achievements of Samudragupta.
- Language–Sanskrit
- Script–Brahmi
- Style–Champu
- Does not mention the Asvamedha sacrifice performed by Samudragupta.
- This inscription is engraved on Ashokan pillar. This pillar was originally located at Koshambi. This was carried to Allahabad by Akbar.
- Other than the inscription of Samudragupta this pillar also contains an Ashokan inscription, an inscription of Jahangir and an inscription of Birbal.

ERAN INSCRIPTION

- Eran is located in Sagar district of modern M.P.
- In this inscription Samudragupta is called as “**Sarvarajochetta**” and greater donor than Prithu and Raghav. When he was happy he was more liberal than Kuber and when angry he was like Yama.
- According to this inscription Dattadevi was his queen and he had many sons and grandsons.
- This inscription informs that Erikerin was his Bhognagar.
- This inscription also informs that he succeeded to throne without any opposition.

POONA COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION OF PRABHAVATI GUPTA

- This inscription mentions Ghatotkacha as the founder of Gupta Empire.
- It mentions that Samudragupta performed many Asvamedha sacrifices.

NALANDA COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Chandragupta Vikramaditya.

- This inscription contains information about Pashupata Cult.
- It also mentions Vasudeva Krishna.

MEHRAULI PILLAR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Chandragupta Vikramaditya.
- According to this inscription King Chandra erected a Vishnudhwaja on Vishnupad Mountain because of dedication for god Vishnu.
- This inscription contains the victories and the achievements of King Chandra. He defeated a coalition of enemies in Bengal and spread his fame in Bengal.
- He crossed seven mouths of river Indus and conquered the region of Balhika.
- His chivalry also spread in south India. According to the inscription his fame still existed on the south Indian coasts.
- At the time of engraving this inscription this king was dead and his fame lived through out the land.
- He established his empire with the help of his efforts.

SANCHI INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Gupta ruler Chandragupta II.
- He is termed as Devraj In the inscription.

BILSAD INSCRIPTION

- Bilsad is located in Eta district of modern U.P.
- An inscription dated 96 in Gupta era (415 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to the period of Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- This inscription contains the genealogy of Gupta rulers upto Kumaragupta I.
- According to this inscription a Brahmana named Dhruva Sharma built a temple of Kartikeya.

GHADWA INSCRIPTION

- Gadwa is located in Allahabad district of modern U.P.
- Two inscriptions of Kumaragupta I dated 98 in Gupta era (417 AD) were found from this place.
- These inscriptions record the donation of twelve Dinars.

DHANDAI COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION

- Dhandai is located in Rajshahi district of modern Bangladesh.
- A copper plate inscription dated 113 in Gupta era (432 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- In this inscription Kumaragupta I had been termed as Parambhattaraka, Maharajadhiraja and Paramdevta.
- According to this inscription Kumaragupta I issued land grant to a Brahmana named Varaswamin.

TUMAIN INSCRIPTION

- Tumain is located in Gwalior district of M.P.
- An inscription dated 116 in Gupta era (435 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- In this inscription Kumaragupta I had been termed as the sun of winter season.

KARAMDANDA INSCRIPTION

- Karamdanda is located in Faizabad district of modern U.P.
- An inscription dated 117 in Gupta era (436 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to the period of Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- This inscription was erected by Kumaramitya Prithvisena.
- This inscription was engraved on a Shiva statue.

DAMODARPUR COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION

- Damodarpur is located in Dinajpur district of modern Bangladesh.
- Two copper plate inscriptions dated 124 (443 AD) and 126 in Gupta era (445 AD) were found from this place.
- These inscriptions belong to Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- These inscriptions provide information about the administrative system of Kumaragupta I and names of various officials.
- In the inscription this region had been called as Pundravardhana. Chirdatta was the ruler of this area.
- These inscriptions also contain names of various categories of lands like Khilya (waste land), Aprada (Non transferable land) and Aprahat (uncultivable land).
- In these inscriptions the Gupta gold coins have been called as Dinar.
- This inscription also contains reference of Vishnu.

VAIGRAM COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION

- Vaigram is located in Bogra district of modern Bangladesh.
- A copper plate inscription dated 128 in Gupta era (447 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- According to this inscription Kumaragupta I issued land grant to the temple of Govindaswamin.

MANKUVAR INSCRIPTION

- Mankuvar is located in Allahabad district of modern U.P.
- An inscription dated 129 in Gupta era (448 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription was erected by a Buddhist monk named Buddhimitra.
- This inscription was engraved on a Buddha statue.

SANCHI INSCRIPTION

- An inscription dated 131 in Gupta era (450 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription belongs to the period of Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- This inscription records grants made to monastery of Sanchi.

GANGADHAR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to the period of Gupta ruler Kumaragupta I.
- This inscription contains reference of Vishnu as Madhusudhan. This is the only inscription containing this reference.

MATHURA INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was engraved on a Buddha statue.
- This inscription is dated 135 in Gupta era (454 AD).

JUNAGARH INSCRIPTION OF SKANDAGUPTA

- This is the most important inscription of Skandagupta.
- This inscription provides information about the Gupta administration. According to this inscription Chakrapalita, the son of provincial governor Parnadatta, repaired Sudarsana Lake after spending huge amount of money.
- This inscription provides information about the circumstances in which Parnadatta was appointed as governor of Saurashtra.
- Gupta era 136 (455 AD) is mentioned in this inscription. According to this

inscription Gupta era was used to calculate time during that age.

- According to this inscription Skandagupta defeated the Mlechchhas (Hunas).
- According to this inscription Skandagupta built a temple of Vishnu and Lakshmi near the lake. This is the earliest reference of Vishnu with Lakshmi.

BHITTARI INSCRIPTION OF SKANDAGUPTA

- This inscription was found from Bhattari located in Ghajipur district of modern U.P.
- This inscription provides information about the fight of Skandagupta against the Hunas and Pushyamitras. According to this inscription Skandagupta defeated the Hunas.
- This inscription does not contain any date.
- Skandagupta is termed as **Avanivijitya** in this inscription.
- This inscription also contains reference of Vasudeva Krishna and reference of installation of image of Vishnu.

BIHAR PILLAR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from Bihar located near Patna district of modern U.P.
- This inscription does not contain any date.
- This inscription contains names of Gupta rulers upto Skandagupta.

KAHAUM PILLAR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from Kahaum located in Gorakhpur district of modern U.P.
- This inscription is dated 141 in Gupta era (460 AD).
- According to this inscription a person named Madra installed the images of five Jaina Tirthankaras.

SUPIA INSCRIPTION

- Supia is located in Reva district of modern M.P.
- A copper plate inscription dated 141 in Gupta era (460 AD) was found from this place.
- This inscription contains the genealogy of Gupta rulers beginning with

Ghatotkacha and the Gupta dynasty is termed as Ghatotkacha dynasty.

INDORE COPPER PLATE INSCRIPTION

- Indore is located in Bulandshahar district of modern U.P.
- A copper plate inscription dated 146 in Gupta era (465 AD) was found from this place.
- According to this inscription grants were made to sun temple so that lamp could burn in the temple. **GADWA INSCRIPTION**

- Gadwa is located in Allahabad district of modern U.P.
- A copper plate inscription of Skandagupta dated 148 in Gupta era (467 AD) was found from this place. This is the last inscription of Skandagupta.

MANDASOR INSCRIPTION

- Gadwa was located in ancient Malwa region. Another name of this place was Dashpur.
- This inscription belongs to Kumaragupta II.
- This inscription is dated 473 AD.
- This inscription is basically a Prashasti and it was composed by **Vatsbhatti**. He was a renowned scholar of Sanskrit.
- This inscription mentions the name of Bhanduvarman who was provincial governor there.
- According to this inscription a guild of silk weaver migrated from Lata to Dashpur and made donations to Sun temple.

ERAN INSCRIPTION OF BHANUGUPTA

- This inscription provides information about the conflict of Gupta ruler Bhanugupta and Huna invader

Toramana.

- It is dated 510 A.D.
- According to this inscription Goparaja, the vassal of Bhanugupta, died while fighting with Hunas and his

queen performed sati. This is the first epigraphical information about sati.

MANDASOR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Yashovarman of Malwa.
- Its time period is 530 A.D.
- According to this inscription Yashovarman defeated Mihirkula Huna and captured Malwa. He conquered those areas also which the Guptas could not conquer.

JAUNPUR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found engraved on doors of a mosque at Jaunpur.
- This inscription contains the names and achievements of Harivarman, Adityavarman and Ishwarvarman. They were first three rulers of Maukhri dynasty.
- The period of this inscription is about 550 AD.
- This inscription also contains reference of Vishnu.

BARABAR AND NAGARJUNI INSCRIPTIONS

- Barabar and Nagarjuni hills are located in Gaya district of modern Bihar province.
- This inscription is dated 550 AD.
- Three inscriptions of Maukhri rulers have been found from these hills.
- These inscriptions contain the names of Maukhri rulers Yajnavarman, Shardulvarman and Anantvarmana. They belonged to the Bihar branch of Maukharis.

WADVA INSCRIPTION

- Wadva is located in modern Rajasthan. From here some inscriptions engraved on fire altars have been found.
- The period of this inscription is about 550 AD.

SOHNAG INSCRIPTION

- Sohnag is located in Devaria district of modern U.P.
- This inscription contains important informations about of Maukhri rulers.
- The period of this inscription is about 550 AD.

ASIRGARH COIN INSCRIPTION

- Asirgarh is located in Berar district of modern Karnataka.

- This inscription belongs to 5th Maukhri ruler Sarvavarman.
- This inscription is dated 580 AD.

HARHA INSCRIPTION

- Harha is located in Barabanki district of modern U.P.
- This was discovered by H.N. Shashtri in 1915 AD.
- This inscription is dated 580 AD.
- This inscription was engraved by Maukhri ruler Suryavarman. He was son of Ishwarvarman.
- This inscription contains the names of Harivarman, Adityavarman, Ishwarvarman and Ishanvarman. They first four rulers of Maukhri dynasty.

MAHAKUT PILLAR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription calls Kirtivarman I as **Bahusuvarna** and performer of Agnistoma Sacrifice.
- Its time period is 602 A.D.

BANSKHERA INSCRIPTION

- Banskhera is located in Shahjahanpur district of modern U.P.
- This inscription belongs to king Harsha.
- This inscription was discovered in 1894 AD.
- This inscription is dated 628 AD (22 in Harsha era).
- According to this inscription he donated Maktar sagar village of Angadiya district of Ahichatra to two Brahmanas named Balchandra and Bhaktswami.
- The success of Rajyavardhan against Devgupta and his murder by Shashanka is also mentioned in this inscription.
- This inscription provides valuable information about the administration and economic condition of his empire.

MADHUBAN INSCRIPTION

- Madhuban is located in Azamgarh district of modern U.P.
- This inscription belongs to king Harsha.
- This inscription was discovered in 1894 AD.
- This inscription is dated 631 AD (25 in Harsha era).
- According to this inscription he donated Somkunda village of Shravasti district.
- Other details of this inscription are similar to Banskhera inscription.

AIHOLE INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to Pulakesin II Chalukya.
- It is dated 633-34 AD. This inscription was engraved on the wall of a Vishnu temple located at Aihole.
- According to this inscription Pulakesin II defeated the overlord of north India (Sakalouttrapatha) and Pulakesin adopted the title of Parmeshwara in its memory. This seems to indicate towards Harsha.
- This inscription was composed by Ravikirti. Ravikirti was a Jaina by faith.
- According to this inscription Pulakesin II also conquered the Kosala, Pallavas and Kalinga.
- In this inscription Ravikirti had compared himself with Kalidasa and Bhairvi.

AFSARH INSCRIPTION

- Afsarh is located in Gaya district of modern Bihar.
- This inscription belongs to 8th later Gupta ruler Adityasen.
- This inscription is dated 660 AD.
- This inscription contains the genealogy of later Gupta rulers beginning with Krishnagupta to Adityasen.
- This inscription throws light on the relations of later Guptas and the Maukharis.

DEVBARNAK INSCRIPTION

- Devbarnak is located in Shahabad (Aara) district of modern Bihar.
- This inscription is dated 725 AD.
- This was discovered by Alexander Cunningham in 1880 AD.
- This inscription was engraved by later Gupta ruler Jivitagupta II.
- This inscription contains the names of Devgupta, Vishnugupta and Jivitagupta II who ruled after Adityasen.

DASHAVATAR CAVE INSCRIPTION OF ELLORA

- This inscription provides information about the conquest of Kalinga, Koshala, Kanchi, Malwa, Lat and Tanka by Dantidurga Rashtrakuta.
- Its time period is 742 A.D.

BHAGALPUR INSCRIPTION

- According to this inscription Pala ruler Dharmapala conquered Kannauj and put Chakrayudha on throne in place of Indrayudha.
- Its time period is 800 A.D.

PEHOVA INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was found from Pehova located in modern Haryana.
- This inscription contains the reference of Horse trader's guild.
- This inscription contains the reference of Brahmanas as Horse trader.
- Its time period is 900 A.D.

UTTARAMERUR INSCRIPTION

- This inscription belongs to the Chola king Parantaka I.
- It is dated 919 AD and 921 AD.
- This inscription throws light on the local self government of Cholas.

CHTURBHUJ INSCRIPTION

- This inscription was located in Gwalior.
- In this inscription king Bhoja has been termed as Adivaraha.
- Its time period is 1030 A.D.

TOPIC

16

MISCELLENOUS ISSUES

DYNASTY

Haryanka
Shishunaga Nandas
Mauryas
Guptas
Pushyabhutis

CAPITAL

Rajagriha Patliputra Patliputra Patliputra Patliputra Thaneswar

VARIOUS DYNASTIES

YEAR

545 BC
414 BC
364 BC
323 BC
319-20 AD
600 AD

Rashtrakutas
Pallavas
Early/western Chalukyas Eastern Chalukyas
Later/western Chalukyas Cholas
Palas
Senas
Chandellas
Gurjara Pratihara
Paramaras
Chauhans
Gahadavalas
Sharqis

Rathors
Vijayanagara
BahamanisShah
Nizam Shahi
Adil Shahi
Qutub Shahi
Barid Shahi
Imad Shahi
Yadavas
Pandayas
Hoyasala
Sultanate of Delhi
Ilbari

Manyakheta 757 AD Kanchipuram 560 AD Vatapi/Badami 543 AD Vengi 630
AD Kalyani 973 AD Thanjavur/Tanjore 850 AD Mudadgiri/Mongheyr 753 AD
Vijaya Puri 1118 AD Bundelkhand 916 AD Kannauj 800 AD Dhar/Ujjain 974
AD Ajmer/Sakambari 973 AD Kannauj 1090 AD Mewar 1509 AD Marwar
1241 AD Hampi/Vijayanagara 1336 AD Gulbarga/BidarBahaman 1347 AD
Ahmadnagar 1490 AD Bijapur 1490 AD Golkunda 1518 AD Bidar 1528 AD
Berar 1490 AD Devagiri 1189 AD Madurai 1216 AD Halebid/Dwarsamudra
1306 AD Delhi 1206 AD Delhi 1206 AD

FOUNDER

Bimbisara
Shishunaga
Mahapadam Nanda
Chandragupta Maurya Chandragupta I
Naravardhana/Prabhakar Vardhana
Dantidurga/Dantivarman Simhavishnu
Pulakesin I
Vishnu Vardhana
Tailapa/Taila II
Vijayalaya
Gopala
Vijayasena/Samantasena Yasovarman/Jejakbhukti NagbhattaI/Harishchandra
Upendra/Krishna Raja Vasudeva/Vakapatiraja-I Chandradeva
Hammir

Rao Jodha
Harihara-I & Bukka-I
Alauddin Hasan,
Malik Ahmed Bahri
Yusuf Adil shah
Sultan Quli
Ali Barid
Fathullah khan
Bhillana
Jatavarman, Kulashekhar Ballala I
Qutub-din-Aibak
Qutub-din-Aibak
Khaljis
Tughlaqs
Sayyids
Lodhis
Mughals
Sungas
Kanvas
Satavahanas
Mirza (Muslim) Iliyas Shahi
Farooki
Sharqi
Muzaffar Shahi Hushang Shahi Bhaduri (Kansh) Surya
Aravidu
Woddeyar
Delhi
Delhi
Delhi
Delhi
Agra/Delhi Vidisa
Patliputra Paithan
Kashmir
Bengal
Khandesh Jaunpur
Gujarat
Malwa

Bengal
Orissa
Vijayanagar Mysore
1290 AD
1320 AD
1414 AD
1451 AD
1526 AD
185 BC
71 BC
50 BC
1339 AD
1345 - 1412 AD 1390 - 1601 AD 1394 - 1500 AD 1401 - 1539 AD 1406 - 1436
AD 1415 - 1442 AD 1434 - 1542 AD 1567 - 1620 AD 1612 - 1762 AD

VARIOUS ERAS

Jalaluddin Khilji
Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq Khizr khan
Bahlul Lodi
Babur
Pushyamitra Sunga
Vasudeva
Simuka/Pratishthana Shamsuddin shah Mirza Shamsuddin Iliyas shah Malik
Ahmed Farooki Malik Sarvar
Zafar khan Muzaffar Shah Alp Kahn Hushang shah King Ganesh
Kapilendra
Tirumal
King Woddeyar

Saptarishi era or (Lakulisa era, in use in Kashmir)
Era of Kaliyuga
Buddha era
Mahavira era
Vikrami era (By King Vikramaditya who overthrew the Sakas at Ujjayini) Saka
era (by Kanishka)
Licchavi era
Gupta era (by Chandragupta I)

Harsha era

Kalachuri era (By Traikutaka dynasty, in vogue in central India) Kollam era (of Malabar)

Nevar era

Lakshamana era

Chalukya-Vikrami era (By Chalukya Vikramaditya VI of Kalyani) Simha era (Jayasimha Siddhara of Anhilwara)

Ilahi / solar / Fasli era (by Akbar)

3076 BC

3102 BC

544 BC

528 BC

58 BC

78 AD

110 AD

319–320 AD 606 AD

248 AD

825 AD

878 AD

1119 AD

1076 AD

1113–14 AD 1584 AD

SCHOLARS Udayaraja

Hemchandra Nagarjuna Amarsimha Ravikirti

SCHOLARS AND THEIR PATRONS

PATRONS

Mahmud Begarha of Gujarat Kumarapala-I Chalukyas of Anhilwara Kanishka

Chandragupta Vikramaditya

Pulakesin-II (Chalukyas of Badami) Vakapatiraja

Harisena

Rajasekhara

Somadeva

Chandarbada Banabhatta

Dandin

Bhairvi

Gunadhyaya
Mahaviracharya Jinasena
Sakatayana
Jaidev
Bilhana
Vijnaneshwar Lakshmi Dhara Sri Harsha
Kalhana
Firdausi

Propounder

Ramanujacharya Shakaracharya Vijnanabhikshu Madhavacharya Vallabhacharya
Nimbarkacharya Bhaskaracharya Sripati
Srikantha
Chaitanya
Basava
Yasovarman of Kannauj
Samudragupta
Mahendrapala and Mahipala (Gurjara Pratihara) Prithviraj III Chauhan
Prithviraj III Chauhan
Harsha
Narasimhavarman
Simha Vishnu (Pallava)
Hala (Satavahana)
Amoghavarsha (Rashtrakuta)
Amoghavarsha
Amoghavarsha
Lakshamana Sena (Bengal)
Vikramaditya VI (Chalukya of Kalyani) Vikramaditya VI
Govind Chandra (Gahadavalas of Kanauj) jai Chand (Kanauj)
Harsha of Kashmir
Mahmud Ghazni

VARIOUS DOCTRINES

Doctrine

Vishisht Advaitvada
Advaitvada
Avibhagadvaita

Dwaitvad
Shuddh-Advaitvada
Dwaita-Advaitvada
Bhedabhedavad
Vir Shaiva Vishishtadvaitavad Shaiva Vishishtadvaitavad
Achintya-Bhedabhedavad
Shakti – Visithadvaita

ATTACKS OF MAHMUD GHAZNAVI ON INDIA

Year Area

1000 AD Frontier areas of Punjab (1st attack)
1001 AD Peshawar
1005 AD Bhatinda
1022 AD Gwalior & Kalinjar
1025-26 AD Somnath temple
1027 AD Jats of Sindh (last attack)

Ruler

Hindu Shahi king Jayapala Hindu Shahi king Jayapala Vijay Raj
Ganda Chandela
Bhimsen

ATTACKS OF MOHAMMAD GAURI

State Year Multan 1175 AD Uch 1176 AD Anhilwara (Gujrat) 1178 AD
Kannauj (Chandawar) 1194 AD Bayana
Gwalior
1195-96 AD 1196 AD

Ruler

Karmathi king
Karmathi king
Bhim II (Regent Naik Devi) Jaichandra
Kumarapala
Sulakshanapala

Result Victory Victory Defeat Victory Victory Victory

IMPORTANT BATTLES

WAR

Battle of Raichur
Battle of Pangul
Battle of Conjeevaram Battle of Chaul
Battle of Shivsamundram Battle of Udaygiri
Battle of Khatoli
Battle of Macchiwara Battle of Sirhind
Battle of Gadakatang
Battle of Ahmadnagar Battle of Asirgarh
Battle of Dharmat
Battle of Samugarh
Battle of Deorai
Battle of Chandawar
Battle of Khanwa
Battle of Ghagra
Battle of Chausa
Battle of Bilgram/Kannauj Battle of Swelihole
Battle of Kheda
Battle of Shankar Kheda Battle of Karnal

Battle of Goriya
Rohilla wars
Battle of Shukarkheda

PARTIES

Firozshah Bahmani and Bukka II
Firozshah Bahmani & Devaraya II
Mohammad II, Bahmani Virupaksha Mohammad Begra & Portuguese
Krishnadeva Rai & Nayak of Ummatur Krishnadeva Rai & Prataparudra
Rana Sanga & Ibrahim Lodi
Humayun & afghan Tattar Khan
Humayun & Sikander Shah Suri
Nizam Shah & Ramraja
Chand Bibi & Akbar
Miyan Bahadurshah & Akbar
Aurangzeb and Dara Shukoh

Aurangzeb and Dara Shukoh
Aurangzeb and Dara Shukoh
Muhammad Ghauri and Jaichandra (ruler) Medini Rai (ruler of Chanderi) and
Babar Babar and afghan
Humayun and Sher shah
Shershah and Humayun
British and Portuguese
Sahu and Tarabai
Nizam and Mughal viceroy Mubariz khan nadir shah and Mughal king
Mohammad shah nadir shah
Bengal Nawab Sarfaraz khan and Bihar's deputy governor Alivardi khan
lord Hastings and hafiz khan
Nizam and Marathas

VICTOR

Firoz shah
Devaraya I
Mohammad II

YEAR

1398 AD
1420 AD
1481 AD Mohammad Begra 1508 AD Krishnadeva Rai 1511-12 AD
Krishnadeva Rai 1514 AD Rana Sanga 1518 AD Humayun 1555 AD Humayun
1555 AD Nizam Shah 1565 AD Akbar 1600 AD Akbar 1601 AD Aurangzeb
1658 AD Aurangzeb 1658 AD Aurangzeb 1659 AD Muhammad Ghauri 1194
Babar 1526 Babar 1529 Shershah 1539 Shershah 1540 British 1612 Shahu 1707
Nizam 1724
1739

Alivardi Khan 1740

English 1774
Marathas 1775
Anglo-Nepal war

Pindari war
Battle of Khirki

Battle of Sitabari

Battle of Ashti

First Burmese war Battle of Miyani

(Battle of Sindh)

battle of Chillianwala

Second Burmese war First Afghan War

Second Afghan War Third Afghan War Third Burmese War Lord Hastings

(Octor Loni was the commander and Gorkhas)

colonel Sleeman and Pindaris

English and Peshwa Baji Rao II

English and Appaji Bhonsle

English and Peshwa Baji Rao

English under Amherst and Burma English under Ellenborough

and Amirs of Sindh

English under Wagaf and Sikhs under Sher Singh

English under Dalhousie and Burma English under Auckland and afghan English

under Lytton and Afghan English under Chelmsford and Afghan English under

Chelmsford and afghan English 1816

English 1817 – 18 English 1817 English 1817 English 1817 English 1824-26

English 1843

Sikh 1849

English 1852 English 1839-42 English 1878-80 English 1919 English 1919

PART – II SOUTH INDIA

TOPIC

1

THE SANGAM AGE

SANGAM AGE - LITERATURE

- Sangam age is rightly regarded as constituting the Augustan age of Tamil literature.
- It deals with secular matters relating to public and social activity like Government, war, charity, renunciation, worship, trade, and agriculture, physical manifestations of nature like mountains and rivers and private thoughts and activity like conjugal love and domestic life of the inner circle of the members of the family.
- They are called Puram and Aham (Agam). Puram literature deals with matters capable of externalization or objectification. Aham literature deals with matters strictly limited to one aspect of subjective experience viz. love. The division of Aham and Puram is essentially Tamilian.
- The Tamils were not strangers to other forms of classifying literary themes viz., Aram, Porul, Inbam and Vidu. These were four goals of life and the literature which deals with them falls under the corresponding sections. This classification is not much different from the Aham – Puram classification because Aram, Porul and Vidu come under Puram and Inbam under Aham.
- Tolkappiyar, Valluvar, Iliango Adigal, Sittalai Sattanar, Nakkirar, Kapilar, Paranar, Auvaiyar, Mangudi Marudanan and a few others were outstanding the poets and thinkers of the Sangam age.
- The Pattuppattu is a collection of ten long poems. Of these Mulaippattu, Kurinjpattu and Pattinappalai belong to Aham and the rest are Puram.
- Some of the anthologies belong to Aham group and the others to Puram group.
- The same is the case with the eighteen Killkanakku works.
- Nearly 75 small edicts have been found from caves near Madurai. These edicts are written in Tamil-Brahmi script.

THE SANGAM EPICS

(a) Manimegallai

Written by poet Sattai Sattanar of Madurai.

Contents: Manimegallai's (the daughter of Kovalan & Madhavi) efforts to

preserve her chastity and her conversion to a Buddhist nun.
Reference of development of fine arts in Sangam age.

(b) Silappadigaram

Oldest and greatest of Sangam epics.

Literal meaning: the jewelled Anklet.

Written by Illango Avadigal (grandson of the Chola king Karikala through his daughter). Date: 200 AD.

Contents: story of Kovalan (a merchant) of Puhar, who falls in love with a dancer Mahdavi and ignores his wife Kannagi. Kannagi avenges the death of Kovalan at the hands of the Pandayan king and becomes a goddess. With her begins Kannagi / Patni cult.

It is a love story.

The references of Adimandi, the daughter of the Chola king Karikala and Attan Atti, the chera Prince are found in Silappadikaram.

Silappadikaram says that Gajabahu, king of Ceylon, attended the worship of Kannagi- the Goddess of chastity – instituted by the Chera king Senguttuvan.

Gajabahu ruled from 173 to 191 A.D. So Silappadikaram written by Senguttuvan's brother Ilango belonged to the second century A.D. Manimekalai also belonged to that period. It is rightly said that Gajabahu – Senguttuvan synchronism is the sheet – anchor of the chronology of Tamil history.

OTHER WORKS

(a) Sivaga Sindamani/ Jivak Chintamani

Written by Liruttakkadevar (a Jaina by religion) – Vaisya from Madura.

Contents: Story of Sivaga / Jivaka who possesses supernatural powers and wins a new bride for his harem. At the end of his life he becomes a Jaina monk.

Exhibits the influence of Sanskrit style.

It is known as a marriage book.

(b) Tolkappiyam

Written by Tokapiyar, one of the 12 disciples of saint Agastya.

Work on Tamil grammar.

Divided into three sections each having nine sub-chapters (Ilayas).

Total number of sutras is 1612.

This book is based on the Sanskrit grammar of Aindra School.

(c) Agattiyam

Written by Saint Agattiyar
Work on grammar of letters & life
Practically extinct

SANGAM AGE – SOCIAL LIFE

- The Sangam literature speaks of many tribes and also refers to the traditional castes. This means that the caste divisions and the tribal arrangement stood side by side.
- The Marakkudi were a separate section of society and they had their own traditions and beliefs. They worshipped the Goddess of victory and offer sacrifices to her.
- The Sangam society was not priest – dominated although the priests were slowly trying to assume powers of advice and supervision.
- Tolkappiyam written by Tolkappiyar mentions four fold division of Sangam society. He refers to Andanar (Parppar), Arasar, Vaisiyar and Velalar.
- The Andanar were held in high esteem. The duties or privileges of the Andanar were learning, teaching, performing sacrifices, helping others to perform sacrifices, giving presents and receiving presents. The Andanar were recruited for service in the royal court as Purohiths and probably as astrologers also. Some of them served as judicial advisers and were employed as ambassadors.
- The Tamil Brahmins of the Sangam age were a respectable and learned community who lived apart in their streets. They were strictly vegetarians in their food habits.
- Some Brahmins did not take up the traditional occupation of the priestly class. Some of them were known as dealers in bangles. Some of them became musicians. Adherence to traditional and prescribed ways of life was considered to be the first social virtue. This gave extraordinary stability to society.
- The Brahmin community had been taking roots in the social structure of Tamilaham. The Brahmins were attached to the land and were proud of their country and their mother tongue. They considered Sanskrit the language of their religion. Sanskrit was not referred to as the Deva Bhasha. It was just the language of the North. The Tamil Brahmanas were resented by the poets of the Sangam and other learned men of the land.
- The view of the Tamils was that “while character is above learning, learning is above caste.” Caste by birth began to assert itself. The idea that the individual’s lack of merits can be made up by the high caste to which he belongs, or vice

versa, was perhaps becoming more and pronounced.

- The Brahmin enjoyed considerable respect at the court. Most of the kings treated them with great courtesy.
- It seems that trade was common to Vaisyas and Velalas. It appears that learning, performing sacrifice, making gifts, agriculture, protection of cows and trade were the prescribed duties of a Vaisya. Learning, other than the Vedas, making gifts, agriculture, protection of cows, trade and worship were the prescribed functions of a Vellala. Considerable confusion existed between the Vaisyas and Velalas.
- We have no positive evidence to show that slavery as an institution existed in the Tamilaham of the Sangam age. We have no references to the sale and purchase of human – beings. However, that does not mean that there were no low servants or labourers whose condition of life left much to be desired.
- Though in a general way, the entire caste system revolves around the Brahman axis, it was also so in Tamilaham. The most distinctive feature of the Tamil caste system was the Brahmin. The king, the merchants and the peasants did not correspond to the Kshatriyas, the Vaisyas and the Sudras of the Aryan caste system. The Velalas of South India were not the Sudras of North India.
- Untouchability was practised.
- Level of material culture was high.
- The status of women in Sangam society was not equal to that of men either in theory or in practice. The Sangam society consisted of many kinds of women. There were married women who had settled down as dutiful housewives looking after their husbands and children and managing their household. It is these women who either committed Sati or led a very hard life as widows. There were female ascetics of Buddhist or Jain sects like Kaundi Adigal and Manimekalai. There were also a large number of courtesans. They acted as bodyguards. Women were not recruited as soldiers, ministers, ambassadors or other advisers of the king. They did not own property.
- There were different kinds of marriages. There were idealistic ways of marriage which involved no rituals. They were performed by the consent of the man and the woman only without the knowledge of the parents or relations. Another type of marriage involved the performance of many rituals. The third type of marriage was in which the rituals for the Brahmins, the kings and the Vaisyas differed from the Velalar. There was also the custom of Sati in Sangam society. The wife perished with her husband on the funeral pyre.
- As every woman did not commit Sati after the death of her husband, she had to

lead a very hard life as a widow. Her life was one of penance. It was a degraded life.

- Intoxicants were freely used. There is a reference to opium also.
- There were many forms and qualities of dress worn by the various classes of people. The kind of dress varied from class to class and individual to individual. The labouring classes were on the verge of nudity. They did not mind near nudity. Shepherds and cowherds wore only loin cloth and dispensed with the upper cloth. Stitched garments were also in vogue but not largely. Many valuable ornaments or special metals or jewels were worn by the rich people. The others put on simple ornament like glass beads strung together. The people loved perfumery. Flowers were the greatest favourites of Tamil women.
- The Sangam people had enough entertainment for their spare and leisure hours. In the urban areas, the people had a lot of social activity. The villagers spent their leisure time in a variety of ways some of which were cultured and desirable and the rest low and vulgar. In the villages, cock- fighting and goat- fighting were popular. Gambling was practised widely. Wrestling was a form of fighting which often ended in the death of one of the parties. Children played innocent games.
- The Sangam people had their own beliefs and superstitions. They believed in the significance of dreams and omens. They believed in ghosts and spirits and were afraid of them.
- The Tamil society of the Sangam age was an advanced and civilized society. Education was not merely known and encouraged but was a wide- spread social activity. The pattern of education was not merely reading and understanding of books but also listening to the learned persons. It was believed that the advice given by wise and experienced person was like a support on a slippery ground. Those who listened to the learned were the very abode of humility. Education of a secular nature was not the peculiar preserve of any particular community or caste, sex or stage in life. The Sangam scholars belonged to all the class. It was believed that education gave self – confidence and dignity to men hence was sought after.
- A **Kanakkayar** was a grammar teacher who collected a group of students and taught them grammar and literature.
- Teachers who collected a large number of students and organised education on a large scale were called **Kulapatis**.
- Works on grammar like the Tolkappiyam, on poetics and mathematics were subjects studied by any student. Astronomy was allied to mathematics. The fine arts like music, dance, drama, painting, building architecture, sculpture etc. were

specialized in by the hereditary artists. Much of the teaching was oral. The students wrote but sparingly and got practically everything by heart.

SANGAM AGE – RELIGIOUS LIFE

- The religion of the Sangam Tamils was not of a uniform of single pattern. The Sangam people knew and preached both the ritualistic and supplicatory aspects of religion.
- Their rituals were related to animism and other forms of deity worship. There was tree worship, stone worship, water worship, animal worship and the worship of stars and planets. They were supposed to be divinely animated.
- There were three strands of religion during the Sangam period viz., the indigenous gods, the exotic Hindu gods and the exotic non- Hindu religious faiths, functions etc. All the three co- existed and till the very end of the Sangam age, no serious and open clash occurred among them.
- Different gods were worshipped by the people living in different regions. The cowherds worshipped Tirumal so that he might bestow many milch cows on them. The hunters of the hill tracts worshipped Murugan as the god of the hillock. Other gods and goddesses of the hill-side were also recognised and worshipped. Indira was worshipped by the agriculturists who depended, for their produce on rains. There was a special festival instituted in Puhar in honour of Indra. The Chola king himself managed this festival. The fishermen and the people of the coastal regions worshipped Varuna, the god of the wide ocean. The worship of the Sun and the Moon was known. Usually, the crescent moon was worshipped.
- Murugan was the deity par excellence of the Tamils. The word Murugan means divinity and he was supposed to reside generally on the hill – tops. The temples of Murugan are mentioned in the Sangam literature. There is persistent tradition that the original deity in Venkatam Hill was Murugan. Tirumal was a great competitor to Murugan. At some places, Tirumal worship was started in place of Murugan worship by the enthusiastic worshippers of Tirumal. Though there are many references that Siva or Indra was the chief god for them, Murugan undoubtedly was the favourite god of the Tamils. He had not acquired the name of Subrahmanyam then though occasionally he was called Kumara. The shade of **Vengai** tree was considered appropriate for installing an idol of Murugan. The devotees beat the **Tondaham** drum and blew the bugle. Bells were rung. Flowers were strewn.

- Indra, Yama, Varuna and Soma were considered as the guardians of the four directions viz., the East, the South, the West and the North respectively.
- Gods on the basis of caste are also mentioned in the Silappadikaram.
- A large number of temples are mentioned in the Sangam literature. The temple was called Nagar.
- The name Siva is rarely mentioned in Sangam literature but many of his attributes are mentioned.
- The temple of Indra is mentioned in Silappadikaram and in Manimekalai.
- “Kannagi or Pattini Cult” was an established institution. Images of Pattini Devi were placed in temples.
- The name of Rama is not mentioned as a deity along with other gods in the Sangam literature. The name of Ganesa is also not specifically mentioned in the Sangam literature.
- The great Sangam poets Kapilar and Nakkirar were the worshippers of Siva but there was no feeling of religious antagonism.
- Aryan Brahmanical Hinduism reached Tamilaham earlier than Jainism and Buddhism,. The authors of the Manimekalai, Virasoliam and Kundala kesi were great Buddhists. There were also intellectual giants among the Jains who made fundamental contribution to Tamil literature. Both Buddhism and Jainism were subordinate to the indigenous practices and the Brahmanical Vedic religion. The effect of the Buddhist and Jain teachings on individuals might have been considerable, but their general effect on society was negligible.
- The Tamils of the Sangam age were aware of certain spiritual and philosophical truths. They believed that life is distinct from body. While life can function independently of the body, the body is incapable of functioning when divorced from life.
- The god of death was known as **Kurram**.
- Kubera, Yama and Balram were also worshipped.

SANGAM AGE – ECONOMIC LIFE

- The king was the owner of the territory over which he ruled.
- Agriculture, fishing and hunting were the major occupations. The textile industry, house-building, planning and building of towns, forging of weapons and other avocations provided the necessities comforts and luxuries of life. A large number of persons were engaged in industries and commerce, both inland and foreign. The major towns like Puhar, Uraiyur, Vanji, Tondi, Musiri, Madurai,

Kanchi etc. absorbed most of these manufactured goods. Industry was encouraged on account of the rising demand in foreign markets. Shipping and other allied industries like harbour-building and warehouse construction etc. were developed to sustain foreign trade. Weaving was a part-time occupation of the farmers and a regular full-time occupation for many others.

- The market place was known as **Avanam**. It was a centre of transactions. Transfers of property were common. Gifts are frequently mentioned. Gifts of movable and immovable property were in vogue. Assignment of tax-free villages to Brahmins was a special gift. Gifts were considered as irrevocable. Mortgages of immovable property and pawning or pledging of movable property were quite common.

- Next to agriculture, spinning and weaving were the most important and widely practised crafts. Women spent their spare time in spinning cotton threads. Weaving was a specialized industry in certain very important centres like Uraiyur, Madurai etc. The textile products were known for their beauty and fineness. Embroidered clothing was a well-known article of manufacture. Dyeing was a widespread ancillary industry to weaving. In addition to silk and cotton fabrics, cloth made of wood fibre also was used by the priestly class. The smithy was an important industrial factory where weapons of war were forged and repaired. Carpentry was a very common industry which was practised as an hereditary profession. The carpenter was engaged in house-building and in building boats, canoes and ships and chariots.

- Tamil literature of the Sangam period is full of details regarding the trading or commercial activities of the people. There was both internal and foreign trade at that time. Generally, industry and trade were carried on by groups of hereditary craftsmen pursuing their profession at the ancestral work place.

- Most of the trade was carried on by barter. Paddy constituted the most commonly accepted medium of exchange, especially in the more rural parts of the land. Well purified white salt was sold for paddy. Paddy was sold by mentioning its price in terms of salt. Honey and roots were exchanged for fish oil and arrack. Sugarcane and rice flakes were exchanged for venison and toddy.

- There were well-established markets or bazaars called **Angadi** in the bigger towns.

- There was an extensive trade with foreign countries. Tamilaham had certain commodities which were in great demand in foreign markets. Those were pepper, ginger and rice among food products, sandal – wood, ayil and almug among trees, cardamom, cinnamon and turmeric amongst spices and ivory and

pearls for luxurious ornaments. Gems and corundum, cotton and cotton fabrics for dress, monkeys, deer and peacocks among favourite domesticated animals and birds, cheetahs and tigers and elephants among the wilder animals. These articles were in great demand in the crowded Bazaars of foreign lands.

- There was trade with Greece and Rome. A large number of Roman gold coins of the Augustan age have been found in many parts of South India. Those coins show that there was brisk trade between Tamilaham and Rome which brought a lot of gold to Tamilaham. There were direct trade routes between Tamilaham and Arabia, Egypt and Rome. The direct and brisk trade between Rome and Tamilaham declined during the third century on account of the growing anarchy in the Roman Empire. However, the trade did not die out. The Romans came and colonized certain parts of Tamilaham. As there were many pirates in the Western sea, the Roman merchant convoys took military protection for their ships.
- The Tamils took to the sea very naturally and had a great reputation as sea – farers. That helped the extensive and lucrative foreign trade which Tamilaham enjoyed during the Sangam period.
- According to the Periplus, sea voyages to India were undertaken in the month of Euphrosion or June
- Ship–building was a native industry in Tamilaham. A description of the harbour of Puhar speaks of rows of large boats which had returned laden with grain obtained in exchange for the white salt they had sold. Other boats were seen in the backwaters of Puhar tied to the rows of pegs. Warehouses for storing the merchandise were built on the beach. Goods were collected in these warehouses to be loaded in the ships going abroad.
- Romans trading with Sangam kingdoms built a temple of Augustus at Muziris.
- Uraiyur was famous for cotton, pearls and Muslin.
- Yavanapriya was Sanskrit term which came to be used for Indian pepper.
- The coins of Augustus and Tiberius predominate the Roman coins found in India.
- Muslin, Ivory, Beryl, gems & pearls and spices were the most important items of export to Roman Empire. Wine was imported from Rome.
- Excavations at Arikamedu and Alagangulam had provided evidence about the Indo-Roman trade.

REVENUE AND FINANCE

- On special occasions, the payment of land revenue was remitted. That

happened when rains failed or the harvest was not satisfactory or some other calamity took place.

- It was competent for the king to assign tax-free lands to certain persons or institutions. At times, whole villages were granted tax-free to persons of the king's choice.
- Villages granted as gift (involving freedom from the payment of taxes) to Brahmins were called Brahmadeya.
- Next to land revenue were the customs duties and tolls. Tamilaham had an extensive trade with places like Rome, Egypt, Burma, Malaya and Java.

SANGAM AGE – POLITY

- Hereditary monarchy was the prevailing form of government in Sangam age.
- The Sangam age polity was marked by the Cheras, Cholas and Pandayas kingdoms. It may be presumed that the Cheras were the earliest.
- King was known as Ko, Mahnam, Iraivan, Korraivan, Vendan etc.
- The crowned monarchs of Tamilaham were called Vendar.
- The other chieftains who did not wear crown were called Mannar.
- The eldest son of the reigning king generally succeeded his father and the throne was inherited by him as a matter of right. Law of Primogeniture was established
- The royal court was called Avai, Arasavai or Vettavai.
- Five qualities of a king were - Knowledge of the Vedas, Right speech, Knowledge of economy, Knowledge of astrology and Control over senses.
- The king had certain basic functions and those were learning, performing sacrifices, making presents, protecting the subjects and punishing the wicked and the guilty. The sacrifices prescribed for the kings were Rajsuya (the imperial sacrifice) and Asvamedha (the horse sacrifice).
- There is no evidence that any king was deposed during the Sangam period, but many kings voluntarily abdicated on certain occasions. A king may abdicate if he was defeated in a battle or otherwise humiliated. There was a provision for a Council of Regency if the new king was a minor. The eldest prince was the heir – apparent and was called **Komahnam**. The other sons and brother of the king were called Ilango.
- The king was expected to maintain the dignity of his office by looking after the welfare of the people and maintaining law and order. It was believed that “a king who does not look after his subjects as a mother looks goes to hell.

- The three ambitions of an ideal king were aspiring to the spiritual wealth, conquering the other rulers in the world and leaving behind a good reputation.
- Divine qualities were attributed to the king.
- In Sangam age there was practice of erecting monuments for dead soldiers and worshipping them. These were known as Virakkal/Nadukul (Hero stone).
- Kavalmapam/Kadimaram were Tutelary tree. Each ruler had a great tree in his palace as a symbol of power.
- Two intuitions called Aimperukulu and Enperayam are mentioned in many Tamil Sangam texts. The Aimperukulu consisted of the Purohit, the army chief, the ambassador, the spies and the ministers. The Enperayam consisted of the Karanattiyalavar (the accountants), Karumakarar (executive officials), Kanakassurram (treasury officials), Kadaikappalar (palace guards), Nagaramandar (leading men among the king's subjects in the capital city), Padaittalaivar (chiefs of the infantry), Yanai Virar (chiefs of the elephantry) and Ivuli Maravar (chiefs of the cavalry). There was no difference in status between these groups of royal servants.
- The king employed many ministers and their duties were advisory. They were present in the court and advised the king on matters on which they were consulted. Ministers bore the title of **Kavidi**.
- The kings of the Sangam age employed Dutas or ambassadors. They were the representatives of one king in the court of another. The chief qualifications of an ideal Duta were pleasing manners, coming from a high, family, clemency, eloquence, a good and stately figure, a good and high standard of education, ability to time his message without betraying or fear and showing favour and courage in the face of certain death.
- Spies were employed by the king in large numbers. They were called **Orrar**.
- For all practical purposes, the people were allowed to manage their local affairs. The people of a village governed themselves through rich, experienced, influential and sufficiently wise men of the locality. A small village assembly (**Avai**) met in the village to transact local business. The village institutions of **Manram and Podiyil** were concerned mainly with the arbitration of petty disputes arising in the village.
- Generally, the war started with a well-known incident, cattle-lifting. The incident was both a pretext and a justification. The King led his army in person and was at the head of his army. He exhibited great bravery of the battle-field.
- The court in the capital town was called Avai and the court in the village was called Manram.

- Ordinarily, witnesses were examined in the court for the disposal of cases. Occasionally, trial by ordeal was resort to. Trial by ordeal was followed both in civil and criminal cases.
- The two most recurring causes of warfare in Sangam age were cattle lifting and refusal to give princess in marriage.
- The fundamental cause of conflict between the cholas, Cheras and Pandayas was the desire to control the fertile delta of Kaveri River.
- The reference to a woman ruler of Pandayan kingdom comes from Megasthenes.
- There used to be five councils to assist king.
- The members o five councils where known as **Mashanam**.

OTHER DETAILS

TITLES OF THE KINGS

Cheras Vannauar/Villavar/Kuddavar

Cholas Sennis/Valavan/Killi

Pandyas Minavar/Panchvar/Tennar

ROYAL EMBLEMS

Pandayas Double Carp

Cholas Tiger

Cheras Bow

Amaichchar Purohitr

Senappatiyar Dutar

Orrar

Mandalam Nadu

Ur

Sirur

Perur

Mudur

Manaram

SANGAM AGE OFFICIALS Ministers

Priests

Military commanders Ambassadors

Spies

POLITICAL DIVISIONS Kingdom

Provinces

Towns

Small Village

Big Village

Old Village

Local Assemblies

SANGAM AGE - KINGDOMS

SANGAM AGE- THE PANDYAS

- Area–Southern Tamilnadu
- Capital–Madurai (earlier Tenmadurai and Kapatapuram) on the Bank of river Vaigai.
- Seaport–Korkai, at the mouth of the river Tambraparni. Second port was Saliyur
- Titles : Minavar, Kavuriyar, Panchawar, Tennar, Seliyar, Marrar, Valudi
- The Pandyas of Madurai patronised an assembly of poets and literature known as Sangam, and the literature

produced by this association came to be known as Sangam literature.

- The Pandyas of Madurai sent embassies to Augustus & Trojan.

SANGAM AGE- THE CHOLAS

- The Chola dominion was known as Tondaimandalam/Chola Mandalam.
- Geographical Area–Northern Tamilnadu and Southern Andhra Pradesh.
- Capital–Uraiyur
- Sea ports–Puhar/Poompuhar/Kaveripattanam (Khabaris of Ptolemy) at the mouth of the river Kaveri.
- Titles of Chola Rulers : Sennis, Sembiyas, Valavan, Killi
- The origin of the Cholas is not certain.
- Tradition connects them with Sibi and Manu of the Puranas.
- Manu Niti Kanta Chola ruled from Tiru Arul.

SANGAM AGE- THE CHERAS

- The Chera ruled on eastern coast around modern Kerala.
- The Chera Capital was Vanji/Karur/Karuvur at the mouth of the river Periyar. Korkai was also located in

Chera Kingdom.

- Seaport–Musiri/Muziris, Tondi.
- Titles : Vanavar, Villaar, Kudavar, Duttuvar, Poraiyar, Malaiyar

TOPIC

THE SATAVAHANAS

EARLY HISTORY OF SATAVAHANAS

- The Kings called Satavahanas and Satakarnis in inscriptions and coins are given the name of Andhras, Andhra – Bhrityah and Andhrajatayah in the Puranas.
- Dr. Smith fixed the capital of the Andhras at Srikakulam but Bhandarkar preferred to fix it at Dharmyakataka.
- Epigraphic, numismatic and literary evidences point to a Western origin, the region around Pratishthana which is modern Paithan in the Aurangabad district of former Hyderabad State.
- The Satavahanas were Brahmanas like the Sungas and Kanvas. This is confirmed by the Nasik cave inscription of Vasishthiputra Pulumayi where king Gautamiputra Satakarni is described as a unique Brahman, equal in powers to Parsurama and destroyer of the pride and prestige of the Kshatriyas.
- The Andhras are mentioned in the Aitareya Brahman. The Andhras are represented there as a Dasyu race, living on the fringes of the Aryan settlements and descended from Visvamitra.
- In the time of Chandragupta Maurya and Megasthenes, the Andhras occupied the deltas of the Godavari and Krishna rivers.
- They were famous for their military strength which was second only to that of Chandragupta Maurya.
- The Andhra territory included 30 walled towns and a large number of villages. The army had 100000 foot soldiers, 2000 horsemen and 1000 elephants.
- Their capital was Srikakulam on the lower course of the river Krishna.
- The Rock Edict XII of Asoka makes a reference to the Andhras.
- According to Dr. Smith, although the Andhras were a tributary of Asoka, they became independent after his death under the leadership of Simuka.

THE SATAVAHANA POLITICAL SYSTEM

- The Satavahana kings merely took up the title of Raja.
- Satavahanas tried to establish rule according to the Dharmasastra.

- Kings represented themselves as possessing qualities of mythical heroes such as Rama, Krishna, Bhima, etc. This was done to claim divinity for kingship.
- Important officials were called Mahamatras and Amatyas.
- Administration of the ruler areas under an official called Gautamikas.
- Senapatis were appointed as governor of the provinces.
- Feudal traits found its beginning. The Satavahana kings started the practice of land grants.
- Revenue free villages were granted to brahmanas and Buddhist monks.
- Royal officers and army were not allowed to enter these villages.
- In the Satavahana empire three types of feudatories existed :

Raja
Mahabhoja and
Senapati

- Kataka and Skandhavaras are terms used in the inscription for military settlements and camps. These also acted as centre of administration as long as the king stayed there.
- The princes were called Kumaras.
- The eldest son was not made the Yuvraja and he was not associated with the administration of the country. However, princes were appointed as viceroys.
- Excepting the areas under the control of the feudatories, the Satavahana empire was divided into Janapadas and Aharas. District was called Ahara.
- Each Ahara was divided into many Gramas,
- Amachas were appointed in-charge of Aharas. They were non-hereditary governors and were transferred from time to time
- Gramika was in-charge of a Gama.
- The names of other functionaries known to us are the Mahatarakas (Great Chamberlains), Maha Aryakas, Bhandargarikas (store-keepers), Heranikas (Treasurers), Mahamatras, Nibamdhakaras (officers in-charge of registration of documents), Pratiharas and Dutakas.
- The sovereignty of the Satavahanas and Satakarnis of Kuntal lasted longer and did not come to an end probably before the fourth century A.D. when it was ended by the Kadambas.

THE SATAVAHANAS – ECONOMIC LIFE

- The taxes were not heavy. Their number was also small.

- The Government got its income from the taxes on land, income from monopoly of salt, and income from court fees. Many taxes were paid in kind.
- The Periplus tells that ships from Western countries sailed down the Red Sea and followed the Arabian coast up to Kane. From there some ships went to the Indus, some to Barygaza (Broach) and some to ports of Lymrika (Malabar).
- Paithan and Tagara were important marts of those days. The most important harbours were Suppara or Sopara and Keliena or Kalyana. Kalyana was raised to the rank of a regular mart probably in the time of King Satakarni, third king of the dynasty.
- Ptolemy, who wrote only after 6 decades after the writing of the Periplus, does not mention the name of Kalyan.
- The currency of the country consisted of Karshapanas which were both silver and copper. Suvarna, a gold coin, was equal to 35 silver Karshapanas. One Karshapana weighed 146.4 grains and one Ratti was equal to 1.83 grains.
- The Guilds played important role in economic life. The Guilds were known as **Kulika Nigams** during Satavahana period.
- Satavahanas exploited iron mines of Warangal and Karimnagar.
- Black smith's shops are found in Karimnagar district.
- Issued coins mostly of lead, Potin, Copper and bronze.
- Andhra region became famous for cotton products (foreign accounts) during Satavahana period.
- A coin mould has been found by which six coins could be stuck at a time.
- At Peddabankur in Karimnagar district evidence of regular use of fire baked bricks are found.
- Satavahanas were tribal people, but later got brahmanised.
- They were first rulers to grant revenue free grants of land to brahmanas.
- Gandhikas or the perfumers are repeatedly referred as donors.
- Fortified settlement for the first time emerged in Deccan during the time of Satvahanas.
- Satvahanas were ardent champions of Brahmanism.
- Performed a number of Vedic sacrifices Ashvamedh Vajapeya etc.
- Worshiper of Vaishnavite god, particularly Krishna and Vasudeva
- Followed tolerant attitude towards other religions.
- Kings also donated to Buddhist monks.
- Nagarjunkonda and Amaravati emerged as centres of Buddhist culture and learning.
- At Nasik, three monasteries (viharas) carry inscription of Nahapana (shaka

ruler) and Gautamiputra Shatakarni.

- Official language was Prakrit and script was Brahmi.

THE SATAVAHANA – SOCIAL LIFE

- The social structure was matrilineal but ruling dynasty was patriarchal.
- Society was divided into four classes. The first class consisted of the Maharathis, Mahabhojas and Maha Senapatis. They formed the highest class in the society. There were feudatory chieftains in - charge of Rashtras or districts.
- The Mahabhojas were located in North Konkan and the Maharathis were located in the country above the Western Ghats.
- The second class consisted of both officials and non-officials.
- Among the officials were Amatyas, Mahamatras and Bhandagarikas. To the non-official class belonged the Naigama (merchant), the Sarthvaha (head of a caravan of traders) and the Sresthin (head of a trade guild).
- To the third class belonged the Lekhaka (scribe), Vaidya (physician), Halakiya (cultivator), Suvarnakara (goldsmith) and Gandhika (dealt in perfumes).
- To the fourth class belonged the Vardhaki (carpenter). Malakara (gardener), Lohavaniya (blacksmith) and Dasaka (fisherman).
- The cultivators and mercantile people were divided into a number of Grihas (homesteads) or Kutumbas or Kulas (families).
- The **Golikas and Halikas** were sub- castes formed on occupational basis during Satavahana period.
- We have references to guilds of oil pressures, hydraulic machine artisans, potters, weavers, corn dealers, bamboo workers, and braziers.
- The prevalence of these guilds shows that the institutions of self-government were common in the country.
- Ushavadata made two permanent endowments to Kulika Nigamas or Srenis.
- We learn from inscriptions that whenever investments were made, interest was paid on them.
- The Satavahana kings were Brahmans and they performed many sacrifices.
- **Nanaghat inscription of Nayanika** gives us an idea of the various kinds of sacrifices which were performed at that time.
- Sometimes Dakshina was given in the form of villages.
- The Satavahana kings worshipped Samkarshana, Vasudeva, Indra, the Sun and the Moon. The Saptsati of King Hala refers to the worship of Indra, Krishna, Pasupati and Gauri. The mention of such names as Sivapalita, Sivakhadita,

Sivadatta, Kumara, etc. points to the worship of Siva and Skanda.

- In the Saptasati, Hari or Trivikrama is said to be superior to other gods.
- Such names as Naga, Sarpa and Sarpila point to the prevalence of serpent worship.
- In the Amaravati school, Buddha was depicted as a divine being receiving worship. In Gandhara, the Buddha is portrayed as a Guru or preceptor. At Mathura, he assumes the garb of a local yogin while Amaravati transforms him into a preaching monk or a public orator.

THE PALLAVAS

- There is no definite information available about the early life of the Pallavas.
- They were given high caste status by fabricated genealogy.
- The Pallava dynasty was founded by Vishnugopa. His name is mentioned in Allahabad pillar inscription of Samudragupta. He was captured by Samudragupta during his south Indian campaign and was liberated afterwards.
- The definite history of the dynasty begins with the accession of Simha Vishnu in second half of 6th century.
- Their capital was Kanchipuram.
- The Pallavas performed Vedic sacrifices including Ashvamedha. This merely symbolized accepting of certain aspects of certain aspects of Aryan culture.
- They issued their inscriptions first in Prakrit and later in Sanskrit and Tamil both.
- Early Pallava rulers encouraged clearing of jungle lands and reclamation of waste land for agricultural purposes.
- Coconut cultivation in India was known from the period of the Pallavas and western Gangas in south coastal region.
- According to Marco Polo the ginger and cinnamon were produced in large quantities in the Pandya country.
- The Pallavas built first big empire south of Pennar and Tungabhadra River.
- Kanchi emerged as centre of Brahmanical and Buddhist learning under their patronage.
- Temples cut of rock were known as 'Rathas'.
- Royal symbol Linga and Vrishav.
- Kingship claimed divinity.
- Royal titles—Maharajadhiraja, Dharma—Maharajadhiraja.
- Some ministers of court adopted semi royal titles.

- Local Sabhas were more important.
- Excepting a few inscriptions at the beginning the rest of the inscriptions of the Pallavas were written in Sanskrit.
- A provision was made for the recitation of the Mahabharata in a Mandapa at Kurram near Kanchi.
- Sundaramurthi, the last of the Saiva saint, lived in the closing years of the Pallava rule.
- Vatsyayana, the author of Nyayabhasya was a Pandit of Kanchi.

THE CHALUKYAS OF BADAMI

- The Chalukyas of Badami claimed their decent from Hariputras. They contended that they belonged to the

Manavya Gotra.

- They claimed to have been nourished by the seven Mothers who are the mothers of mankind.
- The legendary history contained in the records of the later Chalukyas of Kalyani ascribes the origin of the

Chalukya dynasty to Manu or the Moon and associates it with Ayodhya which was the capital of Uttara– Kosala. They also claimed descent from lunar race.

- They were the feudatory of Kadambas.
- Built their kingdom on the ruins of the Vakataka.
- Began with the base in northern Mysore at Vatapi (Badami) and the adjacent Aihole. Soon conquered the tottering Vakataka territories
- Capital - Vatapi (Modern Badami)
- Pulakesin I alone is stated to have performed a number of sacrifices such as the Asvamedha, Vajapeya, Paundarika and other sacrifices.
- At Aihole alone there are 70 temples. In addition to Aihole, there were temples at Badami and Pattadakal.
- Ladh Khan Temple, the Durga Temple and Huchimalligudi temples at Aihole are particularly famous.
- The Huchimalligudi temple seems to be the earliest of the Aihole group and it contains a Sikhara of the

Nagara type.

- During the seventh century AD, the movement of rock cut halls was initiated. There are as many as 10 temples at Pattadakal belonging to this period. Six of them follow the Dravidian style. The temple of Virupaksha is the most important one. It was built by Loka–Mahadevi, the queen of Vikramaditya II. It has many features similar to those of the Kailashnath temple at Kanchi.
- One of the achievements of the Chalukya art was the building of excavated cave temples of Hindu gods.
- Vijayaditya (696–733 AD) built the great temple of Siva under the name of Vijayesvara now called Sangamesvara at Pattadakal in Bijapur District. His sister built a Jain temple called Anesejjeya–basadi at Lakshmeswar.
- Another queen of Vikramaditya II constructed another great temple of Siva under the name of Trailokesvara in the vicinity of the Lokesvara or Virupaksha temple.

THE RASHTRAKUTAS

- The Rashtrakutas of Malkhed seems to have descended from the Rastikas or Rathikas. They were so important in the middle of the third century B.C. that they were mentioned in the edicts of Ashoka.
- The family of the imperial Rashtrakutas introduced in the 9th century a claim that it descended from the Yadu family of the Mahabharata times.
- The court poets of the Rashtrakutas rulers compared the Rashtrakuta family with the Yadu race and contended that the Rashtrakutas became as invincible with the birth of Govind III as the Yadu family became invincible with the birth of Murari or Lord Krishna.
- The author of the Sanjan Grant of 871 A. D. declared Lord Krishna to be the progenitor of the Rashtrakuta family which was identified with Yadavanvaya.
- In Rashtrakuta administration, the king was the centre and fountain of all power. His titles were Maha– Rajadhiraja, Parambhattaraka, Dharavarsha, Akalavarsha, Suvarnavarsha, Vikramavaloka and Fagattunga.
- Kingship was hereditary and usually the eldest son succeeded to the throne. He was formally installed as Yuvaraja. In certain cases, a younger son could also be

appointed heir-apparent if he was considered to be abler. Such a thing was done in the case of Govinda III.

- He was expected to lead military expeditions of accompany his father on those expeditions. The princes other than the Yuvaraja were appointed as provincial governors.
- The directly administered areas were divided into Rashtras and Vishayas. The number of villages in a Vishaya varied from 1,000 to 4,000. Each Vishaya was subdivided into Bhuktis. The Bhuktis seem to have been named after the names of the towns of the headquarters. Each Bhukti was divided into 20 villages. The village was the smallest administrative unit.
- The head of a Rashtra was Rashtrapati. He was in charge of both civil and military administration.
- Vishapatis and Bhogapatis exercised the same functions within a restricted area which were performed by the Rashtrapatis within a wider area.
- In some cases, posts became hereditary.
- Vishapatis and Bhogapatis performed their duties of revenue collection with the help of the hereditary revenue officers known as Nadgavundas or Desagramakutas. These officers were paid in the form of rent free lands.
- Village administration was carried on by the village headman and the village accountant. These posts were usually hereditary.
- Each village had a popular council on which every adult householder was represented. Sub-committees were appointed to manage local school, tanks, temples and roads. They could also receive trust properties and administer them according to the conditions laid down by the donors. The sub-committees were required to work in co-operation with the village headman.
- There are references to Vishayamahattaras or Elders of the District and Rashtra Mahattaras or elders of the Province.
- Land tax known as Uddranga or Bhogakara. It was about one-fourth of the produce.
- Remissions of land revenue were made only on the occasion of famines. Taxes were also collected on fruits, vegetables, etc. Octroi and excise duties were levied on a large number of articles. Villagers were required to arrange for free boarding, lodging and transport for officers visiting the village.
- Princesses also occupied important government posts in the Rashtrakuta period. Chandrabelabba, a daughter of Amoghavarsha I, administered the Raichur Doab in 837 AD.
- Silabhattarika made a land grant without the permission of her husband

Dhruva.

- Sulaiman, the Arab traveller, who visited India in the 9th century A.D., has described the Rashtrakutas as the most feared and powerful rulers of India.
- The rock-cut shrines at Ellora and Elephanta belong to this period.
- The Kailash temple of Ellora is similar to the Lokeshvara temple at Pattadakal.
- The Dasavatara temple is the largest and the simplest. There are figure sculptures of great size surrounding the wall depicting both the Vaishnava and Siva themes. The Hiranyakesava relief is the most outstanding sculpture among them.
- There are five Jain shrines cut from rocks at Ellora and the important among them are Chhota Kailasa, Indra Sabha and Jagannath Sabha.
- In sculptured reliefs of Ardhanarisvara and Trimurti or Mahesamurti at Elephanta, God is represented in triple form corresponding to three aspects of his functions.
- Originally there were paintings on some of the shrines.

6

CHOLA KINGDOM

SOURCES OF CHOLA HISTORY

- Major Rock Edicts II and XIII of Ashoka, Sangam literature, Megasthenese account (about Pandayas),

Hathigumpha inscription of Kharavela.

- In the account of Yuan Chwang (7th century AD) who mentions a Kingdom of Telugu Chodas in Rayalseema (Vengi).
- Buddhist text Mahavamsa, Ptolemy's Geography, Periplus of Erythraean Sea, Tanjore Plates, Thirovalangadur Plates, Uttaramerur Inscription and Pisthapuram Inscription.
- The inscription at Tiruvendipuram recording in detail the difficulties of Rajaraja III and the relief he got from the Hoysala king, is purely an historical inscription.
- Tamil is the most frequent language used in the Chola Inscriptions. This is followed by the Sanskrit, Telugu and Kannada in descending order of preference.

CHOLA ADMINISTRATION

- The king was the head of the administration. The Chola kings took up high-sounding titles glorifying their achievements. They maintained large imperial households. They gave big state banquets. They gave a lot of money as donations in temples.
- The Chola kings started the practice of giving royal name of idols. The images of Chola kings and queens were set up in the temples and were worshipped.
- The normal rule was hereditary succession to the throne but sometimes the order was changed on account of the seriousness of the situation. The Cholas kings had all the powers but their absolutism was tempered both by a ministerial council and organized administrative staff. The heads of the departments were in close contact with the king and were often consulted by him.
- The officers were paid by land assignments called Jivita. They were honoured

and encouraged by titles. The higher officials were called Perundaram and the lower ones Sirutaram.

- The empire was divided into provinces called Mandalams.
- Each Mandala was divided into a number of Kottams. Each Kottam was subdivided into a number of districts called Nadus. Within the jurisdiction of a Nadu, there were many villages unions called Kurrams and TanKurrams which were the units of administration.
- The head of a Mandala who was the viceroy, was either a close relation of king himself or a descendant of its dispossessed royal house. He was in constant communication with the Central Government. He received the orders of the king and also sent a report of what he himself did to the king. He had a large number of officials under him in the work of administration. All records were properly kept.
- Nadu was essentially a peasant- community based on Kingship ties in pre-Chola period. In the Chola period it evolved into a major fiscal unit. The Vellalas or prosperous peasants dominated the affairs of the Nadu. They were represented by Nattars or officers looking after agrarian matters in the Nadu. The head of the Nadu was Nadalvar.
- Some villages were organized as a separate administrative unit. These were called Taiyur Kottam or Tankottam.
- The old capital of the cholas was Orthura or Uraiyr and Karikala founded his new capital named KaveriPaddinam.
- Chola Empire declined mainly because of depletion of military and economic resources due to prolonged warfare.
- Macro polo refers to the practice of Sati in the country.
- Vaishnavas were persecuted by Kulottunga I. Saivism enjoyed royal patronage.

ECONOMIC LIFE

- Public revenue was derived mainly from the land and was collected in kind or in cash or in both by the village assemblies. Land was possessed by individuals and communities special attention was given by the government and local authorities to irrigation.
- In the time of Rajaraja I, the demand of the state was one-third of the gross produce. This share was fixed after an elaborate survey of the land. Such surveys were ordered by Rajaraja I and Kulottunga I. There seems to have been periodical revision of the classification of land and assessment of land revenue.

- The other items of public revenue were customs and tolls, taxes on various kinds of profession, mines, forests, salt-pans etc.
- Unpaid labour was frequently employed. Kulottunga abolished tolls.
- The Chola kings spent a lot of money on public works. They maintained roads, bridges, and ferries. There was an extensive irrigation system. Dams were constructed to divert the water of rivers into smaller channels. Artificial reservoirs, tanks and wells were used for irrigation purposes.
- Local revenue under the Cholas was called Kadambai. It was collected by officers known as Tandavam who functioned at the level of the Nadu and co-ordinated with the village assembly for the purpose of revenue collection.
- The Cholas issued coins of gold, silver and copper. Specimens of gold coins are extremely rare. Silver coins are not so rare but copper coins are found in plenty.
- In this early period of Cholas had their capital at Uraiyur, which was also an important centre of trade in cotton-textiles.
- The Cholas enjoy the distinction of being the only Indian dynasty with an overseas empire.
- The Cholas developed a number of sea-ports such as Kaveripattanam (Puhar), Mahabalipuram, Shaliyur and Korkai. Kaveripattanam, near the mouth of the Kaveri river was the chief centre of trade. It is mentioned as a flourishing commercial centre in Periplus and also in the Silappadikaram. It had a light house, customs and ware- housing facilities.
- The Cholas had contacts with a large area extending from China in the east of Persia and Arabian on the west.
- Main item of import was horses.
- Foreign traders were known as Nanadeshis.

THE CHOLA MILITARY

- The Cholas maintained a big standing army and a navy. The army consisted of elephants, cavalry and infantry.
- The powerful navy helped in overseas conquests: Anuradhapura (Srilanka), 12,000 islands (Maldives) and Srivijaya Kingdom (Java and Sumatra).
- It was composed chiefly of Kaikkolas or Sengunder. The **Velaikkaras** were the bodyguard of the king. They had to take a vow to defend the king with their lives. They were ready even to burn themselves on the funeral pyre of the king (Marco Polo).
- The commander enjoyed the ranks of Nayaka, Senapati or Mahadandanayaka.

- Sometimes a war started on account of cattle-lifting by some party. Those people who distinguished themselves in war were given the titles of Kshatriyasikhamani.
- The Chola kings behaved as barbarians in war. Neither women nor children were spared. Women were dishonoured in a shameless manner. Unspeakable miseries were inflicted on the people by the cholas.
- The cholas seem to have possessed a strong navy.

LOCAL SELF GOVERNMENT

- The Uttaramerur inscriptions dated 919 and 921 AD of Parantaka I throw light on constitution and functioning and powers of the Sabha.
- Self-governing assemblies included UR, Sabha & Mahasabha.
- Ur functioned in non-Brahmadeya villages and generally included among its members all the prosperous peasants.
- Another important representative assembly was the Nagaram which looked after the interests of the trading community.
- Sabha & Mahasabha functioned in Agrahara or Brahmadeya villages. They had an exclusive Brahmin membership with certain qualification based on property and learning prescribed for the members.

Qualifications:

- Ownership of more than 1/4th Veli of land.
- Residence in a house built on one's own site
- Age between 35 to 70
- Knowledge of the Vedic mantras.
- In the alternative, one could have 1/8th Veli of land and knowledge of one Veda and a Bhashya.

Disqualifications:

- Those who had been on any of the committees for the past three years.
- Those who had been on the committee but had failed to submit the accounts together with all their specified relations.
- Those who had committed incest or other great sins and those who had stolen the property of others.

System of elections :

- From among the persons duly nominated, one was to be chosen for each of the 30 Kudumbus or wards by Kudavolai or pot-ticket (lot system).
- The names of the candidates were written on palm-leaf tickets which were put

into a pot and shuffled.

- A young boy was asked to take out as many tickets as there were members to be chosen. The persons whose tickets were picked up by the boy were declared as successful.
- Out of these 30 persons 12 were appointed to the annual committee. 12 to the garden committee and 6 to the tank committee.
- A standing committee and a gold committee were also selected.
- In some places, there were committees for Justice and Fields. The number of committees and members varied from village to village.
- The members were paid nothing for their services.
- The members of the committee were called **Variyapperumakkal**.
- The Mahasabha was called Perunguri and its members were called Perumakkal. Generally, the assembly met in the village temple, but sometimes it met under the shade of a tree or on the bank of a tank.
- The local assemblies were responsible for collection of the total amount of revenue, administering justice and managing other affairs of village.
- Acted as trustees for public charities of all kinds. They received deposits of money, land and paddy on the condition that they provided the things stipulated by the donors.
- The village assembly regulated market and assigned particular places for the sale of particular commodities. It could regularly impose taxes and even levy extra tolls. It had the power to exact forced labour. It also made provisions for education.
- The garden supervision committee was in charge of keeping roads in order and repair them whenever necessary.
- It is stated in one inscription that royal officers supervised the accounts of the village assembly from time to time.
- In one case, an assembly was actually fined by the king on the complaint brought up by the temple authorities that it was misappropriating a part of revenues assigned to them.
- Capital punishment given by the assembly had to be confirmed by king.

Various committees

- Annual committee—Samvatsara Variyam
- Garden committee—Totta Variyam
- Tank committee—Eri Variyam
- Standing committee—Panchavara Variyam
- Gold committee—Pon Variyam

- Judicial committee–Nyattar

CHOLA LITERATURE

- Literary activity was mainly in Tamil language.
- Kalingattupparani of Jayangondar gives us a lot of useful information about the Chola genealogy and the details of the Kalinga campaign of Kulotunga, including the route taken by his army.
- Sivakasindamani was written by Lirukkadevar in the 10th century AD.
- Sanskrit works were translated into Tamil. Kamban translated Ramayana in Tamil in the twelfth century AD.
- Famous poet Ottakuttan was the court poet of Vikrama Chola, Kullotunga II and Rajaraja II.
- Virasoliyam composed by Budhamitra and Nannur by Pavanandi are famous grammar books.
- Amritsagara, a Jaina poet, wrote Yapparungalam and Yapparungalakkarikai.

CHOLA ART

- A new style of temple architecture evolved under the Cholas.
- This style is called Dravida style and is characterised by the Vimana and Gopuram.
- Best example of Dravida style under the Cholas is seen in the Brihadeswara (Rajarajeshvara) temple at Tanjore.
- Elaborate temple ritual based on music and danced developed.
- Institution of Devadasi or temple dances developed.
- Bronze images, especially of Nataraj display the Zenith of iconography.
- Chola period generally mentioned as Classical age in the history of South India.
- Fergusson commented that the Chola artists conceived like giants and finished like jewellers.
- Temple of Koranganatha at Srinivasanallur in Trichinapalli belongs to the reign of Parantaka I.
- Subrahmanya temple belongs to the reign of Rajaraja I.

THE VIJAYANAGARA EMPIRE

EARLY HISTORY OF VIJAYANAGAR

- Early history of Vijayanagar Empire is obscure.
- “A Forgotten Empire” written by Sewell throws light on the history of Vijayanagar empire.
- The view of the late Rev. Father Heras was that the foundation of the city of Anegundi, which formed the cradle of the Vijayanagar Empire, was laid by Vira Ballala III, the Hoysala king and Harihara. Harihara was a near relative of the ruling family of Hoysala and he was a frontier officer.
- Nuniz, the Portuguese chronicler tells us that as soon as the people of Anegondi learnt of the departure of Muhammad Tughluq, they revolted against his Deputy and made his position extremely precarious. The Malik Naib informed his master about his pitiable condition and appealed for immediate help, Muhammad Tughluq sought the advice of his nobles and released from prison the six men who had been in his custody since the overthrow of the kingdom of Kampili.
- Two sons of Sangama Harihara and Bukka were converted to Islam and given charge of the conquered territory by Muhammad Bin Tughlaq in the south.
- At the opportune time the two brothers were reconverted to Hindu fold by a Vaishnavite saint called Madhava Vidyaranya of Shringeri.
- The two brothers founded the city and kingdom of Vijayanagar in 1336 AD.

VIJAYANAGAR POLITY

- The king was the head of state and the administration. He was expected to rule according to Dharma. The ideal of Kingship was given by Krishna Deva Raya in his **Amuktamalyada**.
- According to Krishna Deva Raya a crowned king should always rule with an eye towards Dharma.
- The Vijayanagar Empire was divided into many provinces. The provinces were known as Rajya, Mandala and Chavadi. The provinces were divided into sub-divisions like Venthe, Nadu, Sima, Village and Sthala in the Tamil Portion.

- The king maintained his control over Villages through an officer called **Mahanayakacharyya**.
- Land revenue administration was under a department called **Athavane**.
- Land was divided into three parts for purposes of land revenue assessment viz wet land, dry land orchards and woods.
- Prostitution was a recognised profession in Vijayanagar state and tax was imposed on them. Abdur Razzaq tells us that the income from the prostitutes was 12,000 **Fanams** which was used for the maintenance of policemen.

ECONOMIC LIFE

- The prosperity of the Vijayanagar Empire was due to the growth of agriculture, industries trade and commerce. The state followed a wise irrigation policy. A large number of tanks were constructed by rulers & Nayaks. Big temples had Irrigation Department.
- Industries were also encouraged by the state Commerce was inland, coastal and overseas.
- Calicut was the most important port on the Malabar Coast.
- According to Abdur Razzaq there were 300 sea-ports in the Vijayanagar Empire. Goa, Bhatkal, Mangalore, Honavar, Calicut were some important ports.
- The Vijayanagar Empire maintained commercial relations with the islands in the Indian Ocean, the Malaya Archipelago, Burma, China, Arabia, Persia, South Africa, Abyssinia and Portugal.
- The exports from the Vijayanagar Empire were cloth, rice, iron, salt petre, sugar, diamond and spices.
- The imports were horses, elephants, pearls, Copper, Coral, mercury, China silk and velvet.
- Duarte Barbosa tells us that South India got its ships built in the Maldives islands. The art of ship building was well known in India.
- Principal Industries were Textiles & Metallurgy.
- Perfumery was the most important among small scale industries.
- Horses were most important item of import. The horses were brought from Arabia, Syria & Turkey through sea route to West Coast. Goa was entreport which supplied horses to internal areas. The horse trade was controlled by Arabs & later by Portuguese.
- Tax on temple and Brahmins was 1/20 of Produce
- **Coinage** : The coins were mainly made of gold. The coins made of Silver &

Copper were rare.

- **Varaha** – It was made of gold. The Portuguese called it Pagoda.
- **Partab** – It was equal to half of Varaha.
- **Fanam** – It was equal to 1/10 th of Partab.
- **Tar** – It was made of pure silver. It was equal to 1/6th of Fanam.
- **Djital** – It was made of copper. It was equal to 1/3rd of Tar.

LITERARY ACTIVITIES

- Bhima Kavi wrote Basava Purana in Kannada.
- Lolla Lakshmidhara wrote Sarvastivilasa.
- **Madhava Vidyaranya** and his brother Sayana were famous intellectuals at court of Hari Hara I and Bukka I. While the former wrote “Kalnirnaya a commentary on Parasara Smriti the latter was famous commentator on the Vedas.
- **Gangadevi** (daughter-in-law of Bukka I) wrote Madurai Vijayam. This book describes the annexation of Madura kingdom by Kumara Kampana, son of Bukka I.
- **Gangadha** wrote Gongadara Pratapa visalam.
- **Rajanatha Dindian** wrote Saluva Abhyesdayam
- **Alasani Peddana** was the court poet of Krishna Deva Raya. He wrote Manucharitam. He was called Andhra Kavi Pitamaha.
- Krishna Deva Raya wrote Amuktamalyada in Telugu, Jambavatikalayanam and Ushaparinayam in Sanskrit language.
- Deva Raya II wrote Mahanatak Shuddhnidhi in Sanskrit.
- Official Language of Vijayanagar empire was Kannada and the script was Devnagari.

THE BAHAMANI KINGDOM

ORIGIN OF BAHMANI KINGDOM

- During the reign of Muhammad Tughluq that the Amirs of the Deccan called the Amiran-i-Sadah revolted against the Emperor.
- They captured the fort of Daulatabad and declared **Ismail Mukh** as the King of the Deccan under the title of Nasir ud Din Shah.
- Ismail Mukh was an old man and loved life of ease. He voluntarily resigned in

favour of Hasan.

- Hasan also known as Zafar Khan was declared king by the nobles on 3rd August, 1347 under the title of Abul Muzaffar Alauddin Bahman Shah.

VARIOUS KINGDOMS EMERGED AFTER THE DECLINE OF BAHMANI KINGDOM

1. BIJAPUR

- (a) Adil Shahi dynasty.
- (b) Established in 1489-90 by Yusuf Adil Shah.
- (c) Was annexed to Mughal Empire by Aurangzeb in 1686.

2. AHMADNAGAR

- (a) Nizam Shahi dynasty.
- (b) Established in 1490 by Malik Ahmad.
- (c) Was annexed to Mughal Empire by Shahjahan in 1636.

3. BERAR

- (a) Imad Shahi dynasty.
- (b) Established in 1490 by Fath Ullah Imad shah.
- (c) Was annexed by Ahmadnagar in 1574.

4. GOLCONDA

- (a) Qutb Shahi dynasty.
- (b) Established in 1512 by Qutb Shah.
- (c) Was annexed to Mughal Empire by Aurangzeb in 1687.

5. BIDAR

- (a) Barid Shahi dynasty.
- (b) Established in 1526 by Amir Ali Barid.
- (c) Ibrahim Adil Shah II of Bijapur annexed Bidar to Bijapur in 1618-19.

MARATHAS

SHIVAJI (1627-80)

- Shivaji was born at Shivner near Poona in April 1627 AD. Shahji Bhonsle was his father and his mother's name was Jijabai. He belonged to Bhonsle Clan of

Marathas.

- Dadaji Kondev was his guardian and saint Ramdas was his political Guru.
- He captured the hilly fort of Torana from Bijapur in 1646 and after this he captured the fort of Raigarh. After this he snatched Supa from his uncle Shambhaji Mohite.
- The fort of Purandar was captured in 1648.
- In 1648 Shivaji negotiated with prince Murad, the Mughal governor of Deccan and expressed his wish to join Mughal service.
- He conquered Javli in 1656.
- He had a clash with Mughals in 1657 on the eve of Aurangzeb invasion of Bijapur.
- He conquered Konkan in the year 1657.
- In 1659 Bijapur sent a large army under Afzal Khan to punish Shivaji. Finding it difficult to crush Shivaji by force in unfavourable hilly terrain Afzal Khan resorted to deception. He sent **Krishnaji Bhaskar** to Shivaji with some tempting offers. But Shivaji could perceive the mischief and killed Afzal Khan at the time of their meeting.
- He also had confrontation with Shayista Khan in 1660 and Shayista Khan was able to defeat Maratha in few encounters.
- Shivaji attacked the camp of Shayista Khan at Poona in April 1663. In this attack Shayista Khan was injured and his son was killed. This incident badly upset Aurangzeb and Shayista Khan was removed from Deccan in December 1663 and he was appointed as governor of Bengal.
- In 1664 Shivaji sacked Surat. Surat was attacked again in 1670.
- In March 1665 Aurangzeb removed Jaswant Singh from Deccan and appointed Raja Jai singh. Jai singh organised successful military campaign against Shivaji. Shivaji visited the camp of Jai Singh and signed the **Treaty of Purandar in June 1665.**
- **Treaty of Purandar:**
 - (a) Shivaji surrendered 23 forts and adjoining areas to Mughals.
 - (b) 12 forts along with Raigarh remained with Shivaji.
 - (c) Shivaji was to remain loyal to Mughal emperor but he was freed from personal attendance at Mughal court.
 - (d) Shivaji promised to render help to Mughals in Deccan. He also agreed to pay 40 lakh Huns in 13 annual instalments if his possession of certain lands yielding 4 lakh Huns in Konkan and 5 lakh Huns in Balaq was confirmed. It was expected that Shivaji would occupy these lands with his own soldiers. (e)

Shambhaji was granted Mansab of 5000 and he was given a Jagir.

- Shivaji and his son Shambhaji reached Agra in May 1666. Aurangzeb put Shivaji under house arrest under the command of Ram Singh, the son of Raja Jai Singh. But Shivaji could escape from there.
- In 1672 Shivaji got Chauth from Surat.
- In 1674 Shivaji got himself coronated. The ceremony was performed at Raigarh by **Pandit Vishveshwar Ji of Kashi** (also known as Gagbhatt). Shivaji was coronated again by **Nishchalpuri Goswami**. He was a Tantrik. Nishchalpuri had raised doubts about the efficacy of coronation ceremony performed by Pandit Vishveshwar Ji of Kashi.
- He adopted the titles of Chhatrapati, Haingatva Dharmodharaka & Kshatriya Kulavatamsa.
- Shivaji collected 2/5 of produce as land revenue. The revenue was collected both in cash and in kind. Initially the rate of land revenue was 1/3rd of produce but this was raised to 40% of produce when Shivaji abolished various miscellaneous cesses. Land was measured and yield per acre was estimated.
- The Kingdom of Shivaji was called Swarajya. The Kingdom was divided into 4 provinces. The provinces were divided into Parganas and the Parganas were divided into Tarafs. Village was the smallest unit of Maratha administration.
- Chauth was the main source of income of Maratha State.
- Khafi Khan had given the testimony of Shivaji's chivalry.
- Kolaba was the HQ of naval fleet of Maratha kingdom.
- From the revenues collected by confederate Jagirdars whole of Sardeshmukhi and 1/3 of Chauth went to Chhatrapati.
- He invaded Karnataka in the year 1677-78.
- The Maratha cavalry was divided into two classes i.e. the Bargirs and the Silhedars. The Bargirs were supplied with horses and arms by the state and the Silhedars brought their own weapons and horses.
- Kolaba was the HQ of naval force.
- Shivaji died due to dysentery on 5th April 1680 AD.

THE PESHWAS

BALAJI VISHWANATH (1713-1720)

- The process of the rise of the supremacy of Peshwaship began during his tenure.
- Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath signed a deal (known as Truce of Delhi) with

Hussain Ali.

- According to this deal:

(a) Sahu was to get in full possession all the territories known as Shivaji's Swarajya.

(b) Those territories of Khandesh, Berar, Gondwana, Hyderabad and Karnataka which were recently conquered by the Marathas were also to be ceded to Sahu as a part of Maratha kingdom.

(c) The Marathas were allowed to collect Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from all the Mughal provinces of Deccan. In return of these privileges the Marathas were to place a military contingent of 15000 soldiers at the disposal of Mughal Emperor.

(d) Sahu would not harm Shambhaji of Kolhapur in any way.

(e) Sahu was also to pay an annual tribute of ten lakh rupees to the Emperor.

(f) The mother and other relatives of Sahu were to be released from Mughal captivity.

(g) Sir Richard Temple called this deal as the Magna Carta of the Maratha dominion.

- The agreement made by Hussain Ali with Maratha Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath was ratified by Rafi-ud-Darajat in 1719.

- He helped the Sayyid brothers in overthrowing Farrukhsiyar.

- He introduced Saranjami system.

BAJI RAO I (1720-1740)

- Baji Rao was the eldest son of Balaji Vishwanath. After the death of his father he was appointed as Peshwa by Maratha King Sahu.

- It is said about him that he had both the head to plan and hand to execute. He was the greatest exponent of Guerrilla tactics after Shivaji.

- Other Maratha leaders like Pratinidhi in Karhad, Sachiva in Bhor and Senapati in Telgaon also followed Baji Rao and established their power centres.

- Baji Rao built a fort at Poona and made Poona as his centre.

- Baji Rao preached and popularised the ideal of Hindu-pad-Padshahi or Hindu Empire to secure the support of the Hindu chiefs against the common enemy, i.e. the Mughal Empire.

- He said about Mughal Empire that let us strike at the trunk of withering tree,

the branches will fall off themselves.

- He established Maratha supremacy in the Deccan and formulated the policy of the conquest of the North. He proposed to Sahu the policy of Northward expansion by saying that the Maratha flag shall fly from Krishna to Attock. He also said that now is our time to drive the strangers from the country of the Hindus and acquire immortal renown.
- Shahu was so much impressed by the wisdom of the young Peshwa that he brushed aside all conservative counsels and said that you shall plant it beyond the Himalayas. You are indeed a noble son of a worthy father.
- He defeated Nizam-ul-Mulk at **Palkhed on 6th March 1728** and forced him to sign the **treaty of MungiSivgaon**.
- When Muhammad Khan Bangesh, the Mughal Governor of Allahabad put Bundela king Chhatrasal to great extremities Chhatrasal requested Peshwas Baji Rao-I for help. In October 1728 the Maratha Army reached Bundelkhand and ousted the Mughals from there. Chhatrasal held a durbar in the honour of Peshwa and assigned Kalpi, Saugar, Jhansi and Hirdenagar to Marathas.
- In March 1730 the Mughal governor of Gujarat Sarbuland Khan concluded a treaty with Chimnaji, the younger brother of Baji Rao-I. This treaty recognised Maratha claims of Chauth and Sardeshmukhi over Gujarat.
- The Maratha hoards under Udaji Pawar and Malhar Rao Holkar uprooted Mughal authority from Malwa. In 1735 whole of Malwa fell under the control of Marathas.
- In 1731 he forced Shambhaji II of Kolhapur to sign the **treaty of Warna**. By this treaty Shambhaji II accepted the supremacy of Sahu.
- On 29th March 1737 Baji Rao dashed into Delhi suddenly to expose the hollowness of Mughal Empire. He stayed in Delhi for three days.
- Baji Rao defeated Nizam-ul-Mulk again in the **battle of Bhopal** in December 1737 when the Nizam tried to subdue Marathas. Nizam-ul-Mulk was forced to sign **the convention of Duraha Sarai** in January 1738. According to this Convention:
 - (a) The Nizam promised to procure to the Peshwa the whole of Malwa and the territories between Narmada and Chambal rivers.
 - (b) Nizam was also to obtain the confirmation of these territories from the Emperor.
 - (c) Nizam was also to pay a war indemnity of 50 lakh rupees to the Marathas.
- He captured the port of Bassein from the Portuguese in 1739 and established his control over it.

BALAJI BAJI RAO (NANA SAHEB) (1740-1761)

- Balaji Baji Rao/Balaji-II/Nana Saheb was the eldest son of Baji Rao-I. After the death of his father he was appointed as Peshwa by Chhatrapati Sahu.
- He always took help of his cousin Sadashiva Rao Bhau in political affairs.
- He carried out various reforms in Maratha state. He established a strong police system and the Panchayat system were also reformed.
- He recruited even non-Maratha elements in the army.
- In 1741 Balaji Baji Rao supported Alivardi Khan of Bengal against Raghuji Bhonsle. Alivardi Khan agreed to pay Rs. 22 lakhs as the Chauth of Bengal to the Peshwa.
- The Maratha control over Malwa was completed during his reign. In July 1741 Peshwa was appointed deputy of Shahzada Ahmad, the Subedar of Malwa as the instance of Raja Jai singh from the Mughal emperor.
- A Maratha force defeated the Bundela Chief of Orcha and captured Jhansi in 1742. From this time onwards Jhansi became the Maratha colony in Bundelkhand.
- Dost Ali the Nawab of Carnatic harassed the Maratha ruler of Tanjore. Raghuji Bhonsle of Berar sent an expedition and Dost Ali was killed in the battle. Raghuji also successfully conducted the seize of Trichnopoly and arrested Chanda Sahib, the son-in-law of Dost Ali in December 1741. Chanda Sahib was sent as a prisoner to Satara.
- Raghuji Bhonsle demanded Chauth of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa from Alivardi Khan. He sent his revenue minister Bhaskar Pant to Alivardi Khan to enforce this demand. Alivardi treacherously murdered Bhaskar Pant. The enraged Raghuji conducted annual campaigns against Alivardi Khan. In 1751 the invasions of Raghuji forced Alivardi Khan to surrender Orissa to him and to pay Rs. 12 lakhs annually as the Chauth of Bengal & Bihar.
- After the death of Chhatrapati Sahu Baji Rao made Ramraja to sign Sangola Agreement in 1750. By this agreement the Maratha king surrendered all his powers to Peshwa and the king became only a figurehead.
- After the death of Nizam-ul-Mulk in 1748 the Peshwa tried to liberate Khandesh and Berar from Muslim control. The Nizam Salabat Jung countered Marathas with the help of his infantry trained by French General Bussy. Though Peshwa failed to achieve any significant success but tired of fruitless war the Nizam surrendered western half of Berar including Baglana and Khandesh to Marathas by the **treaty of Jhalki** in 1752.
- In December 1757 **the battle of Sindkhed** was fought between the Marathas

and the Nizam.

- **The battle of Udgir** was fought between the Marathas and the Nizam in January 1760. The Marathas acquired territory worth 60 lakhs of rupees along with Ahmadnagar, Daulatabad, Burhanpur and Bijapur.
- In April 1752 Safdarjung concluded an agreement with the Maratha. The Marathas were to protect Mughal Empire from internal and external dangers. In return of this Safdarjung agreed to surrender Agra and Ajmer along with the payment of Rs. 50 lakhs to them. He also recognised the Maratha's right to collect Chauth from Punjab, Sind and Doab. Though this agreement was not ratified by the Emperor but this whetted Maratha ambition at Delhi.
- When Ahmad Shah Abdali invaded India for the third time in 1752 Mughal Emperor Ahmad Shah surrendered Punjab and Sind to him. On the other hand the Marathas were trying to expend their influence in Punjab.
- In 1745 the Maratha forces under Raghunath Rao reached Delhi. The Mughal Wazir Imad-ul-Milk removed Ahmad Shah from the throne and placed Alamgir-II on the throne with the help of Marathas.
- In January 1757 Abdali invaded India again. A Maratha army under Raghunath Rao was sent from Poona but Abdali had left before the Marathas reached Delhi. Raghunath Rao reinstated the Emperor on the throne and established Maratha supremacy from Satluj in the west to the Banaras in the east. The Rohilla Chief Nazib-ud-daula, who was made Mir Bakshi by Ahmad Shah Abdali, was removed and Ahmad Shah Bangesh was appointed as Mir Bakshi.
- By April 1758 Lahore was occupied and Ahmad Shah's agents were expelled from Punjab by the Marathas. The Marathas established control over Punjab and hoisted flag of Marathas at the fort of Attock. Marathas expelled Abdali's viceroy Timur Shah from Lahore. Marathas appointed **Adina Beg** as the Governor of Punjab. After Adina's death **Sabaji Sindhia** was appointed as the Governor of Punjab.
- This was taken as challenge by Abdali. Abdali wanted to avenge the expulsion by Marathas of his viceroy Timur Shah from Lahore. He crossed Indus in 1759 and headed towards Delhi. This culminated into the third battle of Panipat.

Third Battle of Panipat

- (a) Battle was fought on 14 January 1761.
- (b) The establishment of Maratha control over Punjab was opposed by Abdali because Punjab was surrendered to him by Mughal emperor.
- (c) Pindaris supported Marathas in the Battle of Panipat.
- (d) Sadashiva Rao Bhau was the real commander of Maratha forces and

Peshwa's 12 year old son Vishwas Rao was the commander of Maratha forces on paper.

(e) Sadashiva Rao Bhau encouraged the practice of ladies accompanying their husbands to the battlefield. This move proved suicidal because it adversely affected the mobility of Maratha army.

(f) The Rohilla chief Nazib-ud-daula and Shuja-ud-daula the Nawab of Awadh supported Abdali.

(g) The Rajput, Sikhs and the Jats did not support the Marathas in the battle because they were alienated by the highhandedness of Marathas.

(h) The failure of Marathas to get the support of indigenous elements proved to be the major cause of their failure.

(i) The Mughal Wazir Imad-ul-Mulk supported the Marathas in the battle.

(j) The Marathas were badly defeated in the battle. Sadashiva Bhau, Vishwas Rao, Jaswant Rao and Tukoji Sindhia were killed.

(k) Malhar Rao Holkar fled from the battle field.

(l) Ibrahim Gardi was in charge of Maratha artillery. He was captured by Abdali.

(m) **Kashi Raj Pandit** was an eyewitness of this battle. He sent the message of Maratha defeat to Peshwa in the following words - Two pearls were lost, twenty seven gold Muhars were lost and the loss of silver and gold is difficult to account.

(n) According to Sir Jadunath Sarkar there was any hardly person in Maratha state who did not lose one of his relative. Some families were completely destroyed.

- Balaji Baji Rao died of shock when he came to know about the disaster of Panipat.

MADHAV RAO (1761-1772)

- Madhav Rao was the son of Balaji Baji Rao. After the death of his father he became Peshwa. He was of 17 years of age at the time of becoming of Peshwa.

- Raghunath Rao (Raghoba/Dada Saheb), the uncle of Madhav Rao, was appointed as the regent. Raghunath

Rao himself wanted to become Peshwa and because of this a civil war took place between Madhav Rao &

Raghunath Rao. Raghunath Rao was imprisoned by Madhav Rao and he assumed all the powers of state himself.

- In 1763 Madhav Rao defeated Nizam of Hyderabad and the **treaty of**

Rakshasa-Bhuvan was signed between them. This treaty stabilised the relations between the Marathas and the Nizam.

- Madhava Rao defeated Haider Ali in 1771 and forced him to pay Nazrana to the Marathas.
- He also defeated the Rohillas, the Rajputs and the Jats and re-established Maratha control over north India.
- In January 1772 AD Mahadaji Sindhia escorted Mughal Emperor Shah Alam-II to Delhi and reinstated him on the throne. Till 1785, Sindhia dominated the Mughal court.
- In 1784 Mahadaji Sindhia secured the appointment of Peshwa as the **Naib-Munaib** from the Emperor on the condition that he himself would act on behalf of Peshwa. Sindhia represented Peshwa as his deputy (Vakili-Mutlaq) in Mughal court.
- Madhav Rao died in November 1772 due to Tuberculosis.

NARAYAN RAO (1772-73)

- Narayan Rao was the youngest brother of Madhav Rao. He succeeded Madhav Rao as Peshwa of Maratha state. He was a minor and Raghunath Rao, who was released from prison in 1772, was made his regent.
- Anandi Rao, the wife of Raghunath Rao was a domineering lady. Narayan Rao was killed at her instance. Ram Shastri enquired into the matter and Raghunath Rao was accused by him.

RAGHUNATH RAO (1773)

- After the murder of Narayan Rao Raghunath Rao became Peshwas himself. But he could hold this post only for few months.

MADHAV RAO NARAYAN (1773-1795)

- He was also known as Swai Madhav Rao-II. He was a posthumous son of Narayan Rao. He was an infant. He was recognised as a Peshwas by Nana Phandnavis and Raghunath Rao had to run away.
- Nana Phandnavis (original name Balaji Janardana) setup a council of 12 members known as Bara Bhai to look after affairs of state.
- Raghunath Rao tried to seek the support of English Trading Company to get the Peshwaship back. This culminated into first Anglo-Maratha war (1775-82).
- Mahadaji Sindhia organised a powerful army with the help of a French military expert **Benoit de Boigne** and later on with the help of another Frenchman

Monsieur Perron.

- Nana Phandnavis tried to recover the lost Maratha territories in south of Narmada. This resulted in MarathaMysore conflict.
- The Marathas also fought a war with Nizam of Hyderabad. The Nizam's army was trained by the Frenchman **Raymond** but still Nizam was defeated by the Marathas in the **battle of Kharda** in 1795.
- Madhav Rao Narayan died in 1795. It is believed that he committed suicide because he was frustrated due to excessive control of Nana Phandnavis.

BAJI RAO II (1713-1720)

- After the death of Madhav Rao Narayan Baji Rao-II became Maratha Peshwa. He was son of Raghunath Rao.
- In 1800 AD Nana Phandnavis died and with him departed all the wisdom and political shrewdness from Maratha land. His death was preceded by the death of other Maratha leaders like Ahilya Bai (1796) and Mahadaji Sindhia (1794).
- A fierce struggle for supremacy began between Daulat Rao Sindhia and Jaswant Rao Holkar. When Sindhia was fighting against Holkar Peshwa murdered the brother of Holkar. On this Jaswant Rao Holkar invaded Peshwa and defeated the Peshwa and Sindhia. He placed Raghunath Rao's adopted son Vinayak Rao on the Peshwa's Masnad.
- Baji Rao-II fled to Bassein and sought the protection of English. He signed the treaty of Bassein on 31 December 1802 and accepted Subsidiary Alliance. After this a British force took him to Poona and restored him to his former position.
- The Maratha leaders found British control as insulting. The Peshwa also realised the folly of his action so they decided to sink their differences to throw the British yoke. This resulted in second Anglo-Maratha war (1802-05). Holkar did not extend his support to the Peshwa and Sindhia in the war against English. Gaikwar choose to remain neutral. Bhonsle was defeated at **Assaye** and Sindhia was defeated at **Laswari**. When Holkar declared war against the British, he too was defeated at **Mukundra Pass**.
- Baji Rao-II was dethroned and pensioned off at Bithur (near Kanpur) after the third Anglo-Maratha war (1817).

THE ASHTAPRADHAN

Peshwa/Mukhya Pradhan Prime Minister, General administration both civil and military Sar-I-Naubat Chief of armed forces

Majumdar/Amatya Finance, Revenue, Accounts

Sachiva/ Surunavis / Chitnis Royal Correspondence

Dabir/Sumant
Mantri/Waqia-Nawis
Nyayadhish

Pandit Rao
Foreign Affairs/Royal ceremonies
Incharge of records, intelligence and looked after Kings private affairs. Justice
Religious affairs and Charities

MARATHA FAMILIES AND THEIR HEADQUARTERS

1. Peshwa Poona
2. Sindhia Gwalior (Initially Ujjain)
3. Gaekwad Baroda
4. Bhonsle Nagpur
5. Holkar Indore
6. Pawar Dhar

PART – III MEDIEVAL INDIA

TOPIC

1

THE DELHI SULTANATE

QUTUBUDDIN AIBEK (1206 AD - 1210 AD)

- Was a Turk of **Aibak tribe** which in Turkish language means “**Lord of the Moon**”.
- In his early life he was taken prisoner and sold as slave to a kind – hearted qazi of Nishapur (Persia).
- His master provided him education in Islamic theology and arts of warfare along with his sons.
- After the death of the qazi, his sons sold him off to Muhammad Ghori.
- He was one of the trusted slave officers of Muhammad Ghauri.
- He was appointed the in charge of Indian possessions by Muhammad Ghauri after victory in second battle of Tarain in 1192 AD.
- After the death of Muhammad Ghauri his empire was divided into two parts i.e. Ghazni and empire of India.
- Ghazni was captured by Tajuddin Yalduz and Aibek established his independent state in India.
- He was the founder of Slave dynasty. This dynasty was also known as Mamluk dynasty. Mamluk was Quranic term for slave.
- Qutubuddin assumed reigns of government as independent ruler at **Lahore** on June 24, 1206.
- Defeated Yalduz and occupied Ghazni for a brief period in 1208.
- Started his reign with the modest title of ‘**Malik**’ and ‘**Sipahasalar**’.
- He did not strike coins nor got the Khutba read in his name.
- He did not assume the title of sultan.
- In 1208 – 09 Ghiasuddin Mahmud, the nephew and legal successor of Muhammad Ghori, who was content with his rule over the ancestral principality of Ghori; sent deeds of manumission and investiture to Qutubuddin and conferred upon him the title of sultan.
- Aibek as a ruler granted partial civil liberties to the Hindus in return for the payment of Jaziya and was known as the **just monarch** among his coreligionists.
- He extended patronage to the learned and scholars. Hassan Nizami and Fakhre Mudir dedicated their books to him.

- He founded Delhi Sultanate and became the first independent Muslim ruler of India.
- Known as Lakh-Bakhsh (giver of lakhs) because of his generosity.
- Qutubuddin made Lahore his capital. Indraprastha was his main military centre.
- He took recourse to matrimonial alliances to strengthen his position. Qutubuddin married himself with the daughter of Tajuddin Yalduj, married his sister with Nasiruddin Kubacha and married his daughter with Iltutmish.
- He laid the foundation of the first of the so-called seven cities of medieval Delhi by constructing buildings in the vicinity of the old Rajput fort called Qila-i Rai Pithaura.
- He started the construction of the Qutub Minar, the tallest stone tower in India (238 feet in height), in 1199 A.D. after the name of Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki, a famous Sufi saint of his times.
- Qutub Minar was completed by Iltutmish.
- Laid the foundation of the first of the so called 'seven cities' of Medieval Delhi by constructing buildings in the vicinity of the old Rajput fort called Qila-i Rai Pithora.
- Died while playing Chaugan (Polo) from a fall from horse at Lahore.
- Buried at Lahore.
- Qutubuddin Aibek was succeeded by his inexperienced and incapable son Aram Shah who ruled at Lahore for about eight months before being defeated and deposed by Iltutmish.

SHAMSUDDIN ILTUTMISH (1211 AD - 1236 AD)

EARLY LIFE

- His father was an influential noble of the Ilbari tribe of the Turks.
- He was handsome and intelligent. Iltutmish excited the jealousy of his half – brothers who deceitfully

handed him over to a slave – trader.

- After passing through many hands, he was, ultimately, purchased by Qutubuddin Aibek in Delhi at an exorbitant price of one lakh jitals.
- Iltutmish was manumitted by Aibek at the instance of Muhammad Ghori for the performance of Iltutmish in the campaign against the Khokhars in 1205 – 06.

- He was governor of the Iqtas of Gwalior and Baran (BulandShahr) in succession before becoming Sultan .
- Iltutmish fought battle with the Aram Shah for the thrown of Indian empire and captured the thrown after defeating Aram Shah.
- Iltutmish made Delhi his seat of governance in preference to Lahore.
- The seat of governance of the sultans was called Dar – ul- Khalifa, which literally means house of the Khalifa.
- The disaffected and insubordinate Ghurid (Muizzi) officers were gradually downgraded or eliminated by Iltutmish.
- Iltutmish created an entirely new class of the ruling elite which comprised his own Turkish slave officers, headed by their forty powerful military leaders - nicknamed the **Chalisa (Chihalgani or Chehalgan)**, the Forty. They held charge of the iqtas or regions into which the kingdom was divided, and wielded great influence at the court.
- Iltutmish secured a letter of investiture from the Abbasid Caliph Al – MustansirBillah of Baghdad in February 1229.
- Iltutmish was bestowed the titles of the Sultan of Hindustan and the deputy of the leader of the faithful (Nasir Amir ul Momin).
- He introduced a purely Arabic currency of gold and silver. His standard silver tanka weighed 175 grains.
- He persecuted the Ismaili Shias of Delhi and his treatment towards the Hindus was harsh but not cruel. He had desecrated the magnificent Hindu temples at Bhilsa and Ujjain but he did not resort to idol – breaking just to satisfy the whims of his fanatic co – religionists.
- He encouraged the Muslims to make settlements in the Hindu habitats, particularly, in the mountainous and forest regions so as to exert pressure over the Hindus and discourage them from harbouring rebellious feelings towards the sultanate.
- Started the system of division of empire into ‘iqta’, an assignment of land in

lieu of salary and distributed them among the Turkish officers.

- Coming of Mongols under the leadership of Chengez Khan to the frontiers of India (1220 AD).
- Invaded Ujjain and destroyed the temple of 'Mahakal'
- Founded Nasiriya College of Delhi in the memory of his son Nasiruddin Mahmud. Qazi Minhaz ud Din Siraj was appointed its principal later by Razia Sultan.

ILTUTMISH AND THE MONGOLS

- The Mongols were original inhabitant of Mongolia. They had not yet entered the fold of Islam. They were shamanists by faith, which was a varied form of Buddhism.
- The Mongols also threatened India during his rule. Iltutmish saved India from Mongol devastation through diplomacy.
- Alauddin Muhammad, the Khwarizm shah, one of the greatest Muslim monarchs of his age, had to eat a humble pie at their hands. he fled towards the Caspian while his eldest son, Jalauddin Mankbarni escaped towards Afghanistan. Jalauddin Mankbarni was followed close upon his heels by Chengez Khan. Mankbarni entered the Indus valley and demanded help from Iltutmish against the Mongols.
- Iltutmish put the envoy of Mankbarni to death and refused to oblige the Khwarizm prince by sending a diplomatic reply that the climate of India would not suit him. Thus through a diplomatic stroke, he saved himself from the wrath of Chengez Khan.

RIVALS OF ILTUTMISH

- The accession of Iltutmish was challenged by other rival contenders to throne.
- **Tajuddin Yalduj**, the Sultan of Ghazni tried to assert his dominance over Iltutmish. Tajuddin Yalduj was defeated by Alauddin Muhammad, the Khwarizm shah. Yalduj escaped towards Punjab and Iltutmish gave a crushing defeat to Yalduj at Tarain. Yalduj was taken prisoner and put to death after a brief confinement at Badaun.

This battle is known as **3rd battle of Tarain**.

- **Nasiruddin Qubacha**, the governor of Uchh (Sind) and Multan occupied

Lahore and declared his independence. After the death of Chengiz Khan in 1227 Iltutmish launched an offensive against

Nasiruddin Qubacha from two sides i.e. Lahore and Delhi. Multan and Uchh were captured and Qubacha was besieged in the fort of Bhakkar on the bank of the Indus. Surrounded from all sides by the enemy and totally exhausted, Qubacha made his last bid to escape by plunging into the river, and was drowned.

- At the time of Iltutmish's succession to the throne, Ali Mardan had set up an independent state of Bengal with his capital at Lakhnauti. Rebels were crushed and the province of Bengal and Bihar was divided into two parts. Iltutmish appointed two separate governors, one for Bengal and other for Bihar. **WARS OF ILTUTMISH**

- He launched a full-fledged campaign against the Rajputs in 1226.
- Ranthambhor was recovered from the Chauhans first; Mandisor, the headquarters of the Parmars, was acquired next. The Chauhan ruler of Jalor was compelled to acknowledge Turkish suzerainty. Thereafter, the territories of Bayana, Ajmer and Sambhar were reconquered after many a bloody engagement with the Rajputs.

- A big slice of Jodhpur state, including the town of Nagaur, was annexed by 1230.

- The Pratihara ruler of Gwalior was subjugated in 1230–31 after a year-long siege of the fort.

- Iltutmish led an attack on Nagada, the capital of Guhilots but suffered a defeat at the hands of Rana Kshetra Singh.

- Iltutmish's army was also repulsed with heavy losses by the Chalukyas of Gujarat.

- He carried out an expedition into Malwa in 1234–35 and plundered the towns of Bhilsa and Ujjain.

- The campaign in the Gangetic valley was launched under the charge of Nasiruddin Mahmud, the eldest son of Iltutmish. The territories of Badaun, Kanauj and Benaras were conquered

from the Hindu chieftains.

- Katehar (Rohilkhand), with its capital Ahichhatra, was also conquered after a long struggle; **more than a lakh**

of the Turkish soldiers are said to have lost their lives in this campaign.

- In 1235, Iltutmish made an attempt to bring the Khokhars under his subjugation.

- Iltutmish fell sick, returned to Delhi and breathed his last in April 1236.

- He was buried in the magnificent tomb which he had got constructed for himself in Delhi.

RUKN-UD-DIN FIROZ SHAH (1236 AD)

- Iltutmish had many sons but all of them were incompetent. He appointed his daughter Razia as his successor.

- But after the death of Iltutmish the nobles brushed aside the claims of Razia and raised Firoz to the throne.

- Taking advantage of her son's incompetence, the unscrupulous Queen mother Shah Turkan, began to meddle with the state affairs.

- Shah Turkan was originally a maidservant of Iltutmish, who was subsequently made a queen.

- She also annoyed other members of the royal household by her oppressive treatment. She used her power and influences to punish all those who had insulted her in her youth. Some of the nobles were degraded and some other were put to death.

- Nizam ul Mulk Muhammad Junaidi was the Wazir of Firoz.

- Firoz ruled for 6 month and 7 days only.

RAZIA BEGUM (1236 AD - 40 AD)

- When Razia rose to throne, the prestige of Sultanate had sunk very low. The capital was under attack from the four governors of Lahore, Multan, Hansi and Badaun. They were the ringleaders of the Shamsi nobles.

- Khutba was read and coins were struck in Razia's name as Sultan Raziat al – Duniawiya'l Din bint al – Sultan. She proved to be the first and the last female sultan of Delhi.

- She became the sultan in name as well as in fact. Khwaja Muhazzabuddin, was the Wazir of Razia.

- Razia Discarded the Purdah, adorned the male attire and held the open court.

She supervised the various departments of administration and issued orders to the governors to restore law and order in their iqtas. She listened to public grievances and administered even – handed justice.

- The fort of Ranthambhor had been recovered by the Chauhans after the death of Iltutmish. Razia sent the newly – appointed Naib i Lashkar Malik Qutubuddin Hasan Ghorī for its reconquest. The fort was recaptured and razed to the ground lest the Rajputs might recover and garrison it once again.
- The proud Turkish nobles thought it beneath their dignity to be governed by a woman, especially the one who did not allow them to have a say in the state affairs.
- Rumours were set afloat about her character. One such rumour was about her romance with the erstwhile Abyssinian slave, Jalaluddin Yakut whom she had promoted to the post of Amir i Akhur (master of the royal stables).
- Ikhtiyaruddin Aitigin, the lord chamberlain (Amir i Hajib) was the ring – leader of the rebellious act against Razia.
- Kabir Khan Ayaz, the governor of Lahore and Multan and Altunia, the governor of Bhatinda also revolted. Razia moved against them but was defeated and imprisoned by Altunia.
- The conspirators at Delhi led by the traitor Aitigin raised Razia's brother Behram, the third son of Iltutmish, to the throne.
- Razia befriended and married Altunia to recover her position. Both of them made the last bid to recover Delhi from the hands of the rebels. They were deserted by most of their followers. They gave a heroic fight to the enemy near **Kaithal** but were defeated and taken prisoners on October 13, 1240. Both of them were beheaded the next day.

BEHRAM SHAH (1240 AD - 42 AD)

- Sat on the throne of Delhi for about two years was a mere puppet in the hands of the Shamsi nobles:
- Ikhtiyaruddin Aitigin carried on administration on behalf of the sultan in his capacity as Naib i Mamlikat (the viceroy).
- During the reign of Behram Shah, the Mongols invaded India under their leader Tair in 1241.

ALAUDDIN MASUD SHAH (1242 AD - 46 AD)

- Izzuddin Kishlu Khan, one of the Shamsi nobles, declared himself the sultan on

the deposition of Behram shah but his colleagues did not approve of his action.

- They, instead, placed Alauddin Masudshah, a grandson of Iltutmish (son of Ruknuddin Firoz) on the throne.
- He held the crown as a nominal sultan for about four years; all the powers of the state were wielded by the nobility headed by the Malik Naib Qutubuddin Hasan Ghorî.
- Muhazzabuddin continued to be the Wazir as before but fell out with the other nobles and was dismissed after some time.
- Balban, one of the Forty, rose into prominence into the state politics during this period as Amir i Hajib. He married one of his daughters to the young sultan.
- In June 1246, Masudshah was deposed and supplanted by Nasiruddin Mahmud through the connivance of the Forty.

NASIRUDDIN MAHMUD (1246 AD - 66 AD)

- Was the posthumous child of Shahzada Nasiruddin (son of Iltutmish).
- He did not take much interest in the state affairs.
- He kept himself aloof from all administrative problems and did not take any step without the prior consent of the ruling junta.
- Minhaj, the author Tabaqat i Nasiri, was the chief qazi of Delhi under Nasiruddin.
- Isami tells us that the sultan expressed no opinion without their (Shamsi nobles) permission; he did not move his hands or feet except at their order. He would neither drink water nor go to sleep except with their knowledge. He states clearly that Ulugh Khan (Balban) served the king and controlled all his affairs. The king lived in the palace and Ulugh Khan governed the empire.
- He was a good calligraphist and as a past – time, he used to write copies of the Quran which gave currency to the popular belief that he made his living by selling his scripts alone.

GHIASUDDIN BALBAN (1266 AD - 86 AD)

EARLY LIFE OF BALBAN

- His original name was Bahauddin.
- In his youth, he fell into the hands of the Mongols, along with some other members of his family.
- In 1232, Balban was purchased by Iltutmish who made him his personal attendant (Khassa- Dar).
- He was Amir i Shikar (Lord of the stables) under Behram and Amir i Hajib

(Lord chamberlain) under Masud .

- The territories of Hansi and Rewari were held by him as personal estate.
- He played a prominent role in the installation of Nasiruddin Mahmud to the throne. **BALBAN AS NASIRUDDIN'S MINISTER**

- Balban was the ex-governor of Badaun and was given the title of Amir I Hajib.
- He was appointed Wazir with the title of Ulugh Khan by Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud.
- He further cemented his personal attachment to Nasiruddin by offering the hand of his daughter in marriage

to him in 1249 AD. In return, he received the formal title of Naib i Mamlakat or the viceroy, though he had been the de facto ruler of the state from the very first day of his appointment as Wazir.

- In 1247–48, Balban carried out a punitive expedition against the refractory zamindars of the Doab.
- In 1253, a conspiracy was hatched against Balban by some disaffected nobles who felt jealous of his rising power. Imaduddin Raihan, an Indian Muslim and Kishlu Khan were the ring-leaders. They were close to the Sultan Nasiruddin. They poisoned the ears of the sultan against Balban and also made an unsuccessful bid to murder the Malik Naib. When Balban came to know of it he volunteered to resign the post. He was sent to Hansi as its governor and Raihan became the Naib I Mamlakat.
- Imaduddin Raihan however, failed to run the government effectively and incurred the displeasure of the Sultan. The Shamsi nobles made a common cause with Balban and staged a come back by the show of force. Balban was reinstated Malik Naib with absolute powers of government in his hands.
- Balban adopted a three fold policy to consolidate his position and protect the sultanate from disintegration (a) suppression of the rebellious Turkish nobles, (b) vigilance against the rising power of the Hindu chiefs, and (c) stemming the tide of Mongol menace.
- In 1255, Jalaluddin, the half- brother of Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud, was appointed in charge of frontier areas.
- Towards the close of 1257, the Mongols advanced into the territories of Uchh and Multan. Balban established diplomatic contacts with Mongol king Halaku Khan. The Mongol emissaries visited Delhi in 1258 – 59 and were impressed by the power of Delhi sultanate.
- The contention of Isami that Nasiruddin was poisoned to death by Balban.

BALBAN AS SULTAN

- Was the consolidator of the Sultanate of Delhi.
- He received the title of Ulugh Khan (the Great Khan) after successfully repelling a Mongol invasion in 1246.
- Ist Sultan to put forward his views about kingship according to which the king was the shadow of God, his representative and king rules by divine sanction.
- The army establishment was separated from the rest of the civil department; it was taken out the control of the Wazir as well as the finance minister.
- Created a separate military department (Diwan-i-Ariz).
- Imadul Mulk a competent military general and a personal friend of the Sultan was appointed Diwan i Ariz.
- He was made responsible, for recruitment, training and equipment, of the soldiers and acted as paymaster general of the army.
- The Diwan i Ariz also looked after the forts and other defences of the state and deployed the royal forces at strategic places but Diwan i Ariz did not enjoy the actual command of the army. The supreme command of the royal forces remained in the hands of the sultan.
- Effected a radical change in his dress, social behaviour and manners. Gave up drinking, cut off the jovial company and banned public drinking.
- Destroyed the 'group of forty'. (Turkan-i-Chahalgani).
- He belonged to the Ilbari tribe, claimed to be a descendant of Afrasiyab.
- Played a prominent role in the installation of Nasiruddin Mahmud to the throne.
- Adopted the policy of Blood and iron in governance.
- Took firm action against the highway robbery of the Mewatis.
- After getting rid of Mewati menace, turned his attention towards the refractory Hindu Zamindars of the Doab and Oudh.
- Balban ordered the resumption of such fiefs whose original grandees had died or their successors did not render military service.
- This caused a hue and cry among the nobility they approached Fakhruddin, the aged Kotwal of Delhi and a friend of the sultan to plead with the latter on their behalf.
- Balban introduced the practices of Sijda or prostration and Paibos or kissing of the feet of the Sultan in his court.
- Balban ordered frequent transfers of the provincial governors so that they might not develop vested interests at any particular place.
- Sher Khan Sunqur, a capable military general, stood as a bulwark against the

Mongol marauders on the north- western frontier.

- Balban set up a network of news writers and spies (Barids) throughout his dominion. They despatched prompt reports to the Sultan about all the important developments in their areas of posting.
- The spies and news writers were severely punished if they failed to submit correct and prompt reports to the sultan about the wrongful activities of the nobility.
- In 1285 the Mongol leader Timur Khan of Afghanistan launched a major attack on the Punjab. Prince Muhammad gave him a bold fight but lost his life in the combat.
- Amir Khusrau (1253–1325) the parrot of India (Tuti e Hind) adorned his court.
- Balban died a broken hearted man in the middle of 1286.

KAIKUBAD (1287 AD - 90 AD)

- The Turkish nobles led by Fakhruddin, the aged Kotwal of Delhi placed Kaikubad, the seventeen year old son of Bughra Khan, on the throne.
- Kaikubad indulged in sensual pleasures and the power of the state was usurped by Nizamuddin, a son in law of Fakhruddin.
- In 1290, Jalaluddin Khalji, the governor of Samana and leader of one of the factions, occupied Delhi by a military coup.
- Kaikubad was Killed to death by a Khalji soldier and thrown into the Jumuna while his infant son Kayumars died in confinement in March 1290.

KAYUMARS (1290 AD)

- Ruled for three month from March 1290 to June 1290 AD.

JALALUDDIN KHALJI (1290 AD - 96 AD)

- The Khaljis were one of the sixty four clans of the Turks.
- They migrated to modern Afghanistan in the fourth century of the Christian era where they gradually adopted Afghan socio cultural traits and were usually mistaken for them.
- He had fought many a successful wars against the Mongols and earned reputation as seasoned soldier and capable administrator.
- During the short reign of Kaikubad (1287–90) He was appointed Sar i Jandar i.e. the chief of the royal bodyguards by the young sultan.
- After the death of Malik Nizamuddin, Jalaluddin was made governor of Baran and Ariz i Mamalik (the chief of the army staff) and conferred the title of Shaista

Khan on him.

- Jalaluddin declared himself the regent of Sultan Kayumars reluctantly, struck coins in the name of Kayumars and carried on the administration on his behalf for about three months when his youthful Khalji nobles persuaded him to declare himself the Sultan in June 1290.
- He led an expedition against Ranthambhor in 1290. The fort though conquered by Qutubuddin Aibek had been lost to the Chauhan Rajputs after the death of Iltutmish. The Rajputs offered a tough resistance and compelled Jalaluddin to raise the siege. The Sultan returned to Delhi with the plea that the fort could not be conquered without sacrificing the lives of many Muslims and that he did not value the fort so much as the hair of one Muslim. The only gain of the expedition was the annexation of a small district of Jhain.
- In 1292, Jalaluddin Khalji led yet another expedition against the Rajputs. The fort of Mandor, situated about four miles to the north of Jodhpur was recovered from Samant Singh Chauhan.

ALAUDDIN KHILJI (1296 AD - 1316 AD)

EARLY LIFE

- The Original name of Alauddin Khalji was Ali Gurshap.
- Was appointed the governor of Kara in 1291 AD.
- His Successful expedition to Bhilsa (1292) earned him the exalted office of Ariz i Mamalik (the Minister of

war) and the additional charge of the iqta of Oudh.

- Alauddin's Younger brother **Almas beg** safeguarded his interests at the royal court in Delhi.
- Organised military expedition against Devagiri in 1296 AD. The ruler of Devagiri was compelled to part with

great war indemnity and to pay the revenues of Ellichpur as tribute to Alauddin.

- The nobility was known as Aihal i Shamshir.
- Ulema were known as Aihal i Qalam.

ALAUDDIN AS A RULER

- Alauddin took his seat upon Balban's throne in the Daulat- Khana- i- Julus.
- Over elated with his initial victories, Alauddin caused himself to be styled the Second Alexander' (Sikander

i Sani) in the Khutba and on his coins.

- Alauddin ordered that the wives and children of all the mutineers high and low, should be best into prison.
- This was the beginning of the practice of seizing women and children for the faults of men. Upto this time

no hand had ever been laid upon wives and children on account of men's misdeeds.

- In consultation with his confidential advisers, he came to the conclusion that there were four causes of revolts. These were—the sultan's indifference towards the state affairs, particularly the espionage, social intercourse of nobles and intermarriages among them, the use of wine, and the abundance of wealth.
- He received regular reports about the working of the government and general condition of the people from three sources—the officers in charge, the news reporters (Barids) and the spies (Munhis). The Barids were known to the public while the Munhis were undetectable. The latter communicated directly with the sultan and were a real terror to all the high and low.
- The only man who could presume to advise the king was his old friend, Ala-ul-Mulk, the Kotwal of Delhi.
- The first rebellion during his reign was that of the Mongols who had settled in India since the time of Jalalud-din Firoz and were known as the New Musalmans.
- During his time the army was directly recruited by the army minister (Ariz-i-Mamalik). It was paid in cash from the royal treasury. The pay of a trooper was 234 tankas a year. While one with an additional horse was paid 78 tankas more. The soldiers were supplied with horses, arms and other equipment at the expense of the State in order to do away with corruption and to prevent proxy at a military review or in the field of battle. Ala-ud-din instituted the practice of recording the descriptive roll (Huliya) of individual soldiers in the army minister's register. To prevent the defrauding of the government by the

substitution of a bad

horse for a good one, the branding of horses (Dagh system) was introduced.

- Organised an elaborate system of espionage.
- Prohibited the sale and use of liquor and intoxicants in Delhi.
- Put check on social gatherings among the nobles (No such gatherings could be held without prior permission of the Sultan).
- Initiated the policy of conquest and expansion of the sultanate (**Khalji imperialism**).
- Discarded 'Ulema' in the political affairs of the sultanate.
- Like Balban, he believed in the majesty of the monarch and in his being god's representative on earth.
- Alauddin was very fond of music.
- He presented the idea of becoming Sikandar-i-Sani (second Alexander) before Alaul Mulk, the Kotwal of Delhi.
- Alauddin's four great generals were—Ulugh Khan (Earlier Almas beg, brother of Alauddin and later Malik Kafur), Nusrat Khan, Zafar Khan and Alp Khan.
- He demolished the famous temple of Somnath which was rebuilt by the Chalukyan king Kumarapala after its destruction by Mahmud of Ghazani.
- A revolt was engineered in Delhi by one Haji Maula a slave of Amir ul-Umara Fakhruddin, the late Kotwal of the capital. Ulugh Khan had to be sent to Delhi to suppress the revolt and restore law and order; deterrent punishments were given to the rebels and their families.

ALAUDDIN'S ECONOMIC MEASURES

- For regulation and control over markets he instituted new official machinery. Diwan-i-Riyasat was the head of entire market control system. All the general markets of the empire fell within the purview of the Diwan i Riyasat (the ministry of commerce) and the office of Nazir (the superintendent of weights and measures) which was a part of this ministry.
- He founded a new cloth market in Delhi known as Sarai-Adl. The grain-market was called Mandi.

- SaraiAdl was put under the charge of RaisParwana (permit officer).
- Alauddin appointed Malik Qabul, an intelligent and trust-worthy servant of Ulugh Khan, to be the controller of all the grain markets (Shahna i Mandi).
- Local corn dealers were known as baqqals.
- Introduced the system of measurement of land for the assessment of revenue. It was called **Masahat**.
- Brought the farmers, in direct relation with the state and curbed and checked middlemen (**Khots, Chaudhris, Muqaddams, Patwaris**).
- Enhanced the state share of the revenue to one-half of the produce in the Doab area.
- Created a new department of revenue (Diwan-I-Mustakharaj) to realise arrears.
- Appropriated 4/5 share of Khams (war booty) leaving only 1/5 to the army.
- Alauddin resumed several types of land grants viz. Inam, Waqf, Milk.
- Introduced house tax and pasture tax, ghari&charai respectively.

ALAUDDIN'S CAMPAIGN IN NORTH INDIA

Conquest of Gujarat

- Gujrat was conquered in 1299 AD by Turkish army under Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan.
- The king Karan was defeated. Alp Khan was appointed its governor.
- Hindu eunuch Kafur was captured who rose as Malik Kafur. Malik Kafur has been called hazardinari by the Muslim chroniclers because he was perhaps purchased by Nusrat Khan at Cambay from a Muslim merchant (Khwaja).
- Kafur rose to be a brilliant military general and the Malik Naib of Alauddin Khalji.

Conquest of Ranthambore

- Ranthambore was conquered in 1301 AD by Turkish army under Army under Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan.
- Ranthambhor was then ruled by Rama Hammir Deva a descendant of Prithvi Raj III Chauhan. Nusrat Khan lost his life while organising the siege and the Turkish army was routed by the Rajputs.
- At this Alauddin took the command in person and the siege lasted almost a year and the fort was ultimately

taken through the treachery of the Ranmal, the minister of Hammir Deva who was won over by the Sultan with the promise of gold and high office.

Conquest of Chittor

- Chittor was conquered in 1303 AD.
- Chittor was ruled by Rana Ratna Singh who had ascended throne in 1301 AD after the death of his father Samar Singh.
- He belonged to the Guhilot or Guhila clan of the Rajputs who had held their sway in Mewar since the eighth century.
- Ratan Singh's grandfather Rana Kshetra Singh (1213- 33) had repulsed an attack from Iltutmish.
- Amri Khusro was eyewitness of the siege of Chittor.
- The Rana was taken captive by Alauddin through treachery but the Rajputs, under the youthful leadership of Gora and Badal liberated the Rana. Rana Ratna Singh died. In fight thus the Rajputs were defeated by the Turks.
- Alauddin appointed his eldest son Khizr Khan in charge of Chittor and the town was renamed after the prince as Khizrabad.
- Khizr Khan abandoned the charge of Chittor in 1311.
- Chittor was entrusted to a puppet Rajput noble Maldeo, a Kinsman of Ratan Singh.
- The Rajputs of Mewar did not recognise him to be their ruler, and he was expelled by Hammir, a son of Rana Ratan Singh, in 1318.
- Mewar thus became independent of Delhi within two years of Alauddin's death.
- The Padmini episode was given by Malik Muhammad Jayasi in his epic, Padmavat, composed in 1540 A. D.

Other Conquests

- In 1305, Alauddin sent Ainul Mulk Multani, at the head of 10, 000 horses, for the conquest of Malwa. Its ruler Rai Mahlak Deva and his brother and minister Koka Pradhan failed to check the advance of the imperial army and perished in

the struggle.

- In 1308, Alauddin conquered Sevan. Its ruler Shitaldeva, a Barmar Rajput, was killed and his principality was declared annexed to the sultanate. Kamaluddin Gurg was appointed Iqtedar of Sevan.
- The last important expedition of Alauddin Khalji, in northern India was directed against Jalor in 1311 AD. Its Chauhan ruler Kanhardeva had accepted the suzerainty of Delhi in 1304 AD but Alauddin was very unhappy with his arrogant conduct. Therefore in 1311 AD, he sent an army for the conquest of Jalor under the command of Malik Shahin an illegitimate son of the Sultan from a slave girl, Gul Bahisht. Gul Bahisht died of fever during the seize. Her son also died in the fight. Jalor was conquered.

ALAUDDIN'S DECCAN CAMPAIGNS

- Besides Ram Chandra Deva, the Yadava ruler of Devagiri (mod. Maharashtra), there were three other prominent kings of the south. Pratap Rudra Deva II of the Kakatiya dynasty had his headquarters at Warangal (Telengana), Vir Ballala III of the Hoysalas at Dwarsamudra, and Kulashekhara Pandya of the far south at Madura.
- After the conquest of Ranthambhor (1301 A.D.) Ulugh Khan prepared an expedition for the conquest of Telengana and the Ma'bar but due to his untimely death the plan was given up.
- In 1303, While Alauddin himself led an attack on Chittor, he ordered an army from Kara to march upon Telengana through Bengal and Orissa. The expedition proved a failure.

Conquest of Devagiri

- Malik Kafur who had by then come to occupy the exalted office of the Malik Naib (the deputy sultan) led an attack in 1307 on Devagiri with 30,000 soldiers. He was assisted in this enterprise by Ainul Mulk (the governor of Malwa) and Alp Khan (the governor of Gujrat).
- Karan Deva was defeated and turned out of Ellichpur; his daughter Dewal Rani fell into the hands of Alp Khan's soldiers near the Ellora caves. She was taken to Delhi where she was married to Khizr Khan, the crown prince after a few years.
- Ram Chandra Deva also suffered a defeat and sued for peace. He, with his wives and children was sent to the imperial court at Delhi to offer personal submission to the Sultan. Alauddin Khalji accorded him an exceptionally generous treatment. Ram Chandra Deva received a personal estate and one lakh gold coins as a gift as well as the title of Rai Rayan (king of kings) from Alauddin.

- Rai Rayan was succeeded by his eldest son Singhanadeva (or Shankar Deva).
- He had never approved of his Father's collaboration with the imperialists.
- He stopped the payment of annual tribute to Delhi and tended to behave as an independent ruler. It necessitated yet another expedition to Devagiri by Malik Kafur in 1312.
- Singhanadeva was defeated and Killed in action and the kingdom of Devagiri was declared annexed to Delhi.
- The Sultan Was also opposed to the policy of outright annexation of the Southern territories. On his insistency, therefore, Malik Kafur had to hand over the charge of the kingdom of Devagiri to Harpaldeva, a prince of the Yadava dynasty.

Conquest of Warangal

- In November 1309, Malik Kafur, accompanied by the Ariz i Mumalik led an army for the conquest of Warangal.
- Being the deputy Sultan (Malik Naib), Kafur was provided with a red canopy. Alauddin Khalji used a black canopy and the black pavilion for holding the imperial court. The canopy was normally reserved for the princes of the royal blood.
- Rai Ladder Deo (Pratap Rudra Deva II) was the ruler of Warangal. He was compelled to sue for peace. Along with other presents Rai gave Jauhar – later called Kohi Noor to Malik Kafur.

Conquest of Dwarsamudra

- In November 1310, Malik Kafur led an army for the conquest of Hoysala of Dwarsamudra.
- The Hoysala ruler was Vir Ballala III. He was terrified into submission.

Conquest of Madurai

- It was at Dwarsamudra that Malik Kafur learnt about the outbreak of a fratricidal war between the two

Pandya princes (Vir Pandya and Sunder Pandya) in the far south in the kingdom of Madurai.

- Sunder Pandya appealed to Malik Kafur, who was then stationed at Dwarsamudra.
- Kafur was faithfully assisted by Vir Ballala III in this enterprise. Vir Pandya fled the capital on the approach

of the imperial army which overran the Pandya kingdom.

- According to Firishta Malik Kafur reached as far as Rameshwaram where he erected a mosque in honour of the victory of Islam.
- Vir Ballala III accompanied Malik Kafur to Delhi and received a very generous treatment from Alauddin Khalji.

ALAUDDIN KHALJI AND THE MONGOLS

- Put strong resistance to Mongols, the leading role played by his general Zafar Khan.
- Halaku Khan, a grandson of Chagiz Khan had founded the ruling houses of the Il khan Mongols in Persia. Their lieutenants invaded India off and on upto the period of Sultan Jalaluddin Khalji.
- The first Mongol invasion took place immediately after Alauddin's accession to the throne under the leadership of Kadar Khan in 1296- 97. Zafar Khan and Ulugh Khan stopped their onward march in the Jalandhar Doab and inflicted a crushing defeat on them.
- The second Mongol invasion took place in 1298 under the leadership of Saldi. The Mongols captured Siwistan. Zafar Khan led a sudden assault on the fort and snatched it from the Mongols.
- Barani writes the victory inspired awe of Zafar Khan in every heart and the Sultan also looked askance at him in consequence of his fearlessness, general ship and intrepidity, which showed that a Rustum had been born in India.
- Zafar Khan was given charge of Samana, an important Military post in Punjab, to defend the capital against the Mongol onslaught.
- The Mongols appeared on the north-western frontier for the **third time** before the close of the year 1299. They numbered about two lakhs (twenty tumans) and were led by Qutulugh Khwaja, the Youthful son of Deva Khan. They crossed the Indus and made straight for Delhi without molesting the people or engaging the Indian contingents stationed in Punjab. Obviously their object was to conquer Delhi and liquidate the

sultanate altogether. Hard-pressed Alauddin Khalji sent express instructions to all the provincial governors to rush to the capital with their armies for its defence. Some counsellors of the sultan advised him to fight a defensive war from within the fort of Delhi but Alauddin Khalji preferred to challenge the foe in the open.

Zafar Khan broke through the enemy's lines and gave a hot chase to the fleeing Mongols for eighteen Kos without any supporting force in his own rear. Targhi a Mongol leader, who had placed his tuman in ambush, cut off Zafar Khan's party from its base camp. Zafar Khan fell fighting bravely. Ulugh Khan knew that his colleague Zafar Khan was in trouble but he did not send the reinforcement to save his life.

- Zafar Khan's heroic deeds were long remembered among the Mongols; and if their cattle refused to drink they used to ask if they saw Zafar Khan.

- Alauddin was at Chittor in February 1303 when the intelligence about the reappearance of Mongols on the Indian borders fourth time reached him. They were led by a seasoned general Targhi Beg. The Mongols laid siege to the capital of Delhi lasting forty days. The Mongol suddenly left Delhi.

- Two years later (1305 AD) Ali Beg a descendant of Chaghe Khan accompanied by Khwaja Tartaq (or Tash) and Targhi Beg led 50,000 Mongols into India with the sole object of loot and plunder, destruction and devastation.

- Iqbalmandi and Kubak invaded India towards the close of the year 1306, at the head of about 50,000 Mongols.

This was the **sixth and the last invasion of the series** that took place during the reign of Alauddin Khalji.

- Ghazi Malik, as the warden of the marches, not only defended effectively the north western frontier but also organised periodical raids to Kabul and Ghazni.

STATEMENTS OF ALAUDDIN KHALJI

- To prevent rebellion "I issue such orders as I conceive to be for the good of the state and benefit of the people". Dialogue with Qazi Mughisuddin of Bayana on the state polity.

- “I do not know whether this is lawful or unlawful, whatever’ I think to be good of the state, I decree”.

Dialogue with QaziMughisuddin of Bayana on the state Polity.

- “I can with the help of these four friends establish a new religion and creed and swords of my friends will make all men to adopt”. Dialogue with Alaul Mulk, the Kotwal of Delhi.

- My wish is to place Delhi in charge of a vice-regent and then I will go out myself into the world like Alexander

in pursuit of conquest and subdue the whole habitable world Dialogue with Alaul Mulk, the Kotwal of Delhi. **DEATH OF ALAUDDIN**

- Malik Kafur brushed aside the claims of about half a dozen grown-up children of Alauddin and placed

Shihabuddin Umar, a six-year old son of the deceased sultan from his Maratha wife (the daughter of Ram

Chandra Deva of Devagiri) on the throne. Kafur himself became the de facto ruler in his capacity as the

regent. Kafur married the mother of the infant sultan also.

- Kafur was murdered at the instance of Prince Mubarak Khan and other Alai nobles.

- Prince Mubarak Khan was asked to take charge of the government as regent on behalf of the child sultan

Shihabuddin Umar.

- After about two months of regency, he was installed the sultan with the title of Qutubuddin Mubarak Shah.

MUBARAK SHAH KHALJI (1316 AD - 20 AD)

- Mubarak Shah ruled for about four years (1316 – 20).
- The severe penal code of Alauddin Khalji was relaxed and the economic regulations scrapped. Jagir system was revived. The old grandees of the empire rallied round the young sultan and helped him in the restoration of law and order for a short while.
- The sultan showered special favours on one of his slave boys, Khusrau Khan, a Hindu convert, with whom he had developed compromising personal relations. He was raised to the status of the Wazir, Malik Naib as well as the commander-in-chief.

NASIRUDDIN KHUSRAU SHAH (1320 AD)

- The Malik Naib Khusrau Khan treacherously put his master to death on April 20, 1320 and brought the imperial line of Alauddin Khalji to an inglorious end. He ascended the throne with the title of Nasiruddin Khusrau Shah.
- Ghiasuddin Tughluq, the founder of the Tughluq dynasty, the governor of Dipalpur (Punjab) refused to recognise him as the sultan, and rallied all the disaffected nobles under his banner. He marched upon Delhi to avenge the wrong done to the Alai family.
- Khusrau Shah was defeated and killed on September 6, 1320; his reign lasted four months and a half.

GHIYASUDDIN TUGHLUQ SHAH (1320 AD - 25 AD)

- He was the first Sultan of Delhi to add the word Ghazi (slayer of the infidel) after his name.
- Ibn Battuta informs us that Tughluq belonged to the Qarauna tribe of the Turks who lived in the mountainous region, lying between Sind and Turkistan.
- Ghazi Tughluq started his career as an ordinary trooper during the reign of Alauddin Khalji. He was the personal staff of Ulugh Khan (the younger brother of Alauddin Khalji). He served his master well in Sind and Multan and won recognition for his martial qualities during the seizure of Ranthambhor. Because of this he was appointed master of the horse (Amir ulkhail).
- He fought twenty-nine battles with the tatars (Mongols) and defeated them. Hence He adopted the name of Malik ul Ghazi.
- Ghazi Malik made a triumphant entry into the capital on September 6, 1320 and offered the throne to the surviving male member of the Alai family, if any. As no male descendant of Alauddin Khalji had been left alive, the victorious nobles unanimously selected Ghazi Malik to be their king.
- The jagir system, as revived by Mubarak Shah, was perpetuated and even those who had suffered the confiscation of their lands during the reign of Alauddin Khalji, were given back their estates.
- A code of law for the civil government was drafted by him.
- Physical torture in case of economic offences and recovery of debts was given up.
- The sultan recovered a part of the royal treasure which had been distributed by Khusrau Khan to the leading nobles and aristocracy or plundered by the people. It led to the estrangement of his relations with Sheikh Nizamuddin Auliya, the famous saint of the time, who had also received a sum of five lakh tankas from

Khusrau Khan but refused to return it to the exchequer on the ground that he had already given it away in charity.

- Because of this he was on bad terms with the famous sufi saint Nizamuddin Aulia.
- The statement Huzur Dillidur Ast (Delhi is yet far off) was made by the saint for the Sultan when he was returning from Bengal to punish the saint.
- Amir Khusrau sang the praise of sultan Ghiasuddin Tughluq saying that he never did anything that was not replete with wisdom and sense. He was said to wear a hundred doctors hoods under his crown.
- Ghiyasudin followed the policy of encouraging agriculture and protecting the cultivators. He ordered that the Diwan-i-Wizarat should not enhance the land revenue of any iqta beyond one-tenth and one-eleventh in a year.
- To Ghiyasudin belongs the credit of improving the system of communication, particularly perfecting the postal system which had existed in India from time immemorial.
- He forbade the manufacture and sale of liquor.
- He laid the foundation of a big palace fort which became known as Tughlaqabad.
- According to Ibn Battuta his main palace was built of gilded bricks which shone so brilliantly in the sun that none could gaze steadily upon it.
- The first sultan credited with digging canals for the promotion of agriculture.
- Exempted the Khots, Muqaddams from paying tax on their own cultivation and cattle (imposed by Alauddin Khalji).
- In 1321, the crown prince Jauna Khan, now styled Ulugh Khan, led an army to subjugate Pratap Rudra Deva II of Telangana who had stopped sending tribute to Delhi after the death of Alauddin Khalji. But this expedition failed.
- The second expedition to Telangana was led by Jauna Khan after considerable preparation in 1323 via Bihar. A part of Bihar was annexed enroute to the fort of Warangal, which was besieged once again. The Rai, after a brief resistance, laid down arms. He was sent with his family to Delhi and his kingdom declared annexed to the sultanate. The capital city of Warangal was named Sultanpur and it became the capital of a province of the Sultanate of Delhi.
- On his way back to Delhi, Jauna Khan attacked and subjugated the Hindu principality of Utkal (Jajnagar of the Muslim chroniclers) in Orissa.
- Ghiyasuddin Tughluq organised a campaign against Bengal. When he returned from Bengal the crown prince Jauna Khan held a grand reception for the monarch at Afghanpur in the vicinity of Delhi. The Sultan was killed here due to

the fall of the palace.

- Ibn Battuta held the crown prince guilty of a conspiracy to kill his father.
- Barani and Firishta, however, opine that the fall of the pavilion was a mere accident.

MOHAMMAD BIN TUGHLAQ (1325 AD - 51 AD)

- Real name – Fakhruddin Muhammad Jauna Khan.
- He threw open higher services to all the Indians on merit and did not discriminate between the Hindus and the Muslims in matters of state policy.
- Believed in the theory of divine light of kings.
- Muhammad bin Tughluq has been represented by contemporaries as one of the wonders of the age in which he lived.
- Alauddin Tarmashirin, the Chaghtai ruler of Transoxiana (Mongol), invaded Sind in the beginning of his reign.
- According to Isami, the Mongols were defeated and repulsed, though Firishta says they were bought off.
- Formulated ‘famine-code’ to provide relief to famine-affected people.
- Created heterogeneous nobility–incorporated land–owning class, artisan class into nobility.
- Showed catholic outlook–maintained Sufi and Jaina connection–participated in Hindi festivals Holi.
- Well-versed in various branches of learning viz. astronomy, mathematics, medicine, philosophy etc.
- Discarded communal discrimination in matters of state policy.
- Created the department of agriculture (Diwan–i–Amir Kohi) to improve agriculture.
- Tried to organise the army on the ‘decimal system’ on Mongol pattern.
- He has been described as “Mixture of opposites” or a “mad king”.
- Muhammad bin Tughluq had cordial relations with some of the Asian countries, particularly, China.
- The Chinese emperor, Toghan Timur sent an envoy to Delhi in 1341 seeking Muhammad’s permission build Buddhist temples in the Himalayan region. These Himalayan temples were demolished by Sultan’s soldiers during Qarajal expedition.
- The Sultan sent Ibn Battuta as envoy to the court of the Mongol emperor of China. Ibn Battuta started in July 1342 but failed to reach China.

- Obtained investiture from Caliph in 1334.
- First sultan to advance loans known as *sondhar* to peasants for digging well to extend cultivation.
- Muhammad bin Tughluq died on 20th March 1351AD during campaign at Thatta (Sind).
- Badauni observed about the death of Muhammad bin Tughluq that **the King was freed from his people and the people were freed from their king.**

PROJECTS OF MOHAMMAD BIN TUGHLAQ

- Shifted capital from Delhi to Devagiri (renamed, Daulatabad) in 1326–27. But the project failed and general permission was granted to the emigrants to come back to Delhi in 1335–36. Ibn Battuta who came to Delhi in 1334 found it in a fairly flourishing condition.
- Introduced token currency of copper and brass (1329–30). He has been described by Edward Thomas as the Prince of Moneyers.
- In 1332–33 AD he planned to conquer Khorasan. The Khorasan project was due to the instigation of some Khorasani nobles who had been attracted to the Sultan's court by his lavish generosity. A huge army, numbering three lakhs and seventy thousand men was collected and was paid one year's salary in advance, but the project could not be undertaken and the army had to be dispersed.
- Muhammad was desirous of establishing his authority over the Himalayan states of the Kumaun region which had not so far been reduced to submission. Hence he sent a military expedition 1333–34 to Qarajal/ Qarachil which was situated in the Kumaun hills.
- Enhanced revenue of doab in 1333–34 AD.
- Established model agricultural farm in 1337–38 AD.

REVOLTS DURING THE REIGN OF MOHAMMAD BIN TUGHLAQ

- Bahauddin Gurshasp, governor of Sagar, raised a standard of revolt in 1326–27. He was an ambitious cousin of Muhammad bin Tughluq (a sister's son of Ghiasuddin Tughluq). The sultan sent an army under the command of Ahmad Ayaz (entitled Khwaja i Jahan) to deal with the rebel, and himself proceeded to Devagiri so as to exert pressure. Gurshasp was defeated in an encounter, which took place somewhere to the south of the Godavari river, and Gurshasp took shelter with the Hindu Rai of Kampila.
- The principality of Kondhana (modern Singhgarh, near Poona) was also reconquered. Its ruler Nag Nayak was defeated and forced to sue for peace.
- Bahram Aiba, entitled Kishlu Khan, the viceroy of Multan, Uchh and Sind also

revolted in 1327. He had expressed resentment against the inhuman and disgraceful treatment meted out to Gurshasp and his associates. Kishlu Khan was defeated and killed in an action fought near Abohar.

- In 1336 AD the independent state of Vijayanagar was founded by Harihara and Bukka.
- In 1336-37 AD Hasan set himself up as an independent ruler at Madura with the title of sultan Sayyid Ahsan Shah.
- In 1347 AD the independent state of Bahamani was founded by Bahman Shah.

FIROZ SHAH TUGHLAQ (1351 AD - 88 AD)

- Firoz was coronated in a camp near Thatta on 23 March 1351 AD.
- Feroze Tughlaq's father Rajab was the younger brother of Ghiasuddin Tughluq, while his mother was a Bhatti Rajput lady (daughter of Ran Mal of Abohar).
- Painting of pictures on different utensil, e.g., cups, dishes, saddles, bridles, curtains, tents, banners, was disallowed.
- Pictures and portraits which were painted on the walls and doors of the royal palace were all effaced. Painting of jungle scenes was only allowed.
- Women were forbidden to go out on pilgrimages to the tombs of great men on holy days.
- Shaikh Nasiruddin Chiragh Dehlavi was one of the most popular mystics of the reign of Firuz. He belonged to the Chisti order and was the disciple of Shaikh Nizamuddin Aulia. During the reign of Muhammad Tughluq the Shaikh had to suffer much humiliation. At Tattah he pleaded for the cause of Firuz. The Sultan held him in high esteem.
- The Imperial court of Delhi had been turned into a centre of culture, owing to the influx of a large number of poets, philosophers, jurists and historians who flocked to the capital from distant corners and received warm reception at the hand of the Sultan in the Mahal-i-Sahan-i-Gulband, a palace specially built for the purpose.
- It is surmised that the Sirat-i-Firoz Shahi was written to his dictation. Ziauddin Barani dedicated his famous work to him and named it Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi after him. Shams-i-Siraj Afif wrote another book with the same title.
- Ain ul-Mulk who for long, held the post of Mushrif in the Diwan-i-Wizarat has left behind a very important and popular work called Insha-i-Mahru.
- The most remarkable contribution was made in the science of astronomy. There is a book, Ziqr-Munsobat Kawakib dealing with several planets whose places are

fixed in heavens. There is another book, ZiqrMunsobat-Burooj which deals with changes in human life as effected by stars. A third one, ShikarNamahFath Khan is a book on the astronomy and hunting.

- The Science of medicine also made much progress and many books were written on this subject. Tibb-iFiruz Shah was named after the Sultan.
- Wrote his autobiography “Futuhāt-i-Fīrozshahī”.
- Described himself as the Deputy of the Caliph.
- Plundered the famous Jagannath temple of Puri.
- Banned painting (reference from Tarikh-i-Fīrozshahī by Afif).
- Patronised many Arabic scholars.
- Qamus, the great Arabic dictionary compiled by MajuddinFirozabadi under was produced his patronage.
- Accepted young boys from the iqtas in lieu of annual tax.
- The Sultan also opened a large number of hospitals (Dar ul Shafa) where medicines used to be distributed free to the people. Experienced physicians, surgeons, eye specialists used to be appointed who attended the patients with great care. The expenses of these hospitals were borne by the State.
- Another novel creation of Firuz was the Usturlab or the astrological charts which gave the exact location of various stars and planets in different parts of the year. It is stated that the Sultan after a deep study of a book of the time of Zulkumain, which dealt in details about the plans or the Usturlabs was imbued with the ambition of similar creation and with the help of the leading scientists of his time he materialized his plan.
- Firoz established an Employment Bureau to provide work to unemployed. He also created an Endowment Fund. He also started practice of granting old-age-pension and charitable kitchens.
- Obtained investitures from the Caliph.

ECONOMIC REGULATIONS OF FEROZE TUGHLAQ

- He imparted a theocratic tinge to the taxation policy by abolishing as many as twenty three cesses.
- The sultan deputed Khwaja HisamuddinJunaidi to prepare a rough estimate of the public revenues of the

state. He, accompanied by a large body of the staff, travelled through the kingdom for six years and, after examining the revenue records of the various provinces, assessed the revenue expected from the Khalsa lands (under the

direct administrative control of the centre) at six crore and eighty–five lakh tankas.

- Made 'Iqta system' hereditary.
- Encouraged settlement of agriculture colonies along canals.
- Included Zakat on his list of regular state demands and established a separate treasury for it.
- In order to promote agriculture the Sultan made provisions for good seeds and laid out what may be termed as experimental farms in which rotation of crops was experimented upon. When experiments proved successful, they were passed on to the agriculturists. The Sultan encouraged the production of superior crops e.g., wheat, lentils, sugarcane etc.
- Besides improving the quality of cultivation, a large number of gardens were laid out by the Sultan which yielded revenue of 180,000 tankas to the State. Of them, 1200 gardens were laid out in the neighbourhood of Delhi.
- The most remarkable contribution of Firuz that gave a fillip to agriculture was the scheme of artificial irrigation in which the excavation of canals, occupied an important place. The important canals which were excavated were the following:
a. The Rajiwah, b. Ulughkhani. c. Firuzabad canal, d. Khakkhar (Ghaggar) canal, e. The Canal excavated from the river Budhi.
- Firuz Shah imposed Jizya upon the Brahmanas. The step caused resentment in the community; and they assembled before the royal palace and prayed for the restoration of the status quo. The Sultan relented to some extent and asked them to pay at the rate applicable to the third category vis., 10 tankas of 50 kani each. (At the rate of 12 Dirham).
- Firoz Shah reverted to the old method of imposing Khums by distributing $\frac{4}{5}$ among the soldiers and appropriating $\frac{1}{5}$ for the State.
- Imposed an additional tax at the rate of $\frac{1}{10}$ of the total production of such cultivators as were benefited by the new scheme irrigation. This additional tax was known as HaqiSharb but it did not yield any revenue to the State as it used to be credited to the privy purse of the Sultan.
- Firuz Shah reorganised the currency system of Muhammad Tughlaq by adding some new coins to it e.g. Shashgani.
- The original contribution of Firuz Shah consisted in the minting of two smaller pieces of lower values of $\frac{1}{2}$ Jital called adha and quarter Jital called Bikh which greatly benefited the poor in their daily transactions.
- Diwan-i-Khairat was the special creation of Firuz for helping the poor Muslim

parents in the marriage of their daughters. It was in charge of Sayyid Amir Miran.

- The department of slaves or Diwan-i-Bandagan was also a new creation of Firuz which administered the affairs of the slaves. The important officials which represented the department were Chawush-i-Ghuri, Deputy Chawush-i-Ghuri, a Diwan and a separate muster-master or Majumdar to look after its general administration. It had its own treasury. He raised a huge force of slaves numbering 180000.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE OF FEROZE TUGHLAQ

- He built Kushk-i-Shikar and Kotla Firuz Shah. Kotla Firuz Shah was a palace fortress Situated on the bank of the river Yamuna, One interesting object in the Kotla of Firuz Shah was the Asokan pillar.
- Founded several cities like Firozabad. Fatehabad, Hissar, Jaunpur, Firozpur etc.
- The important bunds which the Sultan erected were the following: a Bund Fath Khan, b. Bund Malja, c. Bund Mahapalpur, d. Bund Shukr Khan. e. Bund Salaura f. Bund Wazirabad.
- Tas-i-Ghariyal was a novel creation of Firuz. It was invented by the Sultan after his return from the expedition to Thatta. It was placed on the top of the Firuzabad palace from where it publicly announced the hours of the day and night. It served the purpose of modern clock tower and as such had a great utility for the people.
- The city of Jahanpanah, the foundation of which was laid by Muhammad Tughluq, was repaired.
- The upper storeys of the QutubMinar which were struck by lightning in 770 A.H./1368 A.D. were repaired by Firuz. These repairs were confined to the fourth and fifth storeys
- Extensive repairs were also made to the tanks called Hauz. Of them the most important were: a. Hauz-iShamshi or tank of Altamash, b. Hauz-i-Khudavand Khwaja, c. Hauz-i-Muazzam of Mubarak Khan, d. Hauz-ialai or tank of Alauddin.
- The most famous madrasa of the age was Madrasa-i-Firuz Shahi established in his newly founded city of Firuzabad. It was placed under the supervision Maulana Jalaluddin Rumi, a scholar of great repute.
- Inscribed shariat on a tower near Firozabad Jami mosque.

SIKANDAR LODI (1489 AD - 1517 AD)

- Real name – Nizam Khan. He abolished duties on corn and removed the galling restrictions on trade. He broke the sacred image of Jwalamukhi temple at Nagarkot.
- He made Agra his capital in 1504, which had been mere a village and a dependency of Bayana upto that year, in order to make it a military cantonment and a base of operations against Dholpur, Gwalior, and Malwa.
- Introduced a new gaz known as gaz-i-Sikandari of 32 digits.
- Stopped taking Fawazil from the Iqtadars.
- He was fond of literature and poetry and wrote verses in Persian under the name of GulRukh.
- The main achievement of the Sultan was the conquest and annexation of Bihar.
- By his orders a Sanskrit treatise on medicine was translated into Persian by **MianBhua** and given the name of Farhang-i-Sikandari. Another book on music was proposed under the title Lahjat-e-Sikandari.

TOPIC

THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

BABUR (1526-30)

EARLY LIFE

- Zahir ud Din Muhammad Babar, the founder of the Mughal rule in India, was the eldest of the three sons of

Umar Sheikh Mirza.

- Belonged to Chaghtai section of the Turkish race.
- His father was a petty chieftain of Farghana.
- Babur was born on February 14, 1483 at Andizhan.

BABUR AND INDIA

First Battle of Panipat

- Fought the First Battle of Panipat against Ibrahim Lodhi in 1526 and defeated the latter.
- In this battle his artillery was commanded by two famous gunners of central Asia, **Ustad Ali Quli and Mustafa**.
- Raja Bikramjit of Gwalior had also brought his army to fight the Mughals as an ally of Ibrahim Lodhi.
- Introduced a new fighting strategy known as “Tulughma” in this battle.

Battle of Khanua

- Fought against Rana Sanga of On March 17, 1527 and defeated him.
- The Mughal army numbered about two lakhs, the maximum number of soldiers ever commanded by Babar

in any single action.

- To boost the morale of his forces, he declared jihad (holy war) against Rana Sanga.
- Renounced wine for life, broke all the wine pots and precious gold and silver vessels carried by his entourage,

and declared abolition of stamp duty (tamgha) on all the Muslim subjects of his dominions.

- proclaimed victory by assuming the title of Ghazi

- Fought **battle of Chanderi** against Medini Rai, the Rajput chief of Chanderi on January 21, 1528. Medini Rai

was a close associate of Rana Sanga, who had escaped from Khanua.

- His last victory was over Mahmud Lodhi, in the **Battle of Ghagra** in 1529.

Mahmud Lodhi was the younger

brother of sultan Ibrahim Lodhi and was a claimant to the throne of Delhi. Babar challenged them at the

confluence of the Ghagra and the Ganges on May 6, 1529. Mahmud Lodhi

escaped to Burma where he was

put to death by the Makh tribals after some time.

- Babar entered into a friendly treaty with Nusrat Shah of Bengal on the basis of equality of status. According

to this treaty the two monarchs agreed to respect the sovereignty and territorial integrity of each other's

dominions and promised not to support or give shelter to their respective enemies.

- Babar breathed his last on December 26, 1530, at the age of 48 at Agra. He was buried at Aram Bagh in Kabul.

- An assessment of his character and personality, was made by his cousin Mirza Haider, in his book Tarikh i Rashidi.

- Lane Poole opines that Babar was only a soldier of fortune and no architect of empire yet he laid the first

stone of the splendid fabric which his grandson Akbar completed.

- Babar has rightly been called the prince of auto biographers.

- Babar was a great empire - builder, his vast dominions extended from Badakhshan to Bengal and from the

Oxus to the Ganga. His Indian possession extended from the Himalayas in the north to Gwalior in the south

and from the Khyber pass in the north-west to the frontiers of Bengal in the east.

The capital city was Agra.

- Babar used gun powder for the first time at Bhera in 1518-19 and later at Sialkot in 1520-21.

- He established a tradition of gardens with running water.

- The total revenue of his empire was 52 crore rupees.

HUMAYUN (1530-40 AND 1555-56)

- Full name—Nasiruddin Muhammad Humayun.
- Nasir ud Din Muhammad, surnamed Humayun—the fortunate the successor of Babar, was the eldest of his four sons, the other three being Kamran, Askari and Hindal. He was born at Kabul on March 6, 1502, from his third wife Maham Begam.
- Kamran was the governor of Kabul and Kandahar.
- An Afghan army under Mahmud Lodhi was defeated by Humayun at Dauraha in August 1532.
- Malwa and Gujarat, writes Lane – Poole, the two provinces, equal in area to all the rest of Humayun's kingdom, had fallen like ripe fruit into his hands. Never was conquest so easy. Never too was conquest more recklessly squandered away.
- His brother Hindal, who had been entrusted with the task of defending this region, abandoned the charge and returned to the imperial capital where he styled himself as the emperor of India.
- Hindal accompanied Humayun to Sind but after some time went over to Kamran.
- On August 29, 1541, Humayun married Hamida Banu Begam, a young girl of 14; she was the daughter of a Persian Shia maulvis Mir Baba Dost alias Ali Akbar Jami, who was the spiritual preceptor of Hindal. She gave birth to Akbar on October 15, 1542 in Hindu palace of Rana Virsala of Amarkot in Sind where Humayun's womenfolk had been lodged by the courtesy of the Rana.
- On the condition of his conversion to the Shia faith, Humayun got help from the Shah Tamasp of Persia in the conquest of Kandahar in September 1545.
- Humayun reached Peshawar in December 1554; Lahore was occupied without a fight in February 1555. The Afghan armies suffered a defeat in the battle of Macchiwara on the bank of the Sutlej and vacated the Punjab. Sikander Sur fled to the Siwalik hills and Bairam Khan was sent to give him a chase. The credit for this victory was given to Akbar who was appointed governor of the Punjab. Humayun entered Delhi on July 23, 1555 and became the Emperor of India once again after an interval of fifteen years. Agra was occupied soon afterwards.
- On the evening of January 24, 1556 he met with an accidental fall while descending down the stairs of his personal library, situated in the imperial buildings, called Din Panah or Sher Mandal.
- He tumbled through life, and he tumbled out of it. (Stanley Lane-Poole)
- Constructed a grand acropolis at Delhi known as 'Dinpanah'. Made it the

Capital City.

- Defeated Bahadur Shah of Gujarat during 1534-36.
- Sher Khan defeated Humayun in the Battle of Chausa in 1539.
- Died on account of a fall from stairs of his library, Sher Mandal at Delhi. After defeating the battle of Kanauj he fled to Lahore and Agra & Delhi were occupied by Sher Shah.
- Fought battle of Bilgram in 1540 against Sher Shah Suri and was defeated. This battle resulted in the temporary end of the Mughal Empire.
- Received his first assignment of Government of Badakhshan at the age of twelve.
- Proved to be a total failure as ruler, administrator and military general.
- Besieged Chunar fort called gateway of Eastern India.
- Refused request of Rani Karnawati of Mewar for assistance against Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
- Occupied the city of Gaur in Bengal and renamed it as Jannatabad (paradise city).
- His Mausoleum was built by his widow, Hamida Bano during the reign of Akbar.

AKBAR (1556-1605)

EARLY LIFE

- Full name - Jalaluddin Muhammad Akbar
- Akbar was born at Amarkot(Sind) in the palace of Rajput chieftain Rana Virsal on 15 Oct. 1542.
- Akbar was liberated and reunited with his father in November 1545 when Humayun captured the fort of

Kabul from Kamran.

- Akbar's mother was Hamida Banu, later officially designated as Mariam Makani.
- Akbar was placed at the rampart of the main gate of the fort and Kamran exposed him to the gunfire of

Humayun's artillery at Kabul in November 1547.

- Akbar received his first official assignment as governor of Ghazni in November 1551 at the age of nine.
- In the official records, Akbar was given the credit of Humayun's victory at

Sirhind on January 22, 1555.

- After the occupation of the throne of Delhi, became heir apparent and was assigned the governorship of

the Punjab by Humayun.

- Humayun expired on 26 Jan 1556 due to fall from the stairs of his library Sher I Mandal at Delhi.
- The news of Humayun's death was kept secret for 17 days. A man named Mulla Bekasi, whose features

resembled that of Humayun, was dressed up in the royal costumes and shown to the people from the terrace of the place until the formal proclamation of accession of Akbar to the throne of Delhi.

- Akbar and Bairam Khan received the news of Humayun's death on February 14 when they were encamped at Kalanaur in district Gurdaspur.
- Akbar was declared to be the emperor of India and a brief ceremony was held to mark the occasion. Khutba had already been read in the name of Akbar at Delhi three days earlier (i.e. on February II).
- Akbar assumed the regal title of Shahanshah while Bairam Khan received appointment as Vakil – us Sultanate i.e., the Prime Minister with the designation of Khan i Khanan.

CHALLENGES TO AKBAR

- Akbar was king of no land at the time of his coronation as the emperor of Hindustan.
- Soon after Humayun's death, Agra and Delhi were occupied by Hem Chandra, nick named Hemu Baqqal (i.e. Baniya). Hemu was the brilliant prime minister and Indomitable commander in chief of Muhammad Adil Shah Sur. As soon as he came to know of Humayun's demise, Hem Chandra moved out of Chunar, the headquarters of his master Adil Shah, and stormed Agra at the head of a large army with the declared objective of driving out the Mughals from India.
- The Mughal armies at Agra were defeated and routed while Delhi fell into the hands of Hem Chandra without a fight. Its Mughal defender Targi Beg fled the capital on the approach of the former's army. Hem Chandra declared himself the emperor of India and ascended the throne at Delhi with the title of Vikramaditya.
- The dominions of Afghanistan, including Kandahar and Badakhshan, were held under the charge of Mirza Muhammad Hakim. He became virtually independent of Delhi under the tutelage of his ambitious mother Man Chuchak Begam and

guardian Munim Khan.

- Akbar fought 2nd battle of Panipat on November 5, 1556 and defeated Hemu. The Mughal army was under the personal command of Bairam Khan.
- The Mahabat of Hemu's elephant tried his best to save his master by withdrawing from the battlefield, but Shah Kuli Mehram, a Mughal soldier captured him.
- Out of affection Akbar conferred the title of Khan Baba upon Bairam Khan.
- Akbar expressed his gratitude to Bairam Khan by allowing him to marry his cousin, Salima Sultana Begam, daughter of Humayun's sister Gulrukh Begam.

AKBAR AS THE EMPEROR OF INDIA

- Bairam Khan was the guardian and regent of Akbar during 1556-60.
- The appointment of Sheikh Gadaï, a Shia scholar of doubtful loyalty towards the crown as the Sadr us Sadar by Bairam Khan excited the sectarian rivalry of all the Sunni nobles.
- In 1560 Akbar decided to take over the reins of government in his hands and sent one of his tutors, Mir Abdul Latif, to Agra with this order for Bairam Khan.
- Akbar offered Bairam Khan three alternatives regarding his future career i.e. the governorship of the districts of Kalpi and Chanderi, the post of confidential adviser to the crown at the royal court, or departure for Mecca.
- Bairam Khan decided to depart for Mecca. But he was put to death at Patan (Gujarat) on January 31, 1561 by a party of the ruffians led by an Afghan Youth, named Mubarak Khan whose father had been killed by Bairam at the battle of Machhiwara in 1555.
- The fall of Bairam Khan brought into existence, what has been styled by V. A. Smith as the petticoat government of the worst kind. The prominent members of the harem party who constituted the so-called petticoat government were the Hamida Banu Begam, Maham Anaga, Adham Khan, Shihabuddin Atka Khan, Mulla Pir Muhammad and Munim Khan.
- Within six months of Bairam Khan's fall Akbar appointed in quick succession, as many as four persons to hold the exalted office of the prime minister. Shihabuddin Atka Khan, the governor of Delhi to be his first prime minister. After some time Maham Anga, Bahadur Khan and Munim Khan were also made prime ministers.
- Mullah pir Muhammad was an old teacher of Akbar whose association with the Mughal royal house had been as old as that of Bairam Khan. He held an important office at the court with the title Nasir ul Mulk.
- His chief mentor was Mir Abdul Latif.

- Initiated the policy of reconciliation with the Rajputs.
- Learn the principles of Sulh-i-kul-from his most notable tutor Mir Abdul Latif.
- Erected “Ibadat Khana” in 1575.
- Issued “Mahzar” in September 1579. The Mahzar was prepared by Sheikh Mubarak. Mahzar was referred as **Infallibility Decree** by V.A. Smith.
- By proclaiming Mahzar Akbar became Mujtahid (supreme arbitrator in religious matters) and Imam i Adil (final arbitrator of Islamic law).
- Promulgated Din-i-Ilahi also known as Tauhid-i- Ilahi (Divine monotheism) in 1582. Birbal was the first Hindu to join it.
- Rodolfo Aquaviva, Antonio Monserrate and Jerome Xavier were some prominent Christian missionaries who visited the court of Akbar.
- He was buried at Sikandara near Agra.
- Introduced round-shaped and square silver coin called Rupee and Jalali respectively.
- Made Persian the court language and compulsory for all state servants.
- Modified the Islamic basis of sovereignty and laid down the principle that the king was the father of all his subjects.
- Akbar was fond of horticulture.
- Assumed the title of Zill-I-Ilahi (shadow of God).
- Employed a slave contingent (foot soldiers) known as Chelas.
- Hindus were accorded freedom of worship and granted equal rights of citizenship with their Muslim brethren.
- Allowed the entry of Hindus in civil and military services.
- His ruling family had descended from the sun through their celebrated female progenitor Alanuawa.
- Introduced the worship of the sun as one of the rituals in the court.
- The Afghan insurgents from Bengal made an appearance in the Gangetic Valley. They were led by Sher Shah II, the son of Muhammad Adil Shah Sur. Khan Zaman repulsed their attack and acquired Huge booty, Khan Zaman Uzbek, Governor of Jaunpur, rebelled of 1560. Including treasure and war elephants but did not sent this to the capital.
- Khan Zaman Uzbek, Governor of Jaunpur, rebelled of 1560. Uzbeks under Abdullah Khan Uzbek revolted in 1564 in the east and recognised Mirza Hakim (Akbar’s half brother) as their ruler. This revolt was suppressed by 1567. The declared objective of the rebels was to overthrow Akbar and install Abul Qasim the son of Mirza Kamran on the throne.
- All Rajputs except Mewar accepted Mughal sovereignty.

- Abul Fazl was murdered in cold blood at Narwar on his way back from the south by Bir Singh Bundela of Orchha, an agent of prince Salim; this tragedy took place on August 19, 1602.
- Salim escaped punishment by the intervention of his grandmother Sultana Salima Begam (a step – mother of Akbar). She went to Allahabad and persuaded Salim to come to Agra and beg pardon from Akbar.
- A conspiracy was planned by his maternal uncle Man Singh and father in law Mirza Aziz Koka to deprave of crown soling.

CONQUESTS OF AKBAR

- Recovered Delhi & Agra by winning the Second Battle of Panipat in 1556.
- Liberated Punjab from the influence of Sikandar Sur in 1557.
- Acquired Ajmer in 1557.
- Annexed Gwalior in 1558-59.
- • 60.

Conquest of Malwa

- Akbar sent the royal armies for the conquest of Malwa towards the fall of 1560 under the charge of Adham Khan while Mulla Pir Muhammad Khan was put second in command.
- Defeated Baz Bahadur.
- Concluded first matrimonial alliance with the Rajput King Bharmal the ruler of Amber (Jaipur) in 1562. He was first Rajput King to accept the suzerainty of Akbar at Sangar. He proposed his daughter's marriage with the young monarch. Man Singh, the youthful son of Bhagwan Das was included into the royal service. Salim (later Jahangir) heir to the throne, was born of this wedlock on August 30 , 1569.
- Conquest of Merta in 1563.
- In 1564 Akbar ordered an unprovoked attack on the Hindu state of Gondwana. Its capital was Chauragarh. The state was then also called Garh Katanga. It was governed by Rani Durgavati, the Chandel princess of Mahoba, on behalf of her minor son Vir Narayan. The Mughal army of invasion comprised 50,000 mobile cavalry under the charge of Asaf Khan. Rani Durgavati was defeated.

Akbar and Mewar

- Captured Chittor, the capital of Mewar in 1567-68. Defeated the forces of Rana Udai Singh.
- Akbar entered the fort on the royal elephant called Madhukar the next day.
- Akbar handed over the charge of the Sarkar of Chittor to Khwaja Abdul Majid Asaf Khan.

- Abul Fazl says that at the Commencement to the siege of Chittor Akbar had vowed that, After his victory, he would go on foot to the shrine of Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti at Ajmer.
- Deeply impressed by the valour of the defenders of Chittor, Akbar Commemorated their heroism by installing the stone statues of Jai Mal and Fattah seated on elephants on either side of the inner entrance of the main gate (Delhi Gate) of the Agra fort.
- Akbar appointed Raja Man Singh of Amber, the arch enemy of Rana Pratap, as the commander – in – chief of the army of invasion while Asaf Khan, then the Mir Bakhshi of the empire and victor of Gondwana, was put second in command.
- An eye–witness account of this campaign, which culminated in the historic battle of Haldi Ghati, has faithfully been given in the Muntakhab ut Tawarikh by Badaoni who participated in it as a fighter in the train of Asaf Khan.
- The battle of Haldi Ghati was fought on June 18, 1576. The Rana divided his meagre force into two divisions, one of which was led by himself and the other by his most trusted lieutenant **Hakim Sur Afghan**.
- Rana was defeated but he escaped with his life.
- Rana's son Amar Singh was again defeated by Man Singh in 1599.
- Akbar ordered an expedition to Ranthambhor, the second invincible stronghold of the Rajputs in April 1568. It was ruled by Surjan Rai Hara who was a vassal of Mewar. He surrendered the fort on March 18, 1569 , and entered the imperial service.
- The Mughal army under the command of Majnun Khan besieged Kalinjar in August 1569. After a mild show of resistance, Ram Chandra offered submission and was granted a jagir in the vicinity of Allahabad. His state was annexed to the Mughal Empire and Majnun Khan was appointed the first mughal governor of Kalinjar.
- November 1570 two Rajput rulers acknowledged the suzerainty of Akbarat Nagaur. They were Chander Sen, Son of Maldeo of Jodhpur and Kalyan Mal of Bikaner.
- In December 1570, Rawal Har Rai of Jaisalmer also acknowledged the vassalage of the Mughal emperor and offered the hand of his daughter in marriage to him.

Conquest of Gujarat

- In 1572 there was no settled government in Gujarat. Its ruler Muzaffar Shah III was incompetent and unpopular whose authority was defied by about half a

dozen Feudal chieftains. Akbar conquered Gujrat with out much difficulty.

- After making arrangements for the civil administration of Gujarat Akbar returned to Sikri in March 1573.
- Akbar laid the foundation of the town of Sikri, in the vicinity of Agra after Gujrat victory. He had developed a sort of emotional attachment with the village of Sikri, the abode of Sheikh Salim chisti. It was said to be by his blessing that Akbar's first surviving child, the future Jahangir, was born of his first Rajput wife, the daughter of Raja Bihari Mal of Amber, on august 30, 1569 at the dargah of the Sheikh. The child was named Salim after the darvesh and was affectionately addressed by Akbar as the Sheikhu Baba. In order to perpetuate his association with the holy dargah of Sheikh Salim Chisti Akbar decided to shift his imperial residence and the court from Agra to Sikri. Accordingly, a beautiful township came into existence at Sikri by the year 1573–74. The sheikh died in 1572 and Akbar ordered the construction of a lovely mausoleum of pearls over his grave. The township was renamed Fatehpur Sikri to commemorate the conquest of Gujarat.
- Within six months of Akbar's return from Gujarat, the disaffected Gujarati nobles and the Mirzas, led by Muhammad Husain raised a standard of revolt. They besieged the Mughal governor Khan i Azam in the fort of Ahmadabad. On the receipt of intelligence, Akbar led his second expedition to Gujarat which is considered to be one of the swiftest military campaigns on record. He left Fatehpur Sikri on August 23, 1573, at the head of 3,000 mobile cavalry only, and reached Ahmadabad on 2nd September, thus covering a distance of over 450 miles in eleven days.
- Conquered Bihar and Bengal in 1574–76.
- Akbar subdued the revolt of his half brother Mirza Hakim in Kabul (1581). The disaffected Ulemas and nobles hatched a conspiracy to depose Akbar and install his half brother Mirza Muhammad Hakim of Kabul on the throne of Delhi. Khwaja Mansur, the imperial Diwan (finance minister) was the ring-leader of these conspirators at the court. They entered into treasonable correspondence with Muhammad Hakim under the very nose of Akbar. Mulla Muhammad Yazdi, the qazi of Jaunpur, issued a fatwa (religious decree) that Akbar had ceased to be a true Musalman and therefore rebellion against him was a religious duty of the faithful. After defeating the rebels, Akbar conferred the governorship of Kabul on **Bakht us Nisa Begam**, the real sister of Muhammad Hakim. Muhammad Hakim begged pardon after some time and continued to rule along with his sister. On his death in July 1585. Kabul was brought under the direct

administrative control of Delhi. Raja Man Singh was the first among the Mughal bureaucracy to receive appointment as governor of Kabul, thus reinforcing the Mughal prowess in Central Asia by Rajput valour.

- Kashmir was declared annexed to the empire in 1585-86. For the purpose of administration, it was made a Sarkar (district) of the subah of Kabul.
- Suppressed the revolts of Uzbeks, Roshnaiyas and the Yusufzais, during his stay in the north-west (1585-88).
- In 1590 he appointed the Young stalwart Abdur Rahim Khan I Khana to be the governor of Multan with the instructions to complete the conquest of Sind upto the mouth of the Indus. Sind was conquered in 1591.
- Raja Man Singh was recalled from Kabul to the court and the governorship of Bihar and Bengal was conferred upon him in 1586. He was advised by the emperor to expand eastern frontiers of the empire along the Gulf of Bengal by the conquest of Orissa which was then ruled over by an Afghan family of the Lohani tribe. Man Singh took the offensive against **Orissa in 1590** and secured the submission of its ruler Nisar Khan, son of Kutlu Afghan. He surrendered the territories of Puri, including the famous Hindu temple of Jagannath. These were constituted into the crown lands (the Khalsa). In 1592 Nisar Khan gave an indication of hostile intentions and invited second expedition from Man Singh. The rebel was defeated and Orissa incorporated into the empire. It was made a Sarkar (district) of Bengal.
- Conquered in Kandahar (1595).
- Conquered Baluchistan in 1595. Akbar deputed Mir Masum to conquer Baluchistan, then held by the Pani afghans.

Akbar and South India

- After his victory in Sind, Akbar despatched from Lahore, in august 1591, four diplomatic missions to the major regional kingdoms of the Deccan – Khandesh, Ahmadnagar, Bijapur and Golconda.
- Faizi was sent to Khandesh, Khwaja Aminuddin to Ahmadnagar, Mir Muhammad Amin Mashudi to Bijapur, and Mirza Masud to Golconda.
- Raja Ali Khan, the sultan of Khandesh, whose territories lay in the Tapti valley, immediately to the south of the Mughal empire, acknowledged the suzerainty of Delhi. Burhanpur was the capital of Khandesh which was defended by the mighty fort of Asirgarh. Asirgarh commanded the main road to the Deccan and was rightly regarded as one of the strongest and best equipped forts in Asia or Europe.
- Towards the end of 1593 Akbar ordered the despatch of two Mughal armies to

subjugate Ahmadnagar by force, one was led by Abdur Rahim Khan i Khana and the other by prince Murad.

- Mian Manju, the Peshwa (prime minister) of Ahmadnagar, supported the claim of Bahadur Shah, an infant son of Ibrahim, to be the sultan. This candidate had been put up by Chand Bibi, a sister of Burhan ul Mulk and widow of sultan Ali Adil Shah of Bijapur.

- About this time it became known to the Mughal troops that the fugitive freedom-fighters of Ahmadnagar, accompanied by the combined armies of Bijapur and Golconda were heading fast towards the place of siege in support of Chand Bibi. Prince Murad took alarm, hurriedly concluded peace with Chand Bibi, and raised the siege on February 23, 1596.

- According to the terms of the treaty, the Mughals recognised Bahadur Shah, the infant grandson of Burhan ul Mulk, to be the rightful ruler of Ahmadnagar under the regency of Chand Bibi. In turn, Ahmadnagar acknowledged the suzerainty of Delhi and ceded the territory of Berar to the empire.

- Raja Ali Khan of Khandesh died fighting for the Mughals in the first siege of Ahmadnagar in early 1599. His son and successor Miran Bahadur resented the exploitation of the resources, in men and material, of his tiny kingdom by the imperialists. He, therefore, adopted an attitude of indifference towards them, and, encouraged by the successful resistance put up by Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, and Golconda against the Mughals, showed signs of rebellion.

- The imperial Mughal army led by prince Daniyal reached Ahmadnagar on April 12 and immediately prepared to invest the fort. In the face of the impending peril, the most vocal and ambitious nobles of the rival factions made way for Chand Bibi who once again assumed the supreme command of the besieged garrison; of course, all the cowards, who held their lives dearer than the honour of their land or the leaders,

- The Michalaras made a successful entry into the fort on 19th August after a siege of four months and four days.

- The siege of Asirgarh (February 1600 an 1801)

- Akbar ordered investment of the fort of Asirgarh towards the end of February, 1600. The siege was conducted under the collective leadership of the Khan I Azam Asaf Khan, Murtaza Khan (viz., Sheikh Farid of Bukhara) and Jani Beg of Thatta and this lasted till January 6, 1601.

- Prince Daniyal was appointed viceroy of Malwa and Gujarat, and all the Mughal possessions in the Deccan, including Khandesh, which was renamed ac Dandesh after the prince.

- Akbar returned to Fatehpur Sikri on August 1, 1601, where he ordered the construction of the renowned Buland Darwaza to commemorate his victory over Asirgarh.
- Berar was conquered in 1596.
- Conquered Ahmadnagar in 1600. Defeated Chand Bibi.
- Contest with Chand Bibi (Ahmadanagar), operation was led by Abdur Rahim Khan Khana.
- His last conquest was of Khandesh and seize of the fort of Asirgarh (1601)

REFORMS OF AKBAR

- Abolished the practice of enslaving the wives and children of defeated rebels as captives in 1562.
- Abolished pilgrimage tax in 1563.
- Abolished Jizya in 1564.
- Abolished Sati, legalised widow remarriage, raised age for marriage (14 for girls and 16 for boys).
- Introduce the practice of lending money from the imperial treasury—the system was known as Musadat.
- Prohibited polygamy.
- In 1574 introduced Karori experiment.
- In 1579 introduced Dah-sala system (important role of Todar mal).
- Introduced a new yard named Gaz-I-Ilahi of 41 digits for land measurement (33 inches in length) in 1588.

AKBAR AS A PATRON OF ART AND CULTURE

- Constructed three great forts Agra fort, Allahabad fort and Lahore fort.
- The buildings of Akbar were mainly made of red sand stone.
- Founded a new capital city, Fatehpur Sikri (1572–80) which contains edifices of high quality like Buland Darwaza, Diwan-i-am, Diwan-i-Khas, Turkish Sultana's palace, Panch Mahal, Jama Masjid etc.
- Agra and Lahore served as his capital cities.
- Akbar designed his mausoleum himself which was constructed by Jahangir at Sikandara.
- He was a skilled musician and player of 'Naqqara' (Kettle drum).
- Some of the great musicians like Tansen, Baba Ramdas, Baba Haridas adorned his court.
- The mode of calligraphy favourite to Akbar was 'Nastaliq'.
- Akbar created a separate department of painting and Khwaja Abdus Samad was appointed its head. He was given the title of "Shirin-Qalam" (sweet pen).

- Akbar got Ramayana, Mahabharata, Lilavati, Rajatarangini, Panch Tantra and Nal Damayanti translated into Persian. The Persian translation of Mahabharata was known as “Razm-Nama”.
- Ram Das, Sur Das, Tulsi Das, Ras Khan, Abdur Rahim Khan Khana and Birbal were some of the Hindi poets associated with Akbar.
- Some of the famous Persian litterateurs were Abul Fazl, Faizi, Badauni, Abbas Sarwani, Utbi & Naziri.
- Organised army and introduced Mansabdari System.
- Muzaffar Khan, Todarmal & Shah Mansur were three most notable Wazir in his time.
- Humayun’s tomb was built at Delhi during his reign. Double dome is the special feature this building.
- European painting was introduced by the Portuguese priests during his time.
- Introduction of ‘Foreshortening (distant and near objects could be placed in perspective) in painting.
- Compiled a code of education regulations.

JAHANGIR (1605—27)

EARLY LIFE

- Full Name - Nuruddin Muhammad Jahangir
- Popularly known as ‘Salim.
- Was born of Akbar’s first Rajput wife, styled Mariam us Zamani on August 30, 1569. She was the daughter of

Raja Bihari Mal (Bhar Mal) of Amber.

- Abdur Rahim Khan i Khana, a renowned soldier - scholar of the day, was one of his tutors.
- His mansab was raised to Twelve Thousands in 1585 at the time of his betrothal to his cousin Man Bai,

daughter of Raja Bhagwan Das of Amber. Man Bai was officially styled as Shah Begam and she was the mother of prince Khusrau. She committed suicide in 1604 because of estranged relations between her husband and the son.

- One of his favourite wives was a Rajput princess known as Jagat Gosai who gave birth to prince Khurram, the future Shah Jahan and the successor of Jahangir.

- Salim raised a standard of revolt in 1599 with the object of acquiring throne. He set up his court at Allahabad, assumed royal titles and struck coins in his name.
- A conspiracy was hatched by Raja Man Singh and others to deprive Jahangir of his legitimate right of succession.
- Assumed the reins of government in 1605 with the title of Nuruddin Muhammad Jahangir Padshah Ghazi.
- After sitting on throne Jahangir promulgated twelve edicts/ordinances for the general welfare and better government to mark his coronation.
- His capital city was at Agra.
- Sheikh Farid Bukhari was raised to the office of Mir Bakhshi by Jahangir and was awarded the title of **lord of the pen and the sword** (sahib us saif wa laqalam).
- He repealed a number of cesses, like tamgha or mir bahri. & announced measures for the development of trade and commerce.
- He ordered the government officials not to open the merchant's bales without their knowledge or permission, not to resort to any sort of harassment to the people. They were not to take possession of the property or houses of the citizens.
- Jahangir forbade the manufacture and sale of wine and intoxicating drugs throughout the empire. He also banned the use of Tobacco.
- He banned the slaughter of animals on two days in every week, viz., Sunday, the day of Akbar's birth and Thursday, the day of the his own coronation.
- Jahangir ordered the abolition of inhuman corporal punishments like the cutting of nose and ears of the culprits. The government officials were instructed not to confiscate the property of the deceased if his heirs and successors could be traced out.
- Intermarriages between the families of the government officers and also their matrimonial alliances with the people of their own pargana, without royal permission, were prohibited.
- He ordered the preparation of a Zanjir i Adl. It was a chain of justice made of pure gold. Sixty bells were attached to it. This was installed to hear public grievances against the highhandedness and oppression of the government officers.
- Prince Khusro revolted in Apr- May 1606 AD but received a crushing defeat in a bloody action fought at Bhairawal.
- Sikh Guru Arjan Dev was executed by Jahangir in the charges of blessing

rebellious Khusro. It gave birth to the new policy of Miri and Piri under the spiritual guidance and leadership of Guru Hargobind, son and successor of Guru Arjan.

- Imprisoned 6th Guru of Sikh—Har Govind Singh at Gwalior fort for refusal to pay the fine.
- In 1611 – 12, the whole of Bengal was plunged into anarchy by the general uprising of the Afghan insurgents led by Usman Khan.
- After the fall of Ahmadnagar, in 1601, one of the Nizamshahi generals, Malik Ambar, put up a scion of the ruling family as the sultan of Ahmadnagar with the title of Murtaza II Nizam Shah, and established himself as his prime minister and regent with his headquarters at Khirki or Khadki. Malik Ambar was constrained to make peace with mughals in 1617. According to the Treaty of Peace concluded with the Mughals, Balaghat along with the fort of Ahmadnagar was called to the Mughal emperor.
- Prince Khurram was honoured the emperor with the high sounding title of Shah Jahan and the unprecedented mansab of 30,000 zat and swar.
- The fort of Kangra was conquered after fourteen months of siege on November 16, 1620.
- Shah Abbas led an attack on Kandahar but, having failed to conquer it by force, he apologised and adopted a conciliatory attitude towards Jahangir. He sent four missions to Agra from 1607 to 1621 with rich presents to please the Mughal monarch. Shah Abbas led a surprise attack on Kandahar in 1622, and acquired control over it. Thus the province of Kandhar was lost to Persia in 1622 AD.
- Nurjahan secured orders from Jahangir for the prince Khurram to lead an expedition to Kandahar, but the latter refused, and, instead, raised a standard of revolt.
- Shah Jahan turned the direction of his armies towards Delhi but suffered a defeat at the hands of the royalists led by prince Parvez and Mahabat Khan at Bilochpur.
- The queen deputed Mahabat Khan to give him a hot chase.
- Shah Jahan was forgiven and allowed to retain the control of Balaghat region in Deccan when he agreed to send, in April 1626, his two sons Dara and Aurangzeb, aged ten and eight respectively, as hostages to the imperial court along with ten lakhs of rupees.
- Firishta wrote his book Gulshan I Ibrahim or Tarikh I Firishta in 1612 AD.
- Maha Singh, the youthful son of Man Singh was admitted to the imperial court with the mansab of Two Thousands.

- Formation of Junta (Clique) comprising Nurjahan, her father Mirza Ghiyas Beg (Itimad- ud-Daula), her brother Asaf Khan and Jahangir's eldest son and son-in-law of Asaf Khan, Khurram, which practically played a decisive role in running the government for many years.
- Hakim Sadra was honoured with the title of Masin uz Zaman for curing the eyes of Prince Khusro.
- Coup of Mahabat Khan took place in 1626 AD who captured Jahangir & Nurjahan in Lahore.
- Two English emissaries of King James-I of England, Captain Hawkins and Sir Thomas Roe came for favourable trade concessions. As a result of their efforts English factories were set up at Surat, Agra, and Ahmedabad & Broach.
- He called captain Hawkins as English Khan, gave him a Mansab of 400.
- Land under Khalisa reduced to 1/200th of the total Jama.
- He died near Lahore while returning from Kashmir and was buried at Shahadara near Lahore.
- By the closing years of his reign succession nexus was—
- Mahabat Khan—supported Parvez
- Nur Jahan—supported Shaharyar
- Asaf Khan—supported Shah Jahan.
- Nurjahan proclaimed prince Shaharyar as the emperor.
- Asaf Khan formally installed Dawar Bakhsh, son of Khusrau, as the emperor, to counter the designs of Nurjahan. At the same time he despatched a fast courier, **Banarsi**, with his signet ring to prince Shah Jahan in the Deccan with instructions to reach capital without delay.
- After suppressing the revolt of Prince Khusro, Jahangir organised four military expeditions against Mewar between 1608 – 1614 AD.
- In 1608 AD Mahabat Khan led the imperial army against Mewar but failed to subjugate Rana.
- In 1609 AD Abdulla Khan led the imperial army against Mewar but he also failed to subjugate Rana.
- In 1611 AD Mirza Aziz Koka and Prince Khurram led the imperial army against Mewar but campaign also failed to subjugate Rana.
- In 1613 AD Jahangir launched ceaseless military campaign against Rana under his personal supervision. Jahangir shifted his headquarters to Ajmer. Prince Khurram was entrusted the command of imperial army. He adopted scorched earth policy against Mewar. but failed to subjugate Rana.
- In 1615, the hard pressed Rana sent his maternal uncle Shubh Karan to

negotiate peace with the Mughals on honourable terms. Jahangir sent robes of honour (sarupa) for Rana Amar Singh.

- This ended a long drawn out struggle with Mewar in 1614 and Rana Amar Singh accepted his suzerainty.
- Jahangir was a connoisseur of Painting, Mughal painting reached its zenith under him. Great progress was made in portrait painting & painting of animals. Mansur was great name in this field.
- He himself was accomplished in painting and he-claimed that he could distinguish the work of different artists in a single picture.
- He was fond of music painting and fine arts.
- Composed verses in Persian and sang Hindi lyrics.
- Introduced Du-Aspah' & Sih-Aspa system (literally trooper with 2 or 3 horses) in Mansabdari system.
- Introduced the office of the mansabdar of ten thousand (Dah-Hazari), the highest military rank of the empire.
- Prohibited the intercaste marriages between the families of the government officers as also their matrimonial alliances with the people of their own pargana, without royal permission.
- Ordered the preparation of a Zanjir-i-adl— the chain of justice made of pure gold, having 60 bells to hear public grievances against the highhandedness and oppression of government officers.
- Responsible for the ghastly murder of Abul Fazl who had rendered invaluable services to the Mughal throne.
- In 1611 Ahdad, leader of Raunshnaiya sect created trouble in the western frontier but was defeated.
- Afghans of Bengal rose into rebellion under leadership of Usman Khan but was defeated in 1612.
- Political power of the Afghan came to an end because Jahangir adopted conciliatory attitude towards them and inducted them into nobility.
- Mutamad Khan was court chronicler at Jahangir's court. Wrote Iqbalnama-i-Jahangiri.
- Attempted to prohibit traffic in eunuchs.
- His reign saw beginning of a new intercourse between Europe and India.
- Constructed water works at Burhanpur.
- Laid out many gardens—Shalimar Bagh at Kashmir.
- Buildings constructed during his reign—Mosque at Lahore, Itimad-ud-Daula's Tomb near Agra and Akbar's Tomb at Sikandara.

- Wrote his autobiography Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri in Persian.
- Pietra Dura in Mughal architecture begins under him; the first example comes from the tomb of Itimad-udDaulah near Agra.

JAHANGIR AND NURJAHAN

- Jahangir saw Mehrunnisa at the Nauroz festival in March 1611, and developed a liking for her at the first sight. He married Mehrunnisa (daughter of Mirza Ghiyas Beg), later known as Nurmahal & Nurjahan in May 1611 AD.
- Mehrunnisa was a scholar of Persian, she composed verses which she recited in her own melodious voice to the great joy of the emperor.
- In 1613, Mehrunnisa became the Padishah Begam and mistress of the imperial household, originally styled as Nur Mahal, the title of Nurjahan was conferred on her by Jahangir in March 1616.
- Nurjahan exhibited keen interest in the formulation of the state policy. She could understand the most intricate problems of state politics in an instant. Jahangir was impressed so much by her political acumen that he made her partner in the administration of the state. The brilliant statesmen, diplomats and administrators of Jahangir were convinced of the originality and freshness of her approach to the baffling problems of the state. They listened to her with rapt attention and very often, bowed to her decisions.
- Nurjahan's mother Asmat Begam was an intelligent and sagacious counsellor who is said to have exercised a steadying influence on the imperious, restless daughter and contributed a lot to her greatness.
- Nur Jahan's father Mirza Ghiyas Beg enjoyed the title of Itimad ud Daulah with a mansab of 2,000 zat and sawar. In 1615 he was granted a standard and drum, on the pattern of the princes of royal blood, and made a mansabdar of Six Thousands. The very next year, Itimad ud Daulah received the exalted mansab of Seven Thousands, the highest honour bestowed on any grandee of the empire after the princes.
- Nur Jahan's brother Abul Hasan was appointed Mir-i-Saman (master of the royal household) in 1611. Originally he was granted the title of Itiqad Khan, but three years later, he was honoured with the title of Asaf Khan and personal mansab of three thousands, which was raised to six thousands when he was promoted as the Prime Minister of the empire.
- Nur Jahan's two younger brothers were military generals, one of whom (Ibrahim Khan) became the governor of Bihar in 1615.
- Prince Khurram, the third son of Jahangir, was married in April 1612, to Arjmand Banu Begam, daughter of Asaf Khan.

- Francisco Pelsaert observes that he (Jahangir) is King in name only, while Nurjahan and her brother Asaf Khan hold the kingdom firmly in their hands.
- She had given her daughter Ladli Begam (from Sher Afghan) in marriage, in April 1621, to Shaharyar, the youngest son of Jahangir from a concubine and to whom she set up as a political rival against prince Khurram.
- She was treated as a model in the world of fashion. She revolutionised male and female dresses, and brought about innovations in the designs of gold and silver ornaments, household furnishings and decorations.
- The world of fashions owes the invention of the **Otto of the roses** (perfume) either to Nur Jahan or her illustrious mother.
- According to Muhammad Hadi (writer of *Tatima i Waqiar i Jahangir*) Nur Jahan was an asylum of all sufferers and helpless girls.
- Nurjahan used to sit on Jharokha with Jahangir, the coins also bore her name.
- After the accession of Shahjahan Nur Jahan retired from public life and was granted a pension of two lakhs of rupees per annum for her comfortable living.
- She died in 1645 and was buried in Jahangir's tomb at Shahadara.

SHAHJAHAN (1627-57)

PERSONAL LIFE OF SHAHJAHAN

- Khurram was the real name of Shahjahan.
- He was born of Jahangir's Rajput wife Jagat Gosain, daughter of Mota Raja Udai Singh of Jodhpur, on January

5, 1592 at Lahore.

- Married Arjumand Banu Begam (later Mumtaz Mahal) in Apr 1612 AD. Shahjahan made her the chief queen with the title of Malika i Zamani.
- She expired at the time of childbirth – her fourteenth child, a girl, at Burhanpur, on June 7, 1631. Mumtaj was buried at first in a garden at Burhanpur, but later on, her remains were brought to Agra and buried on the bank of the Jumna over which now stands Taj Mahal.

SHAHJAHAN AS A RULER

- Adopted the title of Abul Muzaffar Shihabuddin Muhammad Sahib Qiran Sani.
- Introduced scale of 1/3, 1/4 & 1/5 in Mansabdari System (A mansabdar was required to maintain only a quota of 1/3, 1/4 or 1/5 of his sawar rank).

- Created the office of Amin—his main function being assessment of revenue.
- Large scale famine took place in Gujarat and Deccan in 1630-32, Detailed account of famine is given by court chronicler Abdul Hamid Lahori and an English merchant-traveller Peter Mundy as well as John Marshall.
- Mahabat Khan was appointed as governor of Deccan. Mahabat Khan received the next highest mansab, after Asaf Khan, of Seven Thousand zat and swar with the title of khan I Khana.
- Foreign travellers Bernier (French), Tavernier (French) and Manucci (Italian) visited his court.
- His court historian was Abdul Hamid Lahori and wrote Padshanama.
- Got built the Peacock throne Takht-i-Taus (1628-35) and Taj Mahal (1632-58).
- Some of the Hind & Sanskrit poets of his court were Chintamani, Sunder Das & Acharya Saraswati.
- He was a great singer and had a melodious voice. Shahjahan influenced many sufis through his voice. He also wrote Washis.
- His poet laureate was Jagannath Pandit.
- Wednesday was fixed by the emperor for the administration of justice at the court.
- Re-imposed pilgrimage tax. Kavindracharya led a deputation of Banaras Pundits to the Mughal Emperor to seek abolition of the pilgrim tax in Banaras and Allahabad.
- Prince Aurangzeb was for most of the time, viceroy of the Deccan, where he carried number of revenue reforms with the assistance of a Persian revenue officer named Murshid Quli Khan. Murshid Quli Khan extended Todar Mal's system of survey and assessment in the Deccan.
- Prince Aurangzeb followed aggressive policy in the Deccan and south and wanted to annex completely Bijapur and Golconda but was prevented by Shahjahan.
- A canal was dug out from the river Ravi for the irrigation of lands in the vicinity of Lahore, at the cost of a lakh of rupees. He also got repaired the western Yamuna canal which had been constructed by Firoz Shah Tughluq. It was renamed by Shah Jahan as the Nehr i Bahisht.
- He revived the jagirdari system which diminished the extent of the Khalsa land considerably. The state

demand was increased from one-third to one-half of the gross produce.

- Witnessed a war of succession among his four sons. Later on imprisoned till death by Aurangzeb.
- Dara held the viceroyalty of north-western India, including the provinces of Lahore, Multan and Kabul.
- Shah Shuja was governor of Bengal while Aurangzeb was the viceroy of all the four Mughal provinces of the Deccan. Shah Jahan's youngest son Murad was the governor of Gujarat.
- Aurangzeb cut off water supply from the Jumna to the fort to compel his father to surrender.
- Shahjahan was lodged in the Shah Burj of the Agra fort for about seven years and a half. Breathed his last on January 22, 1662 at the age of seventy-four.
- Jahan Ara Begam, the eldest child of Shah Jahan, was not married for reasons of state. She voluntarily resigned her liberty and resided with her aged father. She served Shahjahan during his days of confinement. She was a disciple of Sufi saint Main Mir.
- Jahan Ara received recognition and acclaim as the most respected first lady of the realm till her death on September 16, 1681.
- Shahjahan was buried in the Taj Mahal, Agra, originally built as Mausoleum for his wife Mumtaz Mahal.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE OF SHAHJAHAN

- Made greatest contribution to architecture, introduced large scale use of marble, elegance and sophistication in buildings.
- Built magnificent edifices like the Red Fort (Red Stone), the Jama Masjid (Red Stone), the Taj Mahal (Marble), the Moti Masjid (Marble) at Agra.
- In 1639 Shahjahanabad was founded. The plan devised in the emperor's presence on May 12, 1639. The palace fort was completed and made fit for occupation after nine years and three months. Transferred the capital in 1648 to this new site.
- The throne was completed in the course of seven years under the care of Bebadal Khan.
- **Various experts associated with Taj Mahal**

- The chief designer of Taj Mahal was Ustad Ahmad Lahori who was honoured by the emperor with the lofty title of Nadir ul Asar.
- Mukarramat Khan and Mir Abdul Karim—the architects.
- Imanat Khan Shirazi—engraved the Arabic inscriptions.
- Ismail Khan Shirazi—engraved the Arabic inscriptions.
- Ismail Khan Rumi—the maker of the dome.
- Master Isa Khan —mason of Agra.
- Master Pira—carpenter of Delhi.
- Banuhar, Jhat Mal and Zorwar—the sculptors from Delhi.
- Ram Mal Kashmiri—the horticulturist who laid out the garden of the Taj.
- It took twenty-two year to complete the whole structure of Taj Mahal at a cost of three crores of rupees. The principal marble dome alone took twelve years to finish.
- The reputed painters of his day like Muhammad Qadir, Mir Hasan. Anup Chitra and Chintamani adorned the imperial court.
- The renowned musicians of the day, Jagan Nath and Janardhan Bhatt adorned the court of Shah Jahan. It is said that Shah Jahan was once so much over whelmed (fell under wajad) by the musical performance of Jagan Nath that he ordered him to be weighed against gold, silver, diamonds and other precious stones.
- Lal Khan was honoured with the title of **Guna Samundra**.
- Sur Sen was a master – player on the veena while Sukh Sen enchanted the courtiers with the masterly handling of the Rubab.

DEVELOPMENT OF EDUCATION AND LITERATURE

- A number of Hindi scholars and poets, including sunder Dass, Chinatamani and Kavindra Acharya enjoyed the state patronage. Jagan Nath, the celebrated musician of Shah Jahan’s reign, was also a born poet in Hindi; he was honoured by the emperor with the title of **Maha Kavi Rai**.
- Ibn Har Karan translated Ramayana and Munshi Banvali Dass Prabodh Chandrodaya into Persian. Abdur Rashid rendered Bij Ganit from Sanskrit into Persian.
- Mulla Farid, the greatest astrologer of the period, prepared the astralgal chart,

entitled Zich I Shajahani.

- Ataullah wrote a treatise on Arithmetic, algebra and menstruation and dedicated it to Shah Jahan and Dara.

- Rai Bhara Mal wrote Lubbut Tawarikh I Hind,

REVOLTS – REBELLIONS AND MILITARY CAMPAIGNS OF SHAHJAHAN

Rebellion of Khan-i-Jahan Lodi

- In 1526, Khan Jahan Lodhi replaced Mahabat Khan as the lieutenant of prince Parvez in the Deccan. He was

appointed Mughal viceroy of Deccan after the death of prince Parvez in 1526.

- He opposed the succession of Shahjahan and favoured the cause of Prince Shaharyar.

- His original name was Pir Khan.

- Khan-i-Jahan Lodi rebelled in 1628 AD. His rebellion continued during 1628 – 31.

- Khan Jahan fell fighting at Tal Segonda near Kalinjar.

Rebellion in Bundelkhand(1628 – 1635)

- Juhar Singh was the son of Bir Singh Bundella, the murderer of Abul Fazl.

- Orchha was his seat of governance.

- He was the supporter of Nurjahan but when Jujhar Singh offered submission and was pardoned.

- He revolted in 1628 and 1635 AD.

- Aurangzeb commanded the imperial armies against Bundelkhand.

- During this campaign Aurangzeb gave first proof of his religious intolerance by destructing the temple of Orchha.

- Champat Rai of Mahoba, one of the vassals of Orchha also revolted against the Mughals. His revolt continued for many years.

- His son Chhatrasal launched a war of freedom against the oppressive Mughal rule during the reign of Aurangzeb.

- Ousted the Portuguese from Hugli and occupied it in 1632. Two slave girls of queen Mumtaz Mahal were abducted by them.

- In 1641 Kangra valley was subjugated.

- In 1643 Gond insurrection in Malwa was crushed.

Shahjahan and Kandhar

- Kandhar was recaptured. Ali Mardan, the Persian governor of Kandhar surrendered the fort to the Mughals.

He admitted the Mughal advance – guard into the fort and delivered the control of the fort on February 28, 1638.

- The Persians laid siege to the stronghold in December; the besieged Mughal governor Daulat Khan held out gallantly for 57 days before his recapitulation on February 11, 1649, owing to the non – receipt of reinforcements from Kabul.

- The three unsuccessful expeditions to Kandahar cost the Mughal government twelve crores of rupees and five thousand lives of the soldiery.

Balkh Campaign

- Balkh Campaign was launched during 1646 – 1650 AD.
- The expedition to Central Asia cost the imperial exchequer over four crores of rupees. **DECCAN POLICY OF SHAHJAHAN**

- Completed the annexation of Ahmadnagar in 1633.

- Fath Khan son of Malik Amber killed his master and accepted suzerainty of Shahjahan. **Shahjahan and Bijapur**

- The sultan of Bijapur offered submission to the Mughals after some hesitation, and the treaty of peace was signed on May 6, 1636.

- According to the terms of the treaty. Bijapur acknowledged the suzerainty of the Mughal emperor; Khutba was read and coins were struck in the name of Shah Jahan.

- A sum of rupees twenty lakhs was paid by Adil Shah as war indemnity, and he further promised not to aid Shahji Bhonsla against the Mughals.

- In return, the Mughals not only handed over the entire state of Bijapur to Adil Shah but also gave him additional control of fifty parganas of the erstwhile state of Ahmadnagar.

- This treaty of peace between Bijapur and the Mughals remained in operation for twenty years. **Shahjahan and Golkunda**

- The treaty of peace was signed on May 26. 1636, according to which, Golkunda acknowledge the over lord

ship of Shah Jahan.

- The name of Shah of Persia was excluded from the Khutba which was now read in the name of the Mughal emperor.
- Golconda agreed to pay an annual tribute of two hundred thousand huns, equivalent to six lakhs of rupees, with retrospective effect.
- Aurangzeb was appointed as the viceroy of the Deccan and himself left Burhanpur for Agra in July 1636.
- But he was abruptly dismissed in 1644.
- At the intervention of Jahan Ara Begam Aurangzeb was sent to Gujarat as its governor in May 1644.
- Aurangzeb was appointed as the viceroy of the Deccan for the second time in 1652.

AURANGZEB (1658-1707)

EARLY LIFE

- Muhiuddin Muhammad Aurangzeb, styled Alamgir, was born on October 24, 1618 at Dohad (situated on the frontier of Gujrat and Malwa).
- He was the third son of Shah Jahan from his celebrated wife Mumtaz Mahal.
- At a very young age, he mastered the holy Quran and Hadis. He was the only Mughal prince to have attained this distinction.
- As a puritan, Aurangzeb plied the trade of copyist and cap – maker to earn his livelihood. Two brilliantly written copies of the holy book were sent by him to Mecca and Medina respectively.
- He was a proficient player of veena.
- His first wife was Dilras Begam. She was officially styled Rabia ud Daurani. She died at Aurangabad and in her memory Aurangzeb made her tomb there. This tomb is also known as Black Taj.
- Udaipuri Mahal (a Georgian slave girl) was the darling of his old age.
- He was the viceroy of the Deccan before the war of succession.
- His first independent command of the armed forces, when he was in his teens, saw the destruction of the magnificent Hindu temple of Orchha.
- Aurangzeb revived his memories by ordering the desecration of the historic temple of Chintaman in Ahmadabad. A cow was slaughtered within the premises of the temple which was converted into a mosque, named Quwal ul Islam

Masjid.

- Had won over Mir Jumla, Chief Minister of Golconda and invaded it in 1656, but was cut short by Shahjahan.
- In war of succession - Jahanara supported Dara Shukoh, while Roshanara supported Aurangzeb.
- Sulaiman Shukoh, son of Dara, had sought protection of Prithvi Singh, Raja of Garhwal but he was handed over to Aurangzeb. He was imprisoned at Gwalior fort and executed in 1662.
- Two minor sons— Dara's son Siphir Shukoh and Murad's Izid Bakhsh were left alive, who were later married to daughters of Aurangzeb.

AURANGZEB FOUGHT THE FOLLOWING BATTLES OF SUCCESSION WITH HIS BROTHERS

Battle of Bahadurgarh Battle of Dharmat (near Ujjain)

Battle of Samugarh (near Agra)

Battle of Rupnagar (near Mathura)

Battle of Khajwah

Battle of Deorai (near Ajmer) Feb. 1658 Sulaiman Shukoh and Raja Jai Singh of Amber defeated Shah Shuja. 15 April 1658 Royal troops under Raja Jaswant Singh and Karim Khan were

defeated by the combined army of Aurangzeb and Murad. The Rajputs retreated towards Jodhpur. When the queen of Jaswant Singh came to know of the debacle of Dharmat, she refused to admit her husband and the defeated warriors into the fort.

29 May 1658 Dara Shukoh was defeated by Aurangzeb.

25 June 1658 Murad was captured at Mathura and confined to Salimgarh fort and later Gwalior fort. He was executed in 1661.

5 January 1659 Shah Shuja was defeated by Aurangzeb. Shah Shuja fled to Arakan where he was killed by the Meghs in May 1660.

Mar 1659 Defeated Dara Shukoh second time. Dara took shelter with a Baluchi chief Malik Jiwan of Dadar whom he had once saved from the anger of his father Shah Jahan but was surrendered to Aurangzeb by Malik Jiwan. Dara was buried in the tomb of Humayun.

AURANGZEB AS A RULER

- He formally ascended to throne of Delhi on July 21, 1658 but held his coronation in abeyance till Dara and

Shuja had been got rid of.

- Aurangzeb celebrated his coronation with great pomp and show at the Red fort of Delhi on June 5, 1659.
- He assumed the title of Abul Muzaffar Muhiuddin Muhammad Aurangzeb Bahadur Alamgir Badshah i Ghazi.
- Came to power after winning the war of succession and defeating his three brothers. Dara, Shuja and Murad.
- Dara's son Siphir was sent to Gwalior as prisoner. Dara's eldest son Suleiman Shikoh took shelter in Garhwal

but he was also captured and lodged in the fort of Gwalior where he was poisoned to death in May 1662.

- Aurangzeb adopted the title of Alamgir (Conqueror of the world), Padshah (Emperor) and Ghazi (Holy Warrior).
- Forbade singing at court.
- Re-imposed Pilgrims Tax.
- Forbade the cultivation of "Bhang".
- Built Pearl Mosque (Moti Masjid) inside the Red Fort at Delhi.
- Prohibited Hindu religious fairs & festivals.
- Regarded as 'Zinda Pir' (a living saint).
- Appointed a board of Ulemas to compile a digest on law which came to be known as Fatwa-i-Alamgiriya.
- Annexed Bijapur in 1686 to Mughal empire.
- Annexed Golkunda in 1687 to Mughal empire.
- He did away with the Pandari or the Octroi duties and Rahadari or the tax charged on the inland transport.

The people of the towns were given relief by the abolition of the notorious house tax while the peasants were asked not to pay the *abwabs* or the miscellaneous taxes other than the land revenue.

- The tax on food grains was abolished so as to bring down the prices of the edibles. a long list of the taxes,

which are said to have been replaced by Aurangzeb, included a tax levied on the Hindus at the birth of a son, and the one charged from them at the time of immersing the remains of the dead into the Ganges.

- The practice of engraving kalima on the coins was stopped so that it might not be desecrated in the hands of the non-Muslims.
- Aurangzeb stopped the celebration of the famous Nauroz or the New Year Day which had been adopted by his predecessors from the Persian tradition.
- He abolished the solar calendar as it resembled the system of the fire – worshippers. In his zeal for upholding Muhammadan rule Aurangzeb directed that the year of the reign should be reckoned by the Arab lunar year and months and that in the revenue accounts also the lunar (calendar) should be preferred to the solar.
- The office of the Muhtasib regained its importance with its traditional religious powers and functions. The Muhtasib, as censors of public morals, began to be appointed in all important towns to enforce Islamic law and practices to improve the moral and spiritual tone of the Muslim society.
- Sheikh Sarmad, one of the prominent Sufi associates of Dara, with a large following, was put to death on charge of heresy.
- The worst sufferers among the Muslims were, however, the members of Ismailia or Bohra community of Gujarat.
- Abolished the practice of Sati (1663), Jharokha-Darshan, music and singing.
- Appointed Muhtasib (censors of public morals) to enforce Quranic law strictly.
- Discontinued the ceremony of weighing the emperor (Tuladan) on his birthdays.
- Aurangzeb banned music at the imperial court on the plea that he had no time for amusements. He dismissed all the musicians and singers employed at the court and stopped the stipends of all the masters of fine arts. The play of music was not to be allowed in the celebration of the Muslim festivals either.

- By a royal decree, the frescoes on the walls of some of the palace pavilions, both at Delhi and Agra, were destroyed.
- The statues of Jaimal and Fattah, seated on elephants, which had been installed by Akbar at the Agra fort, were demolished.
- The earlier emperors used to celebrate Holi and Diwali with great enthusiasm and love. Aurangzeb banned the celebration of these and other Hindu festivals at the court. The art galleries were deprived of the best portraits, and the furnishings of the court as well as the harem which smacked of Hindu designs were removed.
- The Hindu astrologers were turned out of the court unceremoniously although the Muslim astrologer continued to enjoy the royal patronage.
- Jharokha Darshan was stopped because it was thought to be an imitation of the Hindu tradition.
- The birthday and coronation festivals of the emperor were also simplified.
- The ceremony of tuladan or weighing of the emperor on his birthdays was given up.
- In 1670, the Mughal courtiers were ordered that they should neither shake nor wave their hands by way of salutations to each other but simply speak out salaam a lekam—peace be on you.
- The use of wine and bhang was banned by Aurangzeb on pain of mutilation of limbs.
- The Muslim ladies were prohibited to visit the shrines of the holy men.
- By the year 1678 a perfectly Islamic atmosphere prevailed at the imperial court. Most of the broad – minded Muslim courtiers and Rajput nobles were either dead or relegated to the background, giving place to the orthodox Sunnis and religious bigots. They acted as counsellors of the emperor in determining the state policy.
- On April 2, 1679 he imposed Jaziya.
- Executed Shambhaji (Son of Shivaji) in 1690.
- His tomb is at Daulatabad.
- Shaista khan, who succeeded Mir Jumla as governor of Bengal, annexed the

island of Sondip, a stronghold of pirates.

- Revolt of Afridis (under Akmal Khan) in 1672 was suppressed.
- Revolt of Yusufzais (under Bhagu) was suppressed in 1666.
- At his order all the paintings in court was white-washed.
- In 1659 he prohibited construction of new temples.
- In 1668 Hindu religious festivals were forbidden.
- In 1669 ordered to demolish schools and temples of infidels.
- Temples of Somnath (Patan), Vishwanath (Varanasi) and Keshav Rai (Mathura) were demolished.
- His sons became rebellious the last days of his reign. Foreseeing an imminent danger to the empire, he wrote to his son Azam—" I came alone and am going alone. I have not done well to the country and the people, and of the future there is no hope".
- In November 1665, Aurangzeb came to know that some Hindus in Gujarat had again built the temples which had been demolished during his period of governorship. He ordered that all such temples should be pulled down. Having come to know in October 1666 that, in the temple of Keshav Rai at Mathura, there was a stone railing donated by Dara, the emperor ordered it to be pulled down by the Faujdar of Mathura.
- On April 9, 1669, the emperor ordered the governors of all the provinces to demolish the schools and temples of the infidels and strongly put down their teaching and religious practices.
- The Octroi or the custom duty was charged by the government at the rate of five per cent of the value of goods; in April 1665, this rate was cut to 2.5 per cent for the Muslim traders in order to give them an edge over their Hindu counterparts.
- In 1671 he issued an ordinance that all the district rent controllers (Karoris) in the crown lands must be Muslims. The provincial governors and talukdars were ordered to dismiss the Hindu head-clerks (Peshkars) and accountants (Diwan) and replace them by the Muslims. It created quite a stir

throughout the country and because of the paucity of experienced Muslim hands, the revenue establishment came to practically a standstill. On realising his folly, Aurangzeb modified the ordinance to the extent that half the Peshkars of the revenue ministry and paymaster's departments might be the Hindus and the other half Muslims.

REVOLTS AND REBELLIONS

- Aurangzeb confronted a number of rebellions during his rule.

Revolts of Jats

- Under Gokala, Rajaram and Churaman successively revolted .
- The first organised demonstration of protest against Aurangzeb's policy of religious intolerance was given

by the Jats of Mathura and its neighbourhood.

- Mathura, being one of the holy places of the Hindus, situated so close to the imperial capital of Agra,

wrankled in the eyes of Aurangzeb.

- In August 1660, he appointed Abdun Nabi Khan as the Faujdar of Mathura. He held this charge for about a

decade and proved more fanatic than even his royal master. He built a jama Masjid on the ruins of a Hindu

temple in the heart of the town. It was he who pulled down the railing of the Keshav Rai temple at the

bidding of Aurangzeb. His continuous disregard for the sanctity of the holy shrines of the Hindus and ill –

treatment of the Jat peasantry of the district provoked the latter into open rebellion.

- Under the leadership of Gokal, the Zamindar of Tilpat, they refused to pay the land revenue and turned out the government officials from the countryside. The punitive expedition led by Abdun Nabi against them was repulsed. The Faujdar himself lost his life in the encounter with the rebels in 1669. It called forth the imperial wrath. The revolt was suppressed with an iron hand. Gokal was taken prisoner with family and

brought to Agra. He was tortured to death while his family was forcibly converted to Islam.

- The populace of the countryside around Mathura and Agra simmered with discontent over the religious and political tyranny let loose upon them. They found new leaders from among them to continue the struggle against the unjust Mughal emperor. They were Raja Ram of Sansani and Ramchera of Soghar.

- Raja Ram fell fighting the imperial troops in July 1688 and his place, as leader of the Jats, was taken by his nephew Churaman. The latter continued the armed struggle against the Mughal rule till the death of

Aurangzeb and laid the foundation of the independent state of Bharatpur in the heart of the Mughal empire. **Revolts of the Satnamis**

- The Satnamis were a religious sect of the Hindus who inhabited the territories of Narnaul and Mewat in the vicinity of Delhi.

- It was founded by a recluse named Birbhan of Bijesar, near Narnaul in 1543. They reared up families and earned their living by cultivation and business. They shaved their head and face, including eye-brows, and were nick-named Mundiya Sadhus (clean-shaven saints) according to Khafi Khan.

- In 1672, a foot-soldier (Piada) of the local revenue-collector (shiqdar) picked a quarrel with a Satnami peasant and injured his clean shaven head with a stick which was treated as an insult to the religious beliefs and practices of the Satnamis. Therefore, a party of the Satnami peasants beat the soldier to death. The shiqdar sent his contingent to arrest the murderers but it was beaten back. The punitive expedition of the government led to a general uprising of the Satnamis who declared their holy war upon the unjust Mughal emperor. The victorious rebels killed the Faujdar of Narnaul and established their independent rule there.

They held the district by means of outposts and collected land revenue from the countryside.

- At length, by the exertions of Raja Bishen Singh, Hamid Khan and others, several thousands of the several thousands of the Satnamis were killed, and the rest were put to flight, so that the outbreak was quelled. **Revolts of the Sikhs**

- The uncalled for execution of Guru Arjun Dev in May 1606 by Jahangir had compelled the peace-loving Sikhs to take up arms for their self-defence under the guidance of their sixth Guru Hargobind (1606 – 45).

- The latter declared himself to be the spiritual as well as temporal head of the Sikhs and adopted a new policy (Policy of Miri and Piri) which gradually transformed the Sikh devotees into soldier-saints.

- The young Guru had to suffer imprisonment in the fort of Gwalior for a couple of years during the reign of Jahangir. The new policy adopted by Guru, Hargobind brought the Sikhs into armed conflict with the Mughal government under Shah Jahan.

- After heroically fighting three battles with the Mughals, the Guru retreated to the foothills of the Shivaliks and set up his abode at Kiratpur, on the borders of the Kahlur (Bilaspur) state. The place being situated away from the main highways and centres of mughal administration was comparatively safe, and yet it was not far away from the hearts and homes of his followers.

- The seventh Guru Har Rai (1645–61) devoted himself exclusively to the missionary work. During his period, the Sikhs remained at peace with the Mughal government. Aurangzeb kept a vigilant eye on the Mughal government. Aurangzeb kept a vigilant eye on the activities of the Sikhs from the very beginning of his reign.

- On a complaint received from some Muslims regarding the alleged anti-Islamic contents of the Adi Granth, he called Guru Har Rai to Delhi for explanation. The latter excused himself but sent his elder son Ram Rai to the Mughal court. Ram Rai, overawed by the Mughal might and tempted by the royal favours, played a

subservient role to Aurangzeb and was, accordingly, deprived of his nomination to the guruship by his father. As a result, on the death of Guru Har Rai 1661, his second son Har Krishan, then a child of five or six, became the eighth Guru of the Sikhs. Ram Rai's made efforts to secure the guru-gaddi for himself with the intervention of the Mughal court but failed.

- The child Guru Har Krishan was called by Aurangzeb to Delhi and kept under his watchful eyes till his death in 1664.

- The ninth guru of the Sikhs, Tegh Bahadur (1664–75), better known among his disciples as Deg Bahadur for his bounteous nature and peaceful dispositions, was the grandson of Guru Arjan Dev and the youngest son of Guru Hargobind. Born in 1621 he was past forty-three at the time of his accession to the guruship which was disputed by a number of impostors with the connivance of the corrupt masands. Tegh Bahadur's claim of the guru-gaddi, though based on a vague remark and parting indication of the child Guru that his successor lived at Bakala, was justified on grounds of his virtuous character and the ability with which he provided spiritual as well as temporal guidance to the Sikhs.

- In order to allow the dust to settle on the dispute about his succession, Tegh Bahadur left Punjab with his family and some devoted Sikhs on a missionary tour to the eastern India. His wife, Gujari, who was in her advanced stage of pregnancy, had to be left at Patna under the care of her brother Kripal Chand and Nanaki, the aged mother of the Guru. They were looked after by the Sikh sangat of Patna. It was here that Gobind Rai (the future Guru Gobind Singh), the only son of Tegh Bahadur, was born on December 26, 1666. The latter heard of his birth when he was stationed at Dacca. In Assam, Guru Tegh Bahadur came into contact with Raja Ram Singh, son of Raja Jai Singh, who was engaged in warfare with the Ahoms. According to the Sikh

tradition, the Guru brought about a compromise between the Mughal armies and the Ahoms and effected

peace. This event took place at Dhubri on the bank of the Brahmaputra.

- In 1673 – 74, the Guru toured the Malwa region and the Punjab extensively and encouraged his followers to

shun fear and resist the religious tyranny of the Mughal government.

- Aurangzeb flew into rage; he immediately sent orders for the arrest of Guru Tegh Bahadur. The latter, along with five disciples, was brought in chains to Delhi and given the choice between Islam and death. The Guru chose the latter and was tortured to death on November 11, 1675.

- After the execution of the ninth guru Teg Bahadur, the Sikhs were led by the tenth guru Govind Singh.

- The young Guru was styled as Sacha Padshah .

- The Guru's literary activities included the translations of the Ramayana, Mahabharata and the Puranas into Punjabi and the preparation of the biographies of the great Hindu heroes of the past, with the assistance of a galaxy of scholars and poets from Benaras and Patna. Being a scholar of Hindi, Sanskrit and Persian; and a born poet, he had himself composed the celebrated japji Sahib, Chandi Charittar, Ukat Bilas and a part of the Krishna avtar while at Anandpur. At Paonta, the Guru completed the Krishan Avtar, and wrote Shastar Nam mala Puran, Chandi di Var, Pakhyan Charittar, Akal Ustat, Ram Avtar, and his autobiography, entitled Bachittar Natak.

- He wrote a letter in Persian verse to Aurangzeb. The letter, entitled Zafarnama, was sent to the emperor

through Daya Singh and Dharam Singh. In this letter, the Guru condemned the policy of religious persecution as adopted by Aurangzeb, and exposed the treachery of the Mughal commanders at Anandpur who broke the written agreement and massacred the unsuspecting Sikhs and their families.

- On the receipt of his communication, Aurangzeb invited the Guru to meet him in the south where he was engaged in life and death struggle against the Marathas. Therefore, the Guru set for the Deccan through

Rajasthan, in the company of a few thousands of his warriors. He heard of Aurangzeb's death near Baghaur in Rajasthan in April 1707. Thereupon, Guru Gobind Singh returned to Delhi to meet the powers that be.

- Immediately after the death of his father, prince Muazzam, now styled Bahadur Shah, contacted the Sikhs through his officials and expressed his desire to make a settlement with them. The Guru met him at Agra in July and was received with open arms by Bahadur Shah. As the latter had to move with his armies to the south to fight a war of succession with his youngest brother Kam Bakhsh, the Guru also accompanied him to the Deccan.

- They reached Nanded on the bank of the river Godavari where the imperial troops halted for about two months. Guru Gobind Singh set up his camp at a short distance from the imperial armies. It was here that the Guru was fatally wounded with a dagger, in the beginning of October 1708, by a Pathan, probably named

Jamashid Khan. The Guru died of the wound on October 18, 1708, at the age of forty-two. **Aurangzeb and the Rajputs**

- The state of Jodhpur had been left under the charge of his heir - apparent Prithvi Singh. It is said that Aurangzeb called him to the court where at the end of a flattering entertainment he was presented by the emperor with a poisoned dress of honour; he wore the dress and died of poison that very day. The old and grief-stricken Maharaja Jaswant Singh died at Jamrud on December 10, 1678. On the receipt of intelligence, Aurangzeb forthwith despatched the Mughal troops for the annexation of Jodhpur (Marwar); and he himself shifted his court to Ajmer to facilitate the task.

- Aurangzeb returned to Delhi on April 2, 1679 after the annexation of Marwar and that very day, he ordered the re-imposition of Jaziya.

- The widowed queens of the Maharaja gave birth to two sons at Lahore in February 1679.

- Rajputs by Rathors of Marwar after the death of Jaswant Singh, on account of Aurangzeb's refusal to recognise Ajit Singh (Posthumous son of Jaswant Singh) as the legal heir.
- Raja Jai Singh of Amber, the grandson of Raja Man Singh, carried fire and sword into the Maratha territories and brought Shivaji to his knees at Purandhar in 1665.
- Thereafter, he was deputed on the Bijapur front to extirpate the Shia kingdom.
- Worn out by age and totally exhausted, he was recalled to the court from Aurangabad in May 1667; and he died a broken hearted man at Burhanpur on July 2, 1667.
- Likewise, Maharaja Jaswant Singh of Jodhpur had been sent to fight the turbulent Pathan tribes of the north western frontier with the hope that he might end his career there.
- Bundelas revolt was led by Champat Rai & Chhatrasal.

Aurangzeb and the Assamese

- Taking advantage of the civil strife between the Mughal princes, the Ahom ruler of Cooch – Bihar in Assam invaded the Mughal territories of Kamrup and occupied its capital Gauhati. The Ahoms were an off – shoot of the Shan tribes of Burma.
- Aurangzeb signalled the beginning of his reign by ordering Mir Jumla, the governor of Bengal to launch a campaign for the conquest of Assam.
- Ahoms were defeated and their capital Garhgaon was occupied by the Mughals. They, however, failed to maintain their hold over the conquered territories because of difficult terrain and hostile climate.
- Mir Jumla ordered his troops to retreat via Dacca but himself died of fever on the way in April 1663. Aurangzeb appointed his maternal uncle Shaista Khan, son of Asaf Khan, (the celebrated brother of Nur Jahan and the prime minister of the empire during the reigns of Jahangir and Shah Jahan) as the new governor of the Bengal.
- Gauhati was finally lost in 1681.

Aurangzeb and the Portuguese

- Mir Jumla conquered Chatgaon (mod. Chittagong) and turned out the Portuguese from the delta of the

Brahmaputra.

- His successor Shaista Khan prepared a flotilla of 300 boats and stormed Chatgaon by land and sea; after considerable resistance, its Portuguese and Magh defenders laid down their arms on January 26, 1666.
- The town was renamed as Islamabad.

PART – IV MODERN INDIA

TOPIC

1

LATER MUGHALS

BAHADUR SHAH-I (1707-12)

- Aurangzeb died in 1707 at the age of 89 years. He had three surviving sons- Prince Muazzam, Muhammad

Azam and Kam Bakhsh. His death triggered the war of succession among his three sons.

- Prince Muazzam was the Governor of Kabul, Azam was the Governor of Gujrat and Kam Baksh was the Governor of Bijapur at the time of the death of Aurangzeb.

- Prince Muazzam succeeded to the throne with the title of Bahadur Shah I after defeating his other two

brothers. He defeated and killed Azam at Jajau (near Gwalior) on 18 June 1707.

Kam Bakhsh defeated and

killed in a battle fought near Hyderabad on 13 January 1709.

- This was the last battle of succession in which Royal princes played deciding role. After this nature and

character of the battles of succession changed and hereafter the main role was played by the nobles in

deciding the issue of succession.

- Title –Shah Alam I

- He was an old man of 63 years at the time of sitting on throne because of this he did not have energy and

drive to pursue aggressive measures. He adopted pacific policies and conciliatory attitude towards all the

groups.

- Bahadur Shah released Sahu, the son of Shambhaji, who was in jail since 1689 AD on the advice of Zulfiqar

Khan. Sahu was captured by Aurangzeb. It was expected that the release of Sahu will result in a civil war

between Sahu and Tara Bai for Maratha throne and this will keep the Marathas engrossed in their affairs.

- He reversed some of the orthodox religious policies of Aurangzeb. Guru

Govind Singh was given high mansab to conciliate the Sikhs.

- Bahadur Shah fought war against Banda Bahadur, the Sikh leader who had rebelled after the death of Guru Govind Singh. Banda was defeated at Lohgarh and the Mughal forces reoccupied Sirhind in January 1711. The Bundela Chief Chhatrasal and also Jat chief Churaman supported the emperor against Banda Bahadur.
- The Rajput chiefs were confirmed in their estates. Watan Jagirs of Mewar and Malwa which were annexed by Aurangzeb were restored to their rulers.
- Bahadur Shah made peace with the Bundela Chief Chhatrasal and also Jat chief Churaman. They supported him against the Sikh leader Banda Bahadur.
- The provinces of Deccan were known as **Do-Amils** because these provinces obeyed the dual authority of Mughals and Marathas.
- Bahadur Shah was complacent and negligent in the matters of administration because of this he came to be known as **Shah-i-Bekhabar**.
- He died on 27th February 1712 but his dead body was not buried for about a month due to beginning of war of succession among his four sons i.e. Jahandar Shah, Azim-us-Shan, Rafi-us-Shan and Jahan Shah. He was buried at Delhi.

JAHANDAR SHAH (1712-13)

- Jahandar Shah emerged victorious in the war of succession with the help of Zulfiqar Khan (a prominent leader of Irani Party). He ascended to the throne after killing all his brothers.
- This success was celebrated by grand illumination of Delhi three times in one month itself.
- Jahandar Shah appointed Zulfiqar Khan as his Wazir. Zulfiqar Khan was the son of Asad Khan. All the powers of administration were virtually in the hand of Zulfiqar Khan. But he also did not take much interest in administrative matters and delegated his official work to his favourite person Subhag Chand.

- Jahandar Shah started the practice of revenue farming or Ijaradari system. The right to collect land revenue was given to the highest bidder.
- Jai Singh of Amber was made Governor of Malwa and he was also given the title of Mirza Raja Sawai. Ajit Singh of Marwar was made Governor of Gujarat and he was given title of Maharaja.
- Jahandar Shah was completely under the influence of a lady named Lal Kunwar.
- The Marathas were granted the Chauth and Sardeshmukhi of Deccan on the condition these taxes would be collected by Mughal officers and then will be given to Marathas.
- The treachery and deception increased so much during his reign that it came to be said that the 'Owl dwelt in eagle's nest and the crow took place of nightingale'.
- He was defeated by his nephew Farrukhsiyar in a battle fought near Agra. Jahandar Shah took refuge with Vakil-i-Mutluq Asad Khan. Jahandar Shah was killed by Asad Khan at the instance of Farrukhsiyar.

FARRUKHSIYAR (1713-1719)

- Farrukhsiyar was son of Azim-us-Shan. He was at Patna at the time of his father's downfall. He collected troops and defeated Jahandar Shah outside Agra on 11th February 1713 with help of Sayyid brothers Abdullah Khan and Hussain Ali. Jahandar Shah fled to Delhi where he was betrayed by Asad Khan and Zulfiqar Khan. Jahandar Shah was imprisoned and later executed at the orders of Farrukhsiyar.
- Farrukhsiyar ascended to throne with the help of Sayyid brothers. Zulfiqar Khan was murdered at the instance of Farrukhsiyar.
- Sayyid brothers had emerged important nobles of Mughal Empire under Bahadur Shah I. Prince Azim-us-Shan appointed Hussain Ali to an important assignment in Bihar. In 1711 Prince Azim-us-Shan appointed Abdullah Khan as his deputy in the province of Allahabad. Because of these favours only the Sayyid brothers espoused the cause of Farrukh Siyar, the son of Prince Azim-us-Shan. They were the leaders of the Hindustani Party.
- Abdullah Khan was made the Wazir with title of **Qutb-ul-Mulk** and Hussain Ali was made Mir Bakshi with the title of **Umdat-ul-Mulk and Amir-ul-Umra**.
- Sayyid brothers adopted tolerant religious policies towards Hindus. They abolished the religious tax Jizya. Pilgrimage taxes were also abolished.
- Raja Ajit Singh of Marwar married his daughter with Farrukh Siyar.

- Chin Qulich Khan or Nizam-ul-Mulk was made governor of the six provinces of Deccan with his HQ at Aurangabad. According to Khafi Khan he was the ablest noble in the empire. He was one of important leaders of Turani party.
- Banda Bahadur, the Sikh leader, was defeated and captured at Gurdaspur. He was put to death at Delhi on 19 June 1716 AD.
- Muhammad Murad or Itikad Khan was an important noble from Kashmir who exercised influence over the emperor.
- Jat Leader Churaman was defeated in 1717 but was pardoned at the instance of the Wazir Sayyid Abdullah Khan.
- In 1717 Farrukh Siyar granted right to duty free trade throughout Mughal dominion to the English trading company in return of annual payment of Rs. 3000 only. English were also given right to rent additional territory around Calcutta.
- During his reign four factions of nobles emerged. Sayyid brothers were the leaders of the Hindustani Party. Other groups were Turani nobles (they were from central Asia), Irani nobles (they were from Persia and Khurasan) and Afghani nobles.
- The Sayyid brothers dominated the court. They virtually became king makers. This overbearing attitude of Sayyid brothers and their sudden rise generated jealousy among the Turani and Irani nobles. Mir Jumla was the most important noble among their opponents. He enjoyed the support of Turani nobles. The emperor also trusted Mir Jumla. Emperor Farrukh Siyar had allowed Mir Jumla to sign the documents in the name of emperor. This was opposed by Sayyid brothers.
- The issue of Subedari of Deccan further increased the differences between the Sayyid brothers and the emperor. Hussain Ali demanded the Subedari of Deccan for himself but this was refused by the emperor. The emperor tried to get rid of the Sayyid brothers but they outsmarted him.
- At first Emperor Farrukh Siyar asked Daud Khan, the Subedar of Gujarat to kill Hussain Ali but Hussain Ali got information about this plot and he himself killed Daud Khan.
- Hussain Ali signed a deal (known as **Truce of Delhi**) with the Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath. He granted concessions to the Marathas including right to collect Chauth and Sardeshmukhi in the Mughal provinces of Deccan. The Peshwa, in return, agreed to provide armed assistance in case of any fight for supremacy at the Mughal Court. This is called Magna Carta of the Maratha dominion in the Deccan.

- Farrukh Siyar resented this arrangement. In the atmosphere of mutual distrust the Sayyid brothers strangled Farrukh Siyar to death on 28th April 1719.

RAFI-UD-DARAJAT (28 FEB. to 4 JUNE 1719)

- He was son of Rafi-us-Shan (son of Bahadur Shah-I). He was placed on throne by the Sayyid brothers after the execution of Farrukh Siyar. The agreement made by Hussain Ali with Maratha Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath was ratified by him.
- He died very soon due to excessive consumption of liquor.

RAFI-UD-DAULAH (6 JUNE to 17 SEP.1719)

- He was another son of Rafi-us-Shan (son of Bahadur Shah-I). He was placed on throne by the Sayyid brothers after the sudden death of Rafi-ud-Darajat.
- He adopted the title of Shah Jahan-II. His activities were controlled by Sayyid brothers. He was not even allowed to attend Friday prayers. He was not allowed to go out for hunting. He was not even allowed to interact with the nobles.
- He also died very soon due to dysentery.

MUHAMMAD SHAH (1719-48)

- His real name was Raushan Akhtar. He was the son of Jahan Shah. He sat on throne with the title of Muhammad Shah. He was placed on throne by Sayyid brothers after the death of Rafi-ud-Daulah. For more than a year he remained a prisoner of Sayyid brothers.
- Muhammad Shah was a pleasure loving person of loose morals. He was fond of luxurious style of living, and hence called Rangila. He was personally interested in music and got many Hindi music books translated into Persian.
- According to Rustam Ali, the author of Tarikh-i-Hind, Muhammad Shah was negligent of his duties. He was not even aware that he had any duties to perform.
- Sayyid brothers gave important positions to Hindus. Ratan Chand (a grain dealer) was made Diwan and was given title of Raja. He enjoyed great influence in running of government and all ministerial matters.
- About the influence of Sayyid brothers, Khafi Khan Says “All the offices and the servants around the emperor were, as before, the servants of Sayyid brothers”.
- Jai Singh of Amber and Ajit Singh of Jodhpur were supporters of Sayyid brothers. Ajit Singh was made Subedar of Ahmadnagar. He forbade the slaughter

of cows there.

- Jazia was finally abolished by Muhammad Shah in 1720.
- The domination of Sayyid brothers was deeply resented by other groups of the court. The Turani nobles formed the strongest group at the court. A conspiracy was hatched by Itimad-ud-Daula, Saadat Khan and Haidar Khan. The emperor's mother was also privy to this plot. Haidar Khan stabbed and killed Hussain Ali on 9th October 1720.
- Sayyid Abdullah Khan tried to strengthen his position by putting Muhammad Ibrahim on the throne in place of Muhammad Shah but he was imprisoned on 13th November 1720. After two years of imprisonment he was poisoned to death on 11th October 1722.
- After the fall of Sayyid brothers Emperor Muhammad Shah fell into clutches of Koki Jiu and eunuch Hafiz Khidmatgar Khan.
- Md. Shah enjoyed the support of Turani nobles whose leaders were Nizam-ul-Mulk and Muhammad Amin Khan.
- Muhammad Amin Khan was made Wazir by him after the fall of Sayyid brothers.
- After his death in January 1721 the office of Wazir was conferred upon Nizam-ul-Mulk. Nizam –ul-Mulk attempted to initiate various kinds of administrative reforms, but on going power struggle did not allow him to function smoothly. Dissatisfied with the behaviour of emperor he left the court and moved to Deccan. He founded the independent state of Hyderabad after defeating Mughal governor of Deccan, Mubariz Khan in the Battle of Shar-Khed in 1724.
- Murshid Quli Khan was appointed as the governor and Subedar of Bengal. He also established his autonomous position in the province of Bengal.
- Saadat Khan Burhan-ul-Mulk was made Subedar of Awadh. He also followed similar course and established his rule there. But these provinces never declared their independence formally and continued to accept the overlordship of the Mughal emperor.
- Jat leader Badan Singh founded the Jat state of Bharatpur. He called himself as feudatory of Swai Jai Singh of Amber, who was appointed Faujdar of Mathura region by Farrukh Siyar to contain the Jat movement.
- Rohilla Chief founded an independent state of Rohilkhand.
- After Nizam-ul-Mulk the office of Wazir was conferred upon **Qamruddin/ Qamar-ud-din**. He was son of Muhammad Amin Khan.
- After some time Qamruddin was dismissed from his post and **Raushan-ud-Daula** was made Wazir of Mughal Empire. He was found guilty of

misappropriating enormous sum of money and he was also dismissed from his post.

- Nadir Shah attacked India in 1739. Mughal army fought the Battle of Karnal on 24 February 1739 with Nadir Shah but the Mughal forces were defeated. Nizam-ul-Mulk, Qamar-ud-din, Khan-I-Dauran and Saadat Khan fought on the side of the Mughal emperor at Karnal. Khan-I-Dauran (Mir Bakshi) died in the battle field.
- Nizam-ul-Mulk played the role of peace maker. Payment of Rs. 50 lakhs was promised to Nadir Shah for making the peace. 20 lakh rupees were to be paid immediately and remaining 30 lakhs were to be paid in three instalments of Rs. 10 lakhs each at Lahore, Attock and Kabul respectively. Pleased by diplomacy of the Nizam, he was made Mir Bakshi by Emperor Muhammad Shah. This appointment displeased Saadat Khan because he wanted the post of Mir Bakshi for himself.
- Saadat Khan told Nadir Shah that he can easily get Rs. 20 crores at Delhi. Because of this Nadir Shah decided to march to Delhi and reached there on 20th March 1739. On reaching Delhi Saadat Khan failed to arrange 20 crore rupees and committed suicide.
- At the time leaving Delhi Nadir Shah declared Muhammad Shah as the emperor of India.
- Ahmad Shah Abdali, the successor of Nadir Shah also attacked India twice during his reign.

AHMAD SHAH (1748-54)

- Ahmad Shah was the only son of Muhammad Shah. He succeeded his father at the throne of Mughal Empire.

His mother was Udham Bai. She was a dancing girl in early life before marrying to Muhammad Shah.

- Ahmad Shah was a young man of 22 years at the time of rising to throne. He had not received any formal education nor did he hold any civil or military office before becoming the Emperor.
- Nawab of Awadh **Safdar Jang** was appointed as the Wazir of the Mughal Empire.
- Ahmad Shah did not take any interest in the affairs of administration. He passed his time by indulging in the

enjoyment of wine and woman. Queen mother Udham Bai and eunuch Javid Khan (known as Nawab Bahadur) became the pivot of Mughal administration.

- Queen mother Udham Bai decided all the affairs of state. She was granted the Mansab of 50,000 horses and the title of Qibla-i-Alam. Her brother Man Khan who was a scamp and professional dancer received the title of Mutqat-ud-Daula and the rank of 6000.
- During his reign Ahmad Shah Abdali invaded India twice in 1749 and 1752 AD. In order to make peace with Abdali Mughal emperor ceded Punjab and Multan to Abdali.
- The reign of Ahmad Shah witnessed fierce rivalry between Wazir Safdar Jang and Javid Khan. Safdar Jang got Javid Khan murdered. In retaliation Queen mother Udham Bai got Safdar Jang dismissed from the office of Wazir in 1753.
- After Safdar Jang the office of Wazir was conferred upon **Ghazi-ud-din Imad-ul-Mulk**. He received the support of Maratha chief Malhar Rao Holkar.
- Imad-ul-Mulk deposed emperor Ahmad Shah and imprisoned Queen mother Udham Bai.

AZIZ-UD-DIN/ALAMGIR II (1754-59)

- He was a grandson of Jahandar Shah. During his reign the economic condition of Mughal Empire became so bad that troops carried the articles from the house of Wazir and nobles and sold them in the markets when they did not receive their salaries for a long time.
- In November 1753 Wazir Imad-ul-Mulk appointed Adina Beg as governor of Punjab. This was considered as improper interference in his affairs by Abdali because Punjab was ceded to him in 1752. The enraged Abdali crossed into India for the fourth time in November 1756. He left Delhi in 1757 and plundered as far as Mathura and Agra.
- Abdali appointed Rohila Chief Najib-ud-Daulah as his personal supreme agent and Mir Bakshi at the Mughal Court at the time of leaving India. He recognised Alamgir as the ruler of Hindustan and Imad-ul-Mulk as the Wazir.

SHAH ALAM II/ALI GAUHAR (1759-1806)

- He was the son of Alamgir-II and his real name was Ali Gauhar. At the time of his father's murder he was in Bihar. On 22 December, 1759 he proclaimed himself as the emperor of Hindustan with the title of Shah Alam-II.
- He lived out of Delhi for a long time after becoming the Emperor because he was scared of Wazir Imad-ulMulk. He wandered in Bihar because of this he was also known as fugitive Emperor.
- Rohila Chief Najib-ud-Daulah dominated the affairs of state until his death in Oct. 1770.
- Shah Alam participated in the battle of Buxar but he was defeated by the British along with Nawab of Awadh and Mir Kasim of Bengal. He signed Treaty of Allahabad (1765) with the Clive and granted the Diwani right (right to collect land revenue) of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to English company.
- He lived at Allahabad for a long time as a pensioner of East India Company till January 1772.
- In January 1772 Shah Alam entered Delhi with the help of Maratha Chief Mahadaji Sindhia. Till 1785, the Scindhia dominated the Mughal court.
- After the death of Rohila Chief Najib-ud-Daulah his son Zabita Khan and grand son Ghulam Qadir ransacked the royal palace. Ghulam Qadir deposed Shah Alam and blinded him. He placed Bidar Bakht on throne. The Marathas brought Shah Alam out of captivity and restored him to throne. Ghulam Qadir was defeated and hanged.
- In 1803 Lord Lake captured Delhi and Shah Alam again came under the protection of English. He remained as Company's prisoner for rest of his life and his activities were confined upto the Red Fort only.

AKBAR –II (1807-37)

- After the death of his father Akbar-II succeeded to throne. He also remained a pensioner of English Company. His grant was fixed to 11.5 lakh rupees per annum.
- In 1830 Mughal Emperor Akbar Shah II invested Ram Mohan Roy with the title of Raja and he was sent to England as an envoy to the court of King William IV to represent to the sovereign the inadequacy of pension granted to Mughal emperor.
- The realm of his influence remained limited with in Red Fort only.
- Presentation of Nazar or gifts by the Governor General was ended in 1813, however other staffs of East India company continued to pay Nazars.

BAHADUR SHAH II (1837-57)

- He was also known as Bahadur Shah Zafar because he used to write poetry with the pen name Zafar. He took deep interests in Urdu literary activities.
- All the Nazars being paid by the Company to Mughal Emperor was stopped.
- In 1856, title of Emperor was dropped by Canning for the successors of Bahadur Shah II.
- The successors of Bahadur Shah II were asked to leave Red Fort and to live near Qutab Minar.
- He accepted the leadership of rebels in 1857. Lt. Hudson arrested Bahadur Shah and killed his Sons and grandsons. Bahadur Shah was deported to Rangoon where he died in 1862.
- He was the last Mughal Emperor of Hindustan.

TOPIC

MARATHAS

MARATHA KINGS

SHIVAJI (1627-80)

- Shivaji was born at Shivner near Poona in April 1627 AD. Shahji Bhonsle was his father and his mother's name was Jijabai. He belonged to Bhonsle Clan of Marathas.
- Dadaji Kondev was his guardian and saint Ramdas was his political Guru.
- He captured the hilly fort of Torana from Bijapur in 1646 and after this he captured the fort of Raigarh. After this he snatched Supa from his uncle Shambhaji Mohite.
- The fort of Purandar was captured in 1648.
- In 1648 Shivaji negotiated with prince Murad, the Mughal governor of Deccan and expressed his wish to join Mughal service.
- He conquered Javli in 1656.
- He had a clash with Mughals in 1657 on the eve of Aurangzeb invasion of Bijapur.
- He conquered Konkan in the year 1657
- In 1659 Bijapur sent a large army under Afzal Khan to punish Shivaji. Finding it difficult to crush Shivaji by force in unfavourable hilly terrain Afzal Khan resorted to deception. He sent **Krishnaji Bhaskar** to Shivaji with some tempting offers. But Shivaji could perceive the mischief and killed Afzal Khan at the time of their meeting.
- He also had confrontation with Shayista Khan in 1660 and Shayista Khan was able to defeat Maratha in few encounters.
- Shivaji attacked the camp of Shayista Khan at Poona in April 1663. In this attack Shayista Khan was injured and his son was killed. This incident badly upset Aurangzeb and Shayista Khan was removed from Deccan in December 1663 and he was appointed as governor of Bengal.
- In 1664 Shivaji sacked Surat. Surat was attacked again in 1670.
- In March 1665 Aurangzeb removed Jaswant Singh from Deccan and appointed Raja Jai Singh. Jai Singh organised successful military campaign against Shivaji. Shivaji visited the camp of Jai Singh and signed the **Treaty of Purandar in**

June 1665.

Treaty of Purandar

- Shivaji surrendered 23 forts and adjoining areas to Mughals.
- 12 forts along with Raigarh remained with Shivaji.
- Shivaji was to remain loyal to Mughal emperor but he was freed from personal attendance at Mughal court.
- Shivaji promised to render help to Mughals in Deccan. He also agreed to pay 40 lakh Huns in 13 annual instalments if his possession of certain lands yielding 4 lakh Huns in Konkan and 5 lakh Huns in Balaq was confirmed. It was expected that Shivaji would occupy these lands with his own soldiers.
- Shambhaji was granted Mansab of 5000 and he was given a Jagir.
- Shivaji and his son Shambhaji reached Agra in May 1666. Aurangzeb put Shivaji under house arrest under the command of Ram Singh, the son of Raja Jai Singh. But Shivaji could escape from there.
- In 1672 Shivaji got Chauth from Surat.
- In 1674 Shivaji got himself coronated. The ceremony was performed at Raigarh by **Pandit Vishveshwar Ji of Kashi** (also known as Gagbhata). Shivaji was coronated again by **Nishchalpuri Goswami**. He was a Tantrik. Nishchalpuri had raised doubts about the efficacy of coronation ceremony performed by Pandit Vishveshwar Ji of Kashi.
- He adopted the titles of Chhatrapati, Hindustani Dharmodharaka & Kshatriya Kulavatamsa.
- Shivaji collected 2/5 of produce as land revenue. The revenue was collected both in cash and in kind. Initially the rate of land revenue was 1/3rd of produce but this was raised to 40% of produce when Shivaji abolished various miscellaneous cesses. Land was measured and yield per acre was estimated.
- The Kingdom of Shivaji was called Swarajya. The Kingdom was divided into 4 provinces. The provinces were divided into Parganas and the Parganas were divided into Tarafs. Village was the smallest unit of Maratha administration.
- Chauth was the main source of income of Maratha state.
- Khafi Khan had given the testimony of Shivaji's chivalry.
- Kolaba was the HQ of naval fleet of Maratha kingdom.
- From the revenues collected by confederate Jagirdars whole of Sardeshmukhi and 1/3 of Chauth went to Chhatrapati.
- He invaded Karnataka in the year 1677-78.
- The Maratha cavalry was divided into two classes i.e. the Bargirs and the Silhedars. The Bargirs were supplied with horses and arms by the state and the

Silhedars brought their own weapons and horses.

- Kolaba was the HQ of naval force.
- Shivaji died due to dysentery on 5th April 1680 AD.

SHAMBHAJI (1680-89)

- He was the eldest son of Shivaji and succeeded to throne after the death of his father. He had to fight a war of succession with his younger brother Rajaram.
- He was weak and inefficient ruler.
- He gave refuge and protection to Akbar, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- After the annexation of Bijapur and Golkunda Aurangzeb launched full-fledged attack on Marathas. Shambhaji had to move to Sangameshwar. He was captured with his friend Kavi Kulesh by Mughal General Muqarrab Khan.
- Mughal commander Itiqad Khan captured Raigarh and the infant son Shahu and wives of Shambhaji.
- Shambhaji was executed by Aurangzeb in March 1689.

RAJARAM (1690-1700)

- He was a son of Shivaji. He could escape in guise of a yogi and stationed himself at Jinji in Karnataka. He remained at Jinji till 1698.
- Ramachandra Pant and Prahlad Niraji were his advisors.
- Shantaji Ghorpare and Dhannaji Jadhav were his two great warriors.
- The Mughals tried to capture Jinji and continued its seize for 8 years from 1690 to 1698.
- Rajaram created a new office of Pratinidhi.
- In 1698 he moved to Satara. Rajaram died at Thane in 1700.

SHIVAJI-II (1700-1707)

- After the death of Rajaram his widow Tarabai placed her son named Shivaji-II on the throne and she herself became his regent.
- The size and capture of Wagingera in 1705 was last military exploit of Aurangzeb.

SHAHU (1707-1739)

- Shahu was captured by the Mughals in 1690 and he remained in Mughal prison for 17 years. He was released by the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah at the suggestion of Zulfiqar Khan. It was expected that the release of Sahu will result in a civil war between Sahu and Tara Bai for Maratha throne and this will keep the Marathas engrossed in their affairs.
- Sahu fought a war with Tarabai who defended the cause of Shivaji II and defeated the latter in **the Battle of Khed (1707 AD)** but the Southern part of the Maratha kingdom remained under the control of Shivaji II and later Shambhaji II

with capital at Kolhapur.

- He created the post of Senakarte i.e. organiser of forces.
- In 1731 the **treaty of Warna** was signed between Sahu and Shambhaji II. Shambhaji II was put on the throne of Kolhapur after the death of Shivaji-II by Tarabai. By this treaty Shambhaji II accepted the supremacy of Sahu.
- During his reign the powers and the prestige Peshwa increased greatly and the Peshwa emerged as real ruler of Maratha kingdom.

RAMRAJA (1749-1777)

- He was made to sign **Sangola Agreement** by Balaji Baji Rao in 1750. This agreement brought about a constitutional revolution in Maratha kingdom.
- By this agreement the Maratha king surrendered all his powers to Peshwa and the king remained only a figurehead.

SHAHU-II (1777-1808)

PRATAP SINGH (1808-1839)

SHAHU-III (1839-1848)

- He died childless on 5th April 1848. Adoption was not allowed and the state of Satara was annexed by Lord Dalhousie.

THE PESHWAS

BALAJI VISHWANATH (1713-1720)

- The process of the rise of the supremacy of Peshwaship began during his tenure.
- Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath signed a deal (known as Truce of Delhi) with Hussain Ali.
- According to this deal –
- Sahu was to get in full possession all the territories known as Shivaji's Swarajya.
- Those territories of Khandesh, Berar, Gondwana, Hyderabad and Karnataka which were recently conquered

by the Marathas were also to be ceded to Sahu as a part of Maratha kingdom.

- The Marathas were allowed to collect Chauth and Sardeshmukhi from all the Mughal provinces of Deccan.

In return of these privileges the Marathas were to place a military contingent of 15000 soldiers at the

disposal of Mughal Emperor.

- Sahu would not harm Shambhaji of Kolhapur in any way.

- Sahu was also to pay an annual tribute of ten lakh rupees to the Emperor.
- The mother and other relatives of Sahu were to be released from Mughal captivity.
- Sir Richard Temple called this deal as the Magna Carta of the Maratha dominion.
- The agreement made by Hussain Ali with Maratha Peshwa Balaji Vishwanath was ratified by Rafi-ud-Darajat in 1719.
- He helped the Sayyid brothers in overthrowing Farrukhsiyar.
- He introduced Saranjami system.

BAJI RAO I (1720-1740)

- Baji Rao was the eldest son of Balaji Vishwanath. After the death of his father he was appointed as Peshwa by Maratha King Sahu.
 - It is said about him that he had both the head to plan and hand to execute. He was the greatest exponent of Guerrilla tactics after Shivaji.
 - Other Maratha leaders like Pratinidhi in Karhad, Sachiva in Bhore and Senapati in Telgaon also followed Baji Rao and established their power centres.
 - Baji Rao built a fort at Poona and made Poona as his centre.
 - Baji Rao preached and popularised the ideal of Hindu-pad-Padshahi or Hindu Empire to secure the support of the Hindu chiefs against the common enemy, i.e. the Mughal Empire.
 - He said about Mughal Empire that let us strike at the trunk of withering tree, the branches will fall off themselves.
 - He established Maratha supremacy in the Deccan and formulated the policy of the conquest of the North.
- He proposed to Sahu the policy of Northward expansion by saying that the Maratha flag shall fly from Krishna to Attock. He also said that now is our time to drive the strangers from the country of the Hindus and acquire immortal renown.
- Shahu was so much impressed by the wisdom of the young Peshwa that he brushed aside all conservative counsels and said that you shall plant it beyond the Himalayas. You are indeed a

noble son of a worthy father.

- He defeated Nizam-ul-Mulk at **Palkhed on 6th March 1728** and forced him to sign the **treaty of MungiSivgaon**.

- When Muhammad Khan Bangesh, the Mughal Governor of Allahabad put Bundela king Chhatrasal to great extremities Chhatrasal requested Peshwas Baji Rao-I for help. In October 1728 the Maratha Army reached Bundelkhand and ousted the Mughals from there. Chhatrasal held a durbar in the honour of Peshwa and assigned Kalpi, Saugar, Jhansi and Hirdenagar to Marathas.

- In March 1730 the Mughal governor of Gujarat Sarbuland Khan concluded a treaty with Chimnaji, the younger brother of Baji Rao-I. This treaty recognised Maratha claims of Chauth and Sardeshmukhi over Gujarat.

- The Maratha hoards under Udaji Pawar and Malhar Rao Holkar uprooted Mughal authority from Malwa. In 1735 whole of Malwa fell under the control of Marathas.

- In 1731 he forced Shambhaji II of Kolhapur to sign the **treaty of Warna**. By this treaty Shambhaji II accepted the supremacy of Sahu.

- On 29th March 1737 Baji Rao dashed into Delhi suddenly to expose the hollowness of Mughal Empire. He stayed in Delhi for three days.

- Baji Rao defeated Nizam-ul-Mulk again in the **battle of Bhopal** in December 1737 when the Nizam tried to subdue Marathas. Nizam-ul-Mulk was forced to sign **the convention of Duraha Sarai** in January 1738. According to this Convention –

The Nizam promised to procure to the Peshwa the whole of Malwa and the territories between Narmada and Chambal rivers.

Nizam was also to obtain the confirmation of these territories from the Emperor. Nizam was also to pay a war indemnity of 50 lakh rupees to the Marathas.

- He captured the port of Bassein from the Portuguese in 1739 and established his control over it. **BALAJI BAJI RAO (NANA SAHEB) (1740-1761)**

- Balaji Baji Rao/Balaji-II/Nana Saheb was the eldest son of Baji Rao-I. After the death of his father he was

appointed as Peshwa by Chhatrapati Sahu.

- He always took help of his cousin Sadashiva Rao Bhau in political affairs.
- He carried out various reforms in Maratha state. He established a strong police system and the Panchayat system was also reformed.
- He recruited even non-Maratha elements in the army.
- In 1741 Balaji Baji Rao supported Alivardi Khan of Bengal against Raghuji Bhonsle. Alivardi Khan agreed to pay Rs. 22 lakhs as the Chauth of Bengal to the Peshwa.
- The Maratha control over Malwa was completed during his reign. In July 1741 Peshwa was appointed deputy of Shahzada Ahmad, the Subedar of Malwa as the instance of Raja Jai Singh from the Mughal emperor.
- A Maratha force defeated the Bundela Chief of Orcha and captured Jhansi in 1742. From this time onwards Jhansi became the Maratha colony in Bundelkhand.
- Dost Ali the Nawab of Carnatic harassed the Maratha ruler of Tanjore. Raghuji Bhonsle of Berar sent an expedition and Dost Ali was killed in the battle. Raghuji also successfully conducted the seize of Trichnopoly and arrested Chanda Sahib, the son-in-law of Dost Ali in December 1741. Chanda Sahib was sent as a prisoner to Satara.
- Raghuji Bhonsle demanded Chauth of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa from Alivardi Khan. He sent his revenue minister Bhaskar Pant to Alivardi Khan to enforce this demand. Alivardi treacherously murdered Bhaskar Pant. The enraged Raghuji conducted annual campaigns against Alivardi Khan. In 1751 the invasions of Raghuji forced Alivardi Khan to surrender Orissa to him and to pay Rs. 12 lakhs annually as the Chauth of Bengal & Bihar.
- After the death of Chhatrapati Sahu Baji Rao made Ramraja to sign Sangola Agreement in 1750. By this agreement the Maratha king surrendered all his powers to Peshwa and the king became only a figurehead.
- After the death of Nizam-ul-Mulk in 1748 the Peshwa tried to liberate

Khandesh and Berar from Muslim control. The Nizam Salabat Jung countered Marathas with the help of his infantry trained by French General Bussy. Though Peshwa failed to achieve any significant success but tired of fruitless war the Nizam surrendered western half of Berar including Baglana and Khandesh to Marathas by the **treaty of Jhalki** in 1752.

- In December 1757 **the battle of Sindkhed** was fought between the Marathas and the Nizam.
- **The battle of Udgir** was fought between the Marathas and the Nizam in January 1760. The Marathas acquired territory worth 60 lakhs of rupees along with Ahmadnagar, Daulatabad, Burhanpur and Bijapur.
- In April 1752 Safdarjung concluded an agreement with the Maratha. The Marathas were to protect Mughal Empire from internal and external dangers. In return of this Safdarjung agreed to surrender Agra and Ajmer along with the payment of Rs. 50 lakhs to them. He also recognised the Maratha's right to collect Chauth from Punjab, Sind and Doab. Though this agreement was not ratified by the Emperor but this whetted Maratha ambition at Delhi.
- When Ahmad Shah Abdali invaded India for the third time in 1752 Mughal Emperor Ahmad Shah surrendered Punjab and Sind to him. On the other hand the Marathas were trying to expend their influence in Punjab.
- In 1745 the Maratha forces under Raghunath Rao reached Delhi. The Mughal Wazir Imad-ul-Milk removed Ahmad Shah from the throne and placed Alamgir-II on the throne with the help of Marathas.
- In January 1757 Abdali invaded India again. A Maratha army under Raghunath Rao was sent from Poona but Abdali had left before the Marathas reached Delhi. Raghunath Rao reinstated the Emperor on the throne and established Maratha supremacy from Satluj in the west to the Banaras in the east. The Rohilla Chief

Nazib-ud-daula, who was made Mir Bakshi by Ahmad Shah Abdali, was removed and Ahmad Shah Bangesh was appointed as Mir Bakshi.

- By April 1758 Lahore was occupied and Ahmad Shah's agents were expelled from Punjab by the Marathas.

The Marathas established control over Punjab and hoisted flag of Marathas at the fort of Attock. The Marathas appointed **Adina Beg** as the Governor of Punjab. After Adina's death **Sabaji Sindhia** was appointed as the Governor of Punjab.

- This was taken as challenge by Abdali. He crossed Indus in 1759 and headed towards Delhi. This culminated into the third battle of Panipat.

THIRD BATTLE OF PANIPAT

(a) Battle was fought on 14 January 1761.

(b) The establishment of Maratha control over Punjab was opposed by Abdali because Punjab was surrendered to him by Mughal emperor.

(c) Pindaris supported Marathas in the Battle of Panipat.

(d) Sadashiva Rao Bhau was the real commander of Maratha forces and Peshwa's 12 year old son Vishwas Rao was the commander of Maratha forces on paper.

(e) Sadashiva Rao Bhau encouraged the practice of ladies accompanying their husbands to the battlefield. This move proved suicidal because it adversely affected the mobility of Maratha army. **(f)** The Rohilla chief Nazib-ud-daula and Shuja-ud-daula the Nawab of Awadh supported Abdali. **(g)** The Rajput, Sikhs and the Jats did not support the Marathas in the battle because they were alienated

by the highhandedness of Marathas.

(h) The failure of Marathas to get the support of indigenous elements proved to be the major cause of their failure.

(i) The Mughal Wazir Imad-ul-Mulk supported the Marathas in the battle.

(j) The Marathas were badly defeated in the battle. Sadashiva Bhau, Vishwas Rao, Jaswant Rao and Tukoji Sindhia were killed.

(k) Malhar Rao Holkar fled from the battle field.

(l) Ibrahim Gardi was in charge of Maratha artillery. He was captured by Abdali.

(m) Kashi Raj Pandit was an eyewitness of this battle. He sent the message of Maratha defeat to Peshwa in the following words - Two pearls were lost, twenty seven gold Muhars were lost and the loss of silver and gold is difficult to account.

(n) According to Sir Jadunath Sarkar there was any hardly person in Maratha state who did not lose one of his relative. Some families were completely destroyed.

(o) Balaji Baji Rao died of shock when he came to know about the disaster of Panipat. **MADHAV RAO (1761-1772)**

- Madhav Rao was the son of Balaji Baji Rao. After the death of his father he became Peshwa. He was of 17 years of age at the time of becoming of Peshwa.
- Raghunath Rao (Raghoba/Dada Saheb), the uncle of Madhav Rao, was appointed as the regent. Raghunath Rao himself wanted to become Peshwa and because of this a civil war took place between Madhav Rao & Raghunath Rao. Raghunath Rao was imprisoned by Madhav Rao and he assumed all the powers of state himself.
- In 1763 Madhav Rao defeated Nizam of Hyderabad and the **treaty of Rakshasa-Bhuvan** was signed between them. This treaty stabilised the relations between the Marathas and the Nizam.
- Madhava Rao defeated Haider Ali in 1771 and forced him to pay Nazrana to the Marathas.
- He also defeated the Rohillas, the Rajputs and the Jats and re-established Maratha control over north India.
- In January 1772 AD Mahadaji Sindhia escorted Mughal Emperor Shah Alam-II to Delhi and reinstated him on the throne. Till 1785, Sindhia dominated the Mughal court.
- In 1784 Mahadaji Sindhia secured the appointment of Peshwa as the **Naib-Munaib** from the Emperor on the condition that he himself would act on behalf of Peshwa. Sindhia represented Peshwa as his deputy (Vakili-Mutlaq) in Mughal court.
- Madhav Rao died in November 1772 due to Tuberculosis.

NARAYAN RAO (1772-73)

- Narayan Rao was the youngest brother of Madhav Rao. He succeeded Madhav Rao was Peshwa of Maratha state. He was a minor and Raghunath Rao, who was released from prison on 1772, was made his regent.
- Anandi Rao, the wife of Raghunath Rao was a domineering lady. Narayan Rao

was killed at her instance. Ram Shastri enquired into the matter and Raghunath Rao was accused by him.

RAGHUNATH RAO (1773)

- After the murder of Narayan Rao Raghunath Rao became Peshwas himself. But he could hold this post only for few months.

MADHAV RAO NARAYAN (1773-1795)

- He was also known as Swai Madhav Rao-II. He was a posthumous son of Narayan Rao. He was an infant. He was recognised as a Peshwas by Nana Phandnavis and Raghunath Rao had to run away.
- Nana Phandnavis (original name Balaji Janardana) setup a council of 12 members known as Bara Bhai to look after affairs of state.
- Raghunath Rao tried to seek the support of English Trading Company to get the Peshwaship back. This culminated into first Anglo-Maratha war (1775-82).
- Mahadaji Sindhia organised a powerful army with the help of a French military expert **Benoit de Boigne** and later on with the help of another Frenchman **Monsieur Perron**.
- Nana Phandnavis tried to recover the lost Maratha territories in south of Narmada. This resulted in MarathaMysore conflict.
- The Marathas also fought a war with Nizam of Hyderabad. The Nizam's army was trained by the Frenchman **Raymond** but still Nizam was defeated by the Marathas in the **battle of Kharda** in 1795.
- Madhav Rao Narayan died in 1795. It is believed that he committed suicide because he was frustrated due to excessive control of Nana Phandnavis.

BAJI RAO II (1713-1720)

- After the death of Madhav Rao Narayan Baji Rao-II became Maratha Peshwa. He was son of Raghunath Rao.
- In 1800 AD Nana Phandnavis died and with him departed all the wisdom and political shrewdness from Maratha land. His death was preceded by the death of other Maratha leaders like Ahilya Bai (1796) and Mahadaji Sindhia (1794).
- A fierce struggle for supremacy began between Daulat Rao Sindhia and Jaswant Rao Holkar. When Sindhia was fighting against Holkar Peshwa murdered the brother of Holkar. On this

Jaswant Rao Holkar invaded

Peshwa and defeated the Peshwa and Sindhia. He placed Raghunath Rao's adopted son Vinayak Rao on the Peshwa's Masnad.

- Baji Rao-II fled to Bassein and sought the protection of English. He signed the treaty of Bassein on 31

December 1802 and accepted Subsidiary Alliance. After this a British force took him to Poona and restored him to his former position.

- The Maratha leaders found British control as insulting. The Peshwa also realised the folly of his action so

they decided to sink their differences to throw the British yoke. This resulted in second Anglo-Maratha war

(1802-05). Holkar did not extend his support to the Peshwa and Sindhia in the war against English. Gaikwar

choose to remain neutral. Bhonsle was defeated at **Assaye** and Sindhia was defeated at **Laswari**. When

Holkar declared war against the British, he too was defeated at **Mukundra Pass**.

- Baji Rao-II was dethroned and pensioned off at Bithur (near Kanpur) after the third Anglo-Maratha war (1817).

ANGLO-MARATHA CONFLICTS

FIRST ANGLO-MARATHA WAR (1775-82)

- The western India was witnessing a cotton boom & the Company needed this cotton to export to Britain. Because of this Company needed to control Gujrat & Bombay region. The development of gunnery & artillery in Maratha Kingdom had also alarmed the company. The activities of French soldiers had also alarmed the company. The Company was looking for new sources of revenue to finance the Home Government during Napoleonic wars. All these factors and forces played important role in creating the conditions responsible for the First Anglo-Maratha war (1775-82).

Internal dissension among Marathas

(a) The internal dissension among Marathas leaders provided the golden opportunity to the company to interfere into the affairs of Marathas. After the death of Madhav Rao Peshwa in 1772, his brother Narayan Rao Peshwa

ascended the position of Peshwa of the Maratha Empire. However, Raghunath Rao, Narayan Rao's uncle, had his nephew assassinated in a palace conspiracy that placed Raghunath Rao as the next Peshwa, although he was not a legal heir.

(b) However, the late Narayan Rao's widow, Gangabai, gave birth to a son after her husband's death. The newborn infant was named 'Sawai' ("One and a Quarter") Madhav Rao and legally was the next Peshwa. Twelve Maratha chiefs, led by Nana Phandnavis directed an effort to name the infant as the new Peshwa and rule under him as regents.

- The conflict over Masnad of Peshwa between Raghunath Rao & Madhav Rao II forced Raghunath Rao to seek British help. Raghunath Rao signed the **Treaty of Surat** on **March 7, 1775** with the Bombay government. In Raghunath Rao the Bombay Government found a pliant tool and hoped to set up at Poona the type of Dual Government Clive had set up in Bengal. According to the treaty, Raghunath Rao ceded the territories of Salsette and Bassein to the British along with parts of revenues from Surat and Bhrooch districts. In return, the British were to provide Raghunath Rao with 2,500 soldiers.

- An English expeditionary force under **Keating** occupied Salsette and Bassein and fought an indecisive battle with the forces of Madhav Rao Narayan at **Arras**.

- The Calcutta Council received from Bombay the copy of the Treaty of Surat with Raghunath Rao after actual operation had started. The Supreme Council strongly condemned the war as impolitic, dangerous, unauthorized and unjust, and questioned the wisdom of the Bombay Government and sent **Colonel Upton** to Poona to conclude the **treaty of Purandhar (1776)**. According to this treaty the company retained Salsette, accepted a war indemnity and agreed to give up the cause of Raghunath Rao.

- A turn in European politics changed the political situation in India. The American war of Independence had broken out in 1775 and by 1778 France had joined against England in a bid to avenge the losses suffered earlier. A French adventurer, **Chevalier de St. Lubin** reached Poona and this greatly alarmed the Governor – General.

- Warren Hastings ordered the seizure of all French settlements in India and the war against the Marathas was restarted.

- A British force sent by the Bombay Government suffered an ignominious failure in the battles of Telgaon and Wadgaon (December 1778 and January 1779) and signed the humiliating **Convention of Wadgaon (1779)** with the Peshwa. According to this treaty the company was required to give up all the

advantages gained by the Treaty of Purandhar.

- The British Governor-General in Bengal, Warren Hastings, rejected this treaty and sent a large force of soldiers across India under Colonel Goddard.
- Goddard captured Ahmadabad in February 1779 and Bassein in December 1780. Another Bengal detachment led by Captain Popham captured Gwalior in August 1780. Hastings sent yet another force after Mahadaji Sindhia. In February 1781, led by **General Camac**, the British finally defeated Mahadaji Sindhia at Sipri.
- In 1781, **Captain Popham** recovered British prestige by defeating the Sindhia again in a number of skirmishes and capturing Gwalior. Sindhia was brought round to an understanding with the Company on the latter's promise to allow him to prosecute his designs in and around Delhi.
- Thus the Sindhia acted as a mediator and by the Treaty of Salbai (May 1782) the war with the Marathas was concluded on the basis of mutual restitution of each other's territories. The Company gave up Bassein and other territories captured since the Treaty of Purandhar, but retained Salsette and the Elephanta Islands. The English gave up the cause of Raghunath Rao and recognised Madhav Rao Narayan as the Peshwa. Raghunath Rao was granted a pension. The Peshwa agreed to support British against Haider Ali. The treaty also returned to Shinde all his territories west of the Yamuna.
- **The Treaty of Salbai** was ratified by Hastings in June 1782 and by Phandnavis in February 1783.

SECOND ANGLO-MARATHA WAR (1803-1806)

- Death of Nana Phandnavis intensified disunity & internal dissension among the Marathas. A fierce struggle for supremacy began between Daulat Rao Sindhia and Jaswant Rao Holkar.
- In October 1802, Peshwa Baji Rao II was defeated by the Holkar ruler of Indore in the Battle of Poona. He fled to British protection, and in December the same year concluded the **Treaty of Bassein**.
- This act of craven expediency on the part of the Peshwa, their nominal overlord, horrified and disgusted the Maratha chieftains. The Sindhia of Gwalior and the Bhonsle of Nagpur and Berar contested the agreement. The Maratha leaders found British control as insulting. The Peshwa also realised the folly of his action so they decided to sink their differences to throw the British yoke. This resulted in second Anglo-Maratha war (1802-05).
- Bhonsle was defeated at Assaye and Argaon by Sir Arthur Wellesley. Bhonsle signed **the Treaty of Devgaon on 17th December 1803**. Bhonsle ceded to the

English the province of Cuttack, including Balasore and the whole territory west of river Wardha.

- Sindhia was defeated at **Laswari and Delhi by Lord Lake** and signed the **Treaty of Surji Arjangaon on 30th December 1803**.
- Holkar did not extend his support to the Peshwa and Sindhia in the war against English. Gaikwar choose to remain neutral.
- When Holkar declared war against the British, he too was defeated at **Mukundra Pass**. The war between Holkar and British ended with **Treaty of Rajpuraghat** in 1806.
- Peace was concluded in 1805, with the British acquired Orissa and parts of western Gujarat and Bundelkhand from the Marathas, who were left with a free hand in much of central India. The Sindhia Maharaja retained control and overlordship over much of Rajasthan.

THIRD ANGLO-MARATHA WAR (1817-1818)

- The Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817 - 1818) was a final and decisive conflict between the British East India Company and the Maratha Empire in India, which left the Company in control of most of India.
- It began with an invasion of Maratha territory by the British governor-general, Lord Hastings, in the course of operations against Pindari robber bands.
- After the end of Pindari war Hastings **Colonel Smith** was sent to Poona and the **treaty of Poona (13th June 1817)** was imposed upon Peshwa by the English. This treaty dissolved Maratha confederacy.
- On 5th November 1817 the **treaty of Gwalior** was signed with Sindhia by the English.
- The Maratha chiefs could not reconcile to the loss of their independence. The British diplomacy convinced the Sindhia of Gwalior to remain neutral, although he lost control of Rajasthan.
- On 5th November 1817 the British residency at Poona was attacked and burnt. The company's troops defeated the forces of the Peshwa in the **battle of Khirki/khadki** on 5th November 1817. Brigadier-General Smith occupied Poona on 13th November the Peshwa escaped for life. Peshwa was defeated again at Koregaon (1st January 1818) and Astha (20th February 1818).
- On 26 November 1817 Appa Sahib of Nagpur had declared war against the English. He was defeated at **Sitabaldi** on 26 November 1817.
- Yashwant Rao Holkar was defeated by **Major Hislop** on 21 December 1817 at **Mahidpur**.
- On 6th January 1818 the **treaty of Mandasor** was signed with Bhonsle by the

English.

- British victory was swift, and resulted in the breakup of the Maratha Empire and the loss of Maratha independence to the British.
- Elphinstone, the Governor of Bombay declared the annexation of Peshwa's dominions. The Peshwaship was abolished and Peshwa was pensioned off (a pension of RS. 8 lakhs per annum) to Bithur.
- The northern portion of the Nagpur Bhonsle dominions, together with the Peshwa's territories in Bundelkhand, were annexed to British India so as the Saugar and Narmada Territories. The Maratha kingdoms of Indore, Gwalior, Nagpur, and Jhansi became princely states, acknowledging British control.
- Pratap Singh, The Maharaja of Satara, was restored as ruler of a princely state until its annexation to Bombay state in 1848. He was a descendent of Shivaji and this arrangement was made in order to retain the symbolic existence of Maratha power.

Peshwa/Mukhya Pradhan Sar-I-Naubat

Majumdar/Amatya

Sachiva/ Surunavis / Chitnis Dabir/Sumant

Mantri/Waqia-Nawis

Nyayadhish

Pandit Rao

THE ASHTAPRADHAN OF SHIVAJI

Prime Minister, General administration both civil and military Chief of armed forces

Finance, Revenue, Accounts

Royal Correspondence

Foreign Affairs/Royal ceremonies

Incharge of records, intelligence and looked after Kings private affairs. Justice

Religious affairs and Charities

MARATHA FAMILIES AND THEIR HEADQUARTERS

1. Peshwa Poona
2. Sindhia Gwalior (Initially Ujjain)
3. Gaekwad Baroda
4. Bhonsle Nagpur
5. Holkar Indore
6. Pawar Dhar

TOPIC

3

EUROPEAN TRADING COMPANIES

THE PORTUGUESE

- Vasco De Gama was the first Portuguese citizen to reach India. He reached India on 27 May 1498 AD sailing through Cape of Good Hope after a long journey of 90 days. The Cape of Good Hope was discovered by Bartholomew Diaz in 1487 AD. Vasco De Gama discovered a sea route from Europe to India through the Cape of Good Hope. He landed at the port of Calicut (Kozhikode).
- Vasco De Gama was helped by a guide named Abdul Manik from Gujrat. He was received by the Hindu ruler of Calicut (known by the title of Zamorin).
- Vasco De Gama earned a profit of 60 times in the trade of pepper which he carried from India. He visited India again in 1502.
- Success of Vasco De Gama fuelled the passion of other Portuguese citizens to trade with India. In 1502 AD Pedro Alvares Cabral (another Portuguese traveller) visited India.
- The Portuguese established their first factory at **Calicut** in 1500 AD which was abandoned in 1525 due to the opposition of Zamorin. Second factory was established at **Cochin** in 1501 AD. **Cochin** was the early Portuguese capital in India.
- The Portuguese ended the trade monopoly of **Arabs**.
- In 1510 AD the Portuguese governor Albuquerque captured Goa from the ruler of Bijapur. Now onwards Goa became the Portuguese capital in India.
- The Portuguese Naval empire was known as **Estado the India**.
- The first Portuguese governor in India was Francisco De Almeida (1505-09). He and his son were defeated and killed by the combined army of Egyptian King and Sultan Mahmud I of Gujrat.
- Alfonso De Albuquerque (1509-15) was the second Portuguese governor. He was the real founder of Portuguese empire in India. He encouraged his countrymen to marry Indian women to increase the number of his supporters. The products of these marriages were known as Feringhees. Albuquerque made provisions for the education of the natives and retained Indian system of government (Village Panchayats) in the villages. He took steps to prohibit the practice of Sati.

- Other important governor was Nino Da Cunha (1529-1538). He established factories at San Thome (Madras), Hughli and Diu. He acquired Diu and Bassein from Sultan Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
- Next important governor was Martin Alfonso DeSouza (1542-1545 AD). The famous Jesuit saint Francisco Xavier came to India with him in 1542 AD.
- The Portuguese lost Bombay, as it was given to Charles II of England by the King of Portugal as dowry in the marriage of his sister the Katherine of Breganza (1661)
- The Marathas captured Salsette and Bassein in 1739 from the Portuguese.
- Ultimately the Portuguese were left with only Goa, Diu, and Daman which they retained till 1961.
- The Portuguese monopolised trade in **spices and Pepper**.
- The Portuguese adopted the policy of capturing strategic points in the Indian Ocean in order to control the vast network of Asian maritime trade.
- The Portuguese also sold the offices of Captains and Customs Collectors in the Indian Ocean strongholds.
- They established a fortress at Mannar in 1518 on the western coast of Ceylon.
- The first effort to establish commerce in Bengal was made for Chittagoan, the chief port of Bengal during this period.
- They obtained permission from Mahmud Shah, the King of Bengal, to erect factories at Chittagoan and Satgaon in 1534.
- The second settlement at Hugli was granted them by Akbar in 1579-80.
- The third one was established at Bandel through a farman of Shahjahan in 1633.
- The chief aim of the Portuguese in discovering the sea-route connecting the East with Portugal was to collect spices directly from the places of production rather than from the hands of intermediaries like the Italian and the Muslim traders.
- The Portuguese employed armed vessels plying in the Indian Ocean and Arabian Sea.
- Ships carrying commodities had to obtain **Passes (Cartaz)** from the Portuguese authorities.
- Such passes were issued only after the payment of custom tolls. Such ships were forced to visit any of the ports in India where the Portuguese had customs houses and to pay taxes.
- Ships which did not obtain **Passes (Cartaz)** from the Portuguese officials were confiscated by them. The booty thus obtained yielded a sizeable source of

income which was again invested in trade.

- In Cartaz it was specifically mentioned that certain items like pepper, horses, ginger, coir, sulphur, lead, saltpetre, cinnamon, etc. were not to be loaded on their ships.
- Even Rulers like Akbar and his successors, Nizam Shah of Ahmadnagar, Adil Shah of Bijapur, Kings of Cochin, the Zamorin of Calicut and the rulers of Cannanore purchased passes from the Portuguese to send their ships to various places.
- Portuguese killed Bahadur Shah, ruler of Gujrat (1526-37) when sought shelter of the Portuguese at Diu after Humayun captured Mandasor.
- Fortunes of the Portuguese began to decline after death of Castro in 1548.
- The Portuguese were driven out of Hughli by Shahjahan in 1632 AD because they harassed the slave girls of Mumtaz Mahal. They were defeated by Qasim Khan.
- The Portuguese lost Hormuz in 1622 to the British.
- The naval monopoly of the Portuguese was shattered by the Dutch.
- The Portuguese introduced Tobacco, Ship building and printing press in India.
- The Portuguese began the Gothic style of architecture in India.

THE DUTCH

- The Dutch East India Company was formed in 1602 AD by an order of the government of Holland. This company's name was **Vereenigdde Oost Indische Compagnie (VOC)**.
- In 1593 AD under William Barents the Dutch made their first determined effort to reach Asia. **Huyghen Van Linschoten** was the first Dutch national to reach India. He reached Goa in 1583 AD and stayed there till 1589 AD. He also wrote a famous book.
- In 1602 AD small and separate Voyages of individual traders were combined in one company under the name of **Dutch United East India Company (VOC)**.
- Initially their headquarters was at **Pulicat** after obtaining permission from king of Chandragiri **Venkat I** and in 1690 **Negapattnam** became their headquarters.
- The Dutch minted a gold coin named **Pagoda**.
- The Dutch established their first factory at **Masulipattnam** in 1605 AD. Their first factory in Bengal was established at Pipli. After some time **Balasore** replaced Pipli.
- The Dutch used to exchange spices of Malaya Archipelago for cotton goods

from Gujarat and the Coromandal coast. The Dutch used to export Cotton cloths, silk, salt petre and opium from Bengal. They shattered the Portuguese commercial monopoly in India. The Dutch dominated the trade between India and Java during 17th century.

- The Dutch were defeated by the English in the Battle of Bedera in 1759 and with this defeat the Dutch influence in India almost came to an end.
- The Dutch East Indian company's chief administrative centre was at **Batavia**.
- They had two factories in the interior of the Golkunda territories- one at Nagalavancha and another at Golkunda.
- In Nagalavancha, the factory was established in 1670, but owing to political unrest the Dutch withdrew from there in the 1680's.
- In the Bengal region two more factories were established by the Dutch at Khankul in 1669 and at Malda in 1676 but both had to close down soon.
- The English decided to drive the Dutch away from their Indian possessions. The English joined hands with the Portuguese in India to drive the Dutch out.
- By 1795, the English succeeded in expelling the Dutch completely.
- The Dutch got favourable response from the rulers of Golkunda. They got right to mint coin in the Pulicat mint in 1657 from Golkunda king. By the farman of 1676 the Golkunda ruler granted the Dutch complete freedom from tariffs in Golkunda.
- The Dutch succeeded in getting farman from the Mughal Emperor Jahangir for trading along the west coast. They were exempted from tolls from Burhanpur to Cambay and Ahmadabad.
- Shah Jahan granted total exemption to the company from paying transit throughout the Mughal Empire. Aurangzeb confirmed all the privileges granted by Shahjahan to the Dutch in Bengal in 1662.
- Jahandar Shah confirmed all the privileges granted by Aurangzeb in Coromandal in 1712.

THE ENGLISH COMPANY

COMPANY'S ESTABLISHMENT

- The "English Trading Company" was formed by a group of merchants known as the '**Merchant Adventures**' in 1599 AD. This company was granted a charter by **Queen Elizabeth I On 31 Dec 1600 AD**. '**The Governor and the Company of Merchants of London trading into East Indies**' was the name of English company. This company was given monopoly rights over eastern trade

for fifteen years.

- In 1608 AD Captain William Hawkins reached the court of Jahangir. Hawkins was the ambassador of King James I. He at the court for three years. He was given the title of English Khan and mansab of 400 Jat by Jahangir. But because of Portuguese influence at the court, Hawkins failed to get permission to erect a factory at Surat. to seek Jahangir granted permission to erect a factory at Surat.
- In 1611 Capt. Middleton landed at Swally near Surat in spite of Portuguese opposition and got permission to trade from the Mughal governor.
- In 1612 AD Capt. Best defeated the Portuguese at Swally near Surat and this defeat broke their naval supremacy. Captain Best succeeded in getting a royal Farman to open factories in the West Coast, Surat, Cambay, Ahmadabad and Goa in 1613 AD.
- Sir Thomas Roe (1615-18) came to the court of Jahangir as the Royal ambassador of King James I and received permission to trade and establish factories in different parts of the empire.
- First factory in south factory was established at **Masulipattnam in 1611 AD.** Another factory was established at Armagaon (near Pulicat) in 1626 AD.
- In 1632 AD the Sultan of Golkunda issued the company the Golden Farman. This farman allowed them to trade within the ports of the kingdom freely on lump sum payment of 500 pagodas a year.
- In 1639 AD Francis Day obtained the site of Madras from the Raja of Chandragiri with permission to build a fortified factory. This factory was named **Fort St. George.**
- In Sep. 1641 AD Madras replaced Masulipattnam as the headquarters of the English on the Coromandal coast. All the English settlements in Eastern India (Bengal, Bihar and Orissa) and the Coromandal were placed under the control of the President and Council of Fort St. George.
- The Portuguese gave the island to Bombay to King Charles II of England in dowry in 1661 AD. Bombay was given to company in 1668 AD on annual rent of £10. Thereafter Bombay replaced Surat as the headquarters on the west coast. Bombay was fortified in 1720 by Charles Boon.

COMPANY AND BENGAL

- They established their first factory in Orissa at Hariharpur (near the mouth of river Mahanadi), Balasore and

Pipli in 1633 AD.

- In 1651 Sultan Shuja, the governor of Bengal, granted the English Trading Company a Nishan through which they received trading privileges in return for a fixed annual payment of Rs. 3000.
- By another Nishan the English Company was exempted from Custom duties in 1656
- First English factory in Bengal was established at Hughli in 1651 AD.
- In 1667 AD Aurangzeb confirmed the privileges enjoyed by the company.
- In 1672 AD Shayista Khan, the Mughal governor of Bengal confirmed the privileges enjoyed by the company.
- In 1686 two pirate ships (Ships of English free traders) captured several Mughal ships in Red Sea. Upon this the Mughal governor of Surat attacked the English. Hostilities broke out in Bengal also. Hughli was sacked by the Mughals. The English were forced to leave Hughli. Aurangzeb granted them permission to trade, on payment of Rs. 1,50,000 as compensation.
- In 1691 AD Job Charnock established a factory at Sutanati. In 1691 AD Aurangzeb granted a farman by which they were exempted from the of custom duties in Bengal in return for a an annual payment of Rs 3000. The rebellion of Shoba Singh, a Zamindar of Burdwan provided opportunity to the English to fortify the settlement at Sutanati.
- Sir William Norris was sent as a special envoy by the English king to Aurangzeb's court to secure the formal grant of the trading concessions and the right to exercise full English jurisdiction over the English settlements in 1698 AD.
- In 1698 AD the British acquired the Zamindari of the villages of Sutanati, Kalikata and Govindpur from Mughal governor Azimush shah on payment of Rs 1200 to the original proprietors. These three villages crested the nucleus of modern Calcutta.
- The rebellion of Afghan Rahim Khan provided the English opportunity to fortify Calcutta. It was named Fort William (1700 AD). Sir Charles Eyre was the first president of Fort William. All settlements in Bengal, Bihar

and Orissa were placed under Fort William (1700 AD)

- **Emperor Farruksiyar's Farman :**

- In 1714 AD the Presidencies of Bombay, Madras and Calcutta sent a combined mission to the court of

Emperor Farruksiyar.

- The mission was led by John Surman. Dr. William Hamilton was a member of the Surman commission. He

cured Farruksiyar of a painful disease.

- Farruksiyar granted the company three Farmans in 1717 AD for duty free trade.

- These Farmans of Farruksiyar (1717) are called the Magna Carta of the Company.

- **Provision of Farman :** The Company was granted right to duty free trade in Bengal in lieu of an annual

payment of Rs. 3000. The Company was also allowed to wherever they pleased and rent additional territory

around Calcutta. In case of province of Hyderabad, the English Company was allowed freedom from all dues

except rent paid for Madras. The Company was granted right to duty free trade at Surat in lieu of an annual

payment of Rs. 10000. The currency coined by company was made current throughout the Mughal Empire. **DEVELOPMENT OF THE COMPANY**

- Queen Elizabeth was one of the shareholders of the company.

- After Queen Elizabeth's death, James I renewed the charter though it could be revoked at any time at three year notice.

- The company got the power to enforce law to maintain discipline on long voyages.

- After 1635 AD the London Company met with serious competition from Assada Company. Assada Company

got a licence to trade with the East Indies in 1635 AD. Competition led to decline of profit of old company.

Finally the new company was merged with the London Company.

- In 1657 AD the London Company was transformed into a joint stock Company.

- The Charter Act of 1683 AD gave the company full power to declare war and make peace with any power.

- In spite of all opposition English independent merchants, known as **Interlopers** continued to defy the

monopoly of the company by indulging in the East Indian trade of their own.

- These Free Merchants tried to press their demands in public as well as in Parliament.
- In 1694 AD the Parliament passed the resolution that all the citizens of England had equal right to trade in the East.
- In 1698 AD British Govt. sold the monopoly rights of East Indies trade to a new company named **General Society**. The London Company was given a notice of three to wind up the business. The Old Company refused to surrender their privileges.
- After long drawn conflict both the companies agreed to join hands in 1702 AD.
- In 1708 AD a new company named 'The **united Company of Merchants of England Trading to the East Indies**' was formed by amalgamating both the companies.

THE DANES

- The Danish trading company arrived in India 1616 AD after forming an East India Company.
- Under the supervision of Danes the town of Qasim Bazar produced the largest amount of silk yarn during the seventeenth century.
- They founded settlements at Tranquebar (Tamil Nadu) in 1620 and at Serampore (Bengal) in 1676. Their headquarters in India was **Serampore**.
- They could not establish their position in India and eventually sold all their Indian settlements to the English in 1845.
- They were more concerned with the missionary activities than trade.
- They established their factories at Masulipattnam and Porto Novo.

THE FRENCH

- The French were the last European traders to arrive in India. French East India Company was formed under state patronage by Colbert in 1664 AD.
- The French company was named the **Compagnie Des Indes Orientals**.
- In Dec 1667 AD the first French factory was set up at Surat by Francois Caron. In 1669 AD Marcara set up a factory at Masulipattnam by securing a patent from the Sultan of Golkunda.
- They also succeeded in getting a farman from Aurangzeb in 1669 AD to open

their factory at Surat.

- In 1673 AD the French (Francois Martin & Bellanger De Lespinary) acquired from the Muslim governor of Valikoindapuram Sher Khan Lodi a small village. This village developed into Pondichery and its first governor was Francois Martin. **Fort Louis** was established here.
- They acquired site of Chandernagore in Bengal from the Mughal governor Shayista Khan in 1674 AD. French factory was established here in 1690 AD.
- Pondichery (Fort Louis) was made the headquarters of all the French settlements in India and Francois Martin became the governor –general of French affairs in India.
- French commander Martin readily acknowledged the authority of Shivaji and agreed to pay him an amount in lieu of license to trade in his dominions. The French got the permission to fortify Pondichery in 1689 from Sambhaji.
- Duplex was the most important French Governor in India.
- On the basis of a strong recommendation by Dost –Ali the Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah issued a farman granting permission to the French to mint and issue gold and silver currency bearing the stamp of the Mughal emperor and the name of the place of minting.
- The Dutch blocked the French commercial activities at Hugli.
- They seized San Thome near Madras in 1672 but were soon defeated by combined forces of Sultan of Golkunda and the Dutch Later Dutch established their control over San Thome.
- In the Dutch-French rivalry the Dutch were always supported by the English.
- The Dutch captured Pondichery in 1692 AD from the French but later gave back in 1697 by the **Treaty of Ryswick**. After 1742, the political motives began to overshadow commercial gains.
- The French governor Duplex began the policy of extending territorial empire in India. This led to a series of conflict with the English.
- The French fought three Carnatic wars with the English. During the third Carnatic War the French lost badly in the battle of Wandiwash in 1760 AD. With this defeat the French lost almost all their possessions in India. The battle ended by the Treaty of Paris in 1763 AD.
- Pondichery and some other French settlements were returned to the French but they were not allowed to fortify their settlements. The French continued to exist in India but they were no more a challenge to English hegemony.

TOPIC

GOVERNOR GENERALS

ROBERT CLIVE (1757-60) AND (1765-67)

- At the age of eighteen, Clive was sent out to Madras (now Chennai) as a “factor” or “writer” in the civil service of the East India Company. This was his first journey to India (1744-1753).
- The Prime Minister Pitt the Elder described Clive—who had received no formal military training whatsoever—as the “heaven-born general”,
- In July 1755, Clive returned to India again for the second time to act as deputy governor of Fort St. David, a small settlement south of Madras.
- He was Governor of Bengal from 1757-60 and again from May 1765 to Feb 1767.
- His successful conduct of the siege of Arcot in 1751 for 53 days turned the scales against the French in the Carnatic.
- In Bengal he won the battle of Plassey (1757) against Siraj ud Daula and reduced the new Nawab Mir Jafar to the position of a mere puppet of the English.
- He signed the Treaties of Allahabad with Nawab Shuja –ud Daulah of Awadh and Mughal Empire Shah Alam II in 1765.
- He started Dual Government in Bengal in 1765. The Diwani rights were taken by the Company from the Mughal Emperor and Nizamat rights were taken by the Company from Nazm-ud-Daula, the new Nawab of Bengal. Nazm-ud-Daula, became the Nawab of Bengal in Feb 1765 after the death of Mir Jafar.
- He forbade the servants of the company from indulging in private trade and made the payment of internal duties obligatory.
- He established **Society of Trade in 1765** with monopoly of trade in salt, Betel nut and tobacco. However this could not function properly. Clive decided to abolish the Society in January 1767 but the work of the society was not actually wound up till September, 1768.
- The white brigades stationed at Allahabad and Mongheyr revolted because Clive issued orders that with effect from 1st January 1766 double allowance would be paid only to officers on service outside the frontiers of Bengal and Bihar only. This is known **White Mutiny**. The white brigades decided to resign

en masse. But Clive was not daunted by these threats. He accepted all resignations and ordered the arrest and trial of all ring leaders. Further he promoted non commissioned officers even mercantile agents, and called all available troops from Madras. Clive's resolution proved effective and the white Mutiny was quelled.

- Sir George Cornwall declared in the British House of Commons in 1858 that I do most confidently maintain that no civilised government ever existed on the face of this earth which was more corrupt, more perfidious and more rapacious than the government of the East India Company from 1765 to 1784.
- Sardar K. M. Pannikar remarked that during 1765- 1772 the Company established a **robber state** in Bengal.

Treaty of Allahabad with Shuja-ud-daula of Awadh

- This treaty was signed on 16 August 1765 AD.
- By this treaty Shuja-ud-Daula surrendered Allahabad and Kara to Shah Alam II.
- Shuja-ud-Daula agreed to pay Rs. 50 lakhs to Company as war indemnity.
- Shuja-ud-Daula also confirmed Balwant Singh, the Zamindar of Banaras, in full possession of his estate.
- Nawab entered into offensive and defensive treaty with the company.

Treaty of Allahabad with Emperor Shah Alam II

- Emperor Shah Alam was taken into company's protection and he was to reside at Allahabad.
- He was given the districts of Allahabad and Kara which were taken from Awadh.
- Mughal Emperor Shah Alam- granted Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to company by a Farman issued on

12 August 1765.

- In return the Company agreed to make an annual payment of Rs. 26 lakhs to Shah Alam and Rs. 53 lakhs annually to the Nawab of Bengal for the expenses of Nizamat.

WARREN HASTINGS (1772-85)

- Warren Hastings served as a member of Calcutta council from 1761 to 1764 and as a member of Madras council from 1764 to 1769. He was appointed as the Governor of Bengal in 1772. In 1774 he became the first Governor General of

Bengal as per the provisions of Regulating Act of 1773.

- He introduced Quinquennial settlement of land revenue in 1772 by farming out lands to the highest bidder. At the time of this settlement he did not give preference to old Zamindars. In 1777 this settlement was abandoned and he reverted back to Annual settlement on the basis of open auction to the highest bidder.
- In 1772 he divided whole of Company's territory into districts and appointed European district Collectors.
- In 1773 Warren Hastings made some changes in the machinery of collection of land revenue. He appointed Indian Diwans in place of collectors who had become corrupt.
- The treasury was transferred from Murshidabad to Calcutta.
- He abolished the dual government of Bengal in 1772 and dismissed the Deputy Diwans – Muhammad Reza Khan (Bengal) and Raja Shitab Rai (Bihar).
- He appointed Munni Begam, the widow of Mir Jafar, as the guardian of new minor Nawab Mubarak-udDaula. The allowance of Nawab was reduced to Rs.16 lakhs from Rs. 32 lakhs.
- Warren Hastings stopped annual allowance of Rs. 26 lakhs given to Shah Alam II on charges of seeking protection from Marathas. He also took away Allahabad and Kara from the Mughal emperor and sold it to the Nawab of Awadh for Rs. 50 lakhs.
- He attempted the codification of Hindu and Muslim laws. In 1776 Manu Smriti was translated into English with the title "the code of Gentoo Laws". In 1791 William Jones and Colebrook prepared Digest of Hindu Laws. Fatwa-i-Alamgiri was also translated.
- He introduced reforms in judicial field also. The civil and criminal jurisdictions of courts were bifurcated by establishing Diwani and Fauzdari Adalats at district level and Sadr Diwani and Sadr Nizamat Adalats at Calcutta as appellate courts.
- Supreme Court was established at Calcutta in 1774. Elijah Impey was appointed as first Chief Justice of the Supreme Court.
- To facilitate the growth of trade and commerce Warren Hastings suppressed the customs houses of the Zamindars and only five customs houses were established at Calcutta, Hooghly, Murshidabad, Decca and Patna. He also checked the misuse of **Dastaks**. He also made efforts to develop trade links with Tibet and Bhutan.
- Warren Hastings signed **Treaty of Benaras** with Awadh in 1773 by which the money paid to the company for subsidiary force was increased from Rs.30,000

to Rs. 2.10 lakh per month. Allahabad was handed over to Nawab for Rs. 50 lakhs. A secret clause was also added to the treaty that if Nawab asked for company's help against Rohillas then he would pay an additional sum of Rs. 40 lakhs to the company.

- He participated in the Rohilla war in 1774.
- In May 1775 the **Treaty of Faizabad** was signed with Nawab of Awadh, Asaf-ud-Daula by which the money paid to the company for subsidiary force was increased from 2.10 lakhs to 2.6 lakhs. The Zamindari of Benaras was given to the company in perpetuity. The Company sold this to Chait Singh for Rs. 22 lakhs.
- In 1778 company demanded Rs. 5 lakhs from Chait Singh (Raja of Benaras). These demands were repeated again and again because company was passing through a phase of economic crisis due to continuous wars and battles. In 1781 Chait Singh was forcibly removed from his position by Warren Hastings.
- Nand Kumar was murdered with the help of judiciary by Warren Hastings because he levelled corruption charges against Governor General.
- Fought –first Anglo-Maratha war (1775-82) and signed the Treaty of Salbai (1782).
- He was associated with Begams of Oudh Affair (1782). Warren Hastings along with Nawab Wazir conspired to rob Begams of Oudh of their wealth.
- Foundation of Asiatic Society of Bengal with the help of Sir William Jones in 1784.
- Charles Wilkins translated Bhagwat Gita and Hitopadesha into English. He also invented cast printing for Bengali and Persian characters. The introduction of this English translation of Gita was written by Warren Hastings.
- Brasseley Halhed published Sanskrit grammar in 1778.
- After his return to England in 1785, impeachment proceedings were initiated against him in the House of Lords but after a long trial of 7 years he was eventually acquitted.

LORD CORNWALLIS (1786-93)

- Cornwallis commented in 1789 that one third of the territory of Hindustan is now jungle inhabited only by wild beasts.
- He is known as the father of civil services in India. He took away the judicial powers from District Collectors and appointed District Magistrates for judicial functions. By a regulation in 1793, the District Collector was deprived of his

judicial powers and made the collecting agent only. Lord Cornwallis was alarmed at the extent of power concentrated in the District Collector and felt that such absolute power was undesirable in one person.

- The District Magistrates were made head of the District Civil Courts. At lower level courts with Munsifs as the heads were created. District collectors were given the overall control of revenue collection. The administrative system of Cornwallis remained substantially in force till 1858.
- Introduced Cornwallis Code in 1793. This code was based upon the principle of separation of powers.
- Cornwallis created the Covenanted Civil Service of India which later came to be known as the Indian Civil Service.
- Introduced changes in the criminal law by amending it through Regulation IX of 1793, by which even non-Muslims could give testimony against Muslims in criminal cases.
- He abolished Faujdari Adalats and established four Circuit Courts presided over by European judges to try Criminal cases and to hear cases related to serious offences that lay beyond the jurisdiction of District judges.
- The Zamindars were divested of all police powers and Cornwallis appointed Superintendent of Police as the head of district police. The Superintendents were made in charge of an area of 1000 sq. km.
- In 1790 a ten-year settlement (Decennial settlement) was concluded with the Zamindars. This settlement was made permanent in 1793 and it came to be known as Permanent Settlement of 1793.
- He abandoned the method of procurement through contractors. Cornwallis appointed commercial Agents and Residents for the procurement of supplies.
- He fought the Third Anglo-Mysore War during 1790 - 92 against Tipu Sultan and signed the Treaty of Srirangapattanam in 1792.
- Number of members in the Board of Trade was reduced from 1 to 5.
- To reduce the prevailing corruption among the officials Cornwallis made a provision by which officials were required to declare their property under oath before they left India. He also raised salaries of the officials. The collectors were to get 1% of the total revenue collection from the district in addition to their salary of Rs. 1500.

SIR JOHN SHORE (1793-1798)

- He adopted the policy of **non-intervention** regarding Indian native states.

LORD WELLESLEY (1798-1805)

- Wellesley described himself as Bengal Tiger. He created Madras Presidency after the annexation of the

Kingdoms of Tanjore and Carnatic.

- Wellesley introduced the system of Subsidiary Alliance in 1798 which provided for defence of an Indian state by the British, stationing of British Subsidiary Force in his territory, the maintenance of which was to be borne by the ruler, stationing of a British Resident at the headquarters of the native state and British control over the external affairs of the state.
- In 1799 Wellesley fought fourth Anglo-Mysore war and annexed Mysore after defeating Tipu Sultan.
- Signed Treaty of Bassein (1802) with the Peshwa and fought second Anglo-Maratha war during 1803-05.
- In 1799-1800 sent British envoys, Mehdi Ali Khan and later John Malcolm to the court of Shah of Persia and a treaty was signed whereby the Shah agreed not to allow the French to settle in his dominions.
- In 1800 Wellesley sent an expedition of Indian troops under General David Baird to Egypt to fight against Napoleon.
- Lord Lake captured Delhi and Agra in 1803 and the Mughal emperor was put under company's protection.
- Censorship of Press Act, 1799 was passed which imposed almost wartime restrictions on the press. **Subsidiary Alliance**
- The French Governor General Duplex was the first person to start the tradition of lending troops to Indian powers to intervene in Indian political affairs. He believed that political influence will help in monopolising commercial activities.
- Earliest subsidiary treaty by the East India Company was signed in 1765 with the Nawab of Awadh whereby the Company agreed to defend the frontiers of the Awadh with its troops. The Nawab of Awadh was pay money to the company for this assistance.
- For the first time company made a treaty the Nawab of Carnatic in 1787 (by

Cornwallis) by which the state

was to surrender its foreign relations to the company.

- Wellesley introduced a new feature in this system. He demanded surrender of a part of the territory of the state (usually 1/3rd) in lieu of the cash payment.
- The subsidiary alliance gave a final blow to the French hold in India because the subsidiary state was required to dismiss all Frenchmen from its service.
- Signing of Subsidiary alliance treaty with various states

Nizam of Hyderabad

Rule of Mysore

Raja of Tanjore

Nawab of Awadh

Peshwa Baji Rao II of the Marathas Bhonsle

Raja of Berar

Sindhia

September 1798 and 1800

1799

October 1799

November 1801

31 December 1801 (Treaty of Bassein) December 1803 (Treaty of Deogaon)

December 1803

February 1804 (Treaty of Suri Arjangaon)

- Later on Rajput states followed suit – Jodhpur, Jaipur, Macheri, Bundi and the Ruler of Bharatpur Subsidiary alliance treaty signed.

GEORGE BARLOW (1805-1807)

- Earlier in 1788 he had played role in execution of the permanent settlement of Bengal.

- When the Marques of Cornwallis died in 1805, Sir George Barlow was nominated provisional governor-general.

- His passion for economy in administration and retrenchment in that capacity has caused him to be known as the only governor-general who diminished the area of British territory.

- Barlow was made governor of Madras later where his want of tact caused a mutiny of officers in 1809, similar to that which had previously occurred under

Clive.

- He adopted the policy of **non-intervention** regarding Indian native states.
- Mutiny took place at Vellore in 1806.
- Holkar accepted subsidiary alliance system by Treaty of Rajpuraghat in 1805.
- The second Anglo –Maratha war ended during his tenure.

LORD MINTO I (1807-1813)

- He signed the treaty of Amritsar in 1809 with Ranjit Singh of Punjab. By this treaty the river Satluj was accepted as the boundary between the two.
- In 1808 a rebellion took place in Travancore.
- In 1808 he sent a mission under Malcolm to Persia and a mission under Elphinstone to Kabul.

LORD HASTINGS (1813-1823)

- He renounced the policy of non-intervention and pursued aggressive policy both internally and externally.
- He was made Marquis of Hastings after his success in the Gorkha war or the Anglo-Nepalese war (1813-23). Hastings signed **Treaty of Saguali** after defeating the Gorkha leader Amar Singh
- He fought the Third Anglo-Maratha war in 1817 and defeated the Marathas. Hastings abolished Peshwaship and Peshwa was exiled at Bithur near Kanpur. The Maratha territories were annexed in the Bombay Presidency.
- He fought the Pindari war during 1817-1818 and the Pindari menace was crushed for ever. Sir Thomas Hislop also played important role in anti Pindari operations. One of the Pindari leader Karim Khan surrendered to Malcolm and he was given a jagir in Gorakhpur. Wasil Khan took refuge with Scindia and he was handed over to English. He committed suicide in captivity. Another Pindari leader Chitu escaped to forests and he was devoured by tiger.
- The company signed a treaty with the Raja of Sikkim in 1817 by which territory between Mechi and Tista rivers was given to company.
- Charles Metcalfe, the British Resident at Delhi, was deputed to negotiate alliances with Rajput states viz Udaipur, Jaipur and Jodhpur. He successfully negotiated treaties with these states.
- Hastings appointed Darogas in districts after forcing Zamindars to surrender their police forces.
- During his period the theory of British Paramountacy over the princely states

began to develop. He asked the native states to surrender external sovereignty to company and accept the policy of subordinate cooperation.

LORD AMHERST (1823-1828)

- He fought first Burmese war during 1824-26. The **Treaty of Yaudabo** was signed in 1826 with lower Burma or

Pegu by which British merchants were allowed to settle on southern coast of Burma and Rangoon.

- He captured Bharatpur state in 1826.
- Amherst was the first Governor General to meet the Mughal emperor (Akbar II) on terms of equality in 1827.

LORD WILLIAM BENTINCK (1828-35)

- He was known as the benevolent Governor General. He came closest to Indian hearts before the revolt of 1857. He took interest in introducing various kinds of reforms in India.
- He banned the practice of Sati by regulation XVII in 1829. For this Raja Ram Mohan Roy made pioneering efforts.
- He suppressed the practice Thugi in 1830. Capt. William Sleeman led military operation against the Thugs.
- He undertook steps to define the aims and objectives of the educational policy of the British Government. He appointed **the Committee on Public Instruction** under the chairmanship of Lord Macaulay. This committee recommended English as the medium of instruction and introduction of English language, literature, social and Natural Science in the curriculum.
- Macaulay, President of the committee on Public Instruction said “The educational system shall produce people Indian in blood and colour, but English in opinion, taste and morals.
- Lord William Bentick also banned female infanticide.
- First Indian Medical College was opened at Calcutta during his tenure.
- He annexed the native states of Mysore (1831), Kchhar (1832), Jaintia (1832) and Coorg (1834) on the pretext of misgovernance.
- Bentick also introduced reforms in judicial field. He allowed the use of vernacular languages for filling suits in the courts. Before this only Persian was used as the language of courts. English was to be court language in higher courts but Persian continued in lower courts.

- He abolished Provincial courts of civil Appeal and Circuit courts. Their functions were assigned to Divisional Commissioners.
- For the codification of Indian laws a Law Commission headed by Lord Macaulay was set up.
- He created the Province of Agra in 1834.
- He had earlier suppressed the Vellore Mutiny in 1806 when he was the Governor of Madras.
- For U.P and Delhi a separate Sadr Nizamat Adalat and Sadr Diwani Adalat was set up at Allahabad.
- Charter Act of 1833 was passed which further renewed the Authority of the Company rule for another 20 years. Section 87 of the 1833 Act stated that no Indian subject was to be barred from holding any office.
- The Regulation of 1833 on land revenue settlement prepared by Mertins Bird was introduced. Bird is called father of land – revenue settlement in the North. Use of field maps and field registers were prescribed for the first time.
- His reputation for ruthless financial efficiency and disregard for Indian culture led to the much-repeated story that he had once planned to demolish the Taj Mahal and sell off the marble.

SIR CHARLES METCALFE (1835-36)

- He abolished the Licensing Regulation of 1823 enacted by John Adams and removed the restrictions from press. Because of this he came to be known as “the Liberator of Indian Press”.

LORD AUCKLAND (1836-42)

- He signed the **Tripartite Treaty** involving the company, Ranjit Singh and Shah Shuja. By this treaty
- Ranjit Singh accepted company’s mediation in disputes with Amirs of Sind.
- Shah Shuja conceded his sovereign right over Sind to the company on condition of receiving the arrears of the tribute, the amount of which was to be determined by company.
- In February 1839, the Amirs of Sind accepted a treaty by which the subsidiary force of the company was to be stationed at Shikarpur and Bukkar.
- 1839-42 first Anglo Afghan war started.
- Mandvi state was annexed in 1839.

LORD ELLENBOROUGH (1842-44)

- He ended the first Anglo-Afghan war. General England, George Pollock and William Nott participated in the rescue efforts in Afghanistan. Sir Alexander Burns's was murdered in the heart of Kabul.
- Charles Napier replaced Major Outram as the Resident in Sind. Disagreeing to Napier's policy in Sind, Major Outram wrote to him that "I am sick of your policy. I will not say yours is the best, but it is undoubtedly the shortest that of the sword."
- He annexed Sind to British Empire in 1843. Charles Napier played most important role in this annexation. About the annexation of Sind, Charles Napier commented that "we have no right to seize, yet we shall do so and a very advantageous, useful, humane piece of rascality it will be". After conquest of Sind, Charles Napier was appointed as its first governor. In 1843 he fought a war with Gwalior.
- He attempted to bring back the gates of Somnath temple which were taken away by Mahmud Ghaznavi in 1025 AD.
- In 1843 the Court of Directors made it a policy that the adoption (by the princes in case of not having natural heir) should be exception and not the rule.
- He fought battles with Gwalior. Sir Hugh Gough was ordered to advance and the Maratha forces were defeated in the battles of Maharajpur and Punniar.

LORD HARDING (1844 – 48)

- He fought First Anglo-Sikh War during 1845-46 and signed the Treaty of Lahore (1846).
- The practice of slavery was abolished in 1843 by him.
- He prohibited female infanticide in 1843.
- Suppressed the practice of human sacrifice among the Khonds of central India.

LORD DALHOUSIE (1848-56)

- Dalhousie assumed charge of his dual duties as Governor-General of India and Governor of Bengal on

January 12, 1848.

- In 1853 Lord Dalhousie became the first full fledged Governor General of India. Before this the Governor General of India used to be the Governor of Bengal also. During his time the Governorship of Bengal was separated and Lord Dalhousie functioned as Governor General of India only.

Bengal, too long ruled by the Governor-General or his delegate, was placed under a separate Lieutenant-Governor in May 1854.

- Lord Dalhousie was a strong imperialistic man. He believed that no such Indian state should exist which could be annexed to company's empire in India. He used the Doctrine of Lapse, Doctrine of War and Doctrine of Misgovernance to achieve this objective.
- The Doctrine of Lapse or Law of Escheat postulated that Indian States having no natural heir should be annexed to the British Empire. The Indian States annexed by the application of this doctrine were- Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854).
- His proposal to annex Karauli in 1849 was disallowed, while Baghat and the petty estate of Udaipur, which he had annexed in 1850 and 1852 respectively, were afterwards restored to native rule.
- Dalhousie organized a separate Public Works Department by divesting the Military Board of this power in each presidency, and engineering colleges were provided. He completed the Ganges canal (1854).
- He created the department of public instruction; he improved the system of inspection of schools, abolishing the practice of branding convicts and freed converts to other religions from the loss of their civil rights
- With the object of making the civil administration more European, he closed what he considered to be the useless college in Calcutta for the education of young civilians.
- To the civil service he gave improved leave and pension rules, while he purified its moral by forbidding all share in trading concerns, by vigorously punishing insolvents, and by his personal example of careful selection in the matter of patronage.
- Introduced Wood's Dispatch known as the Magna Carta of English education in India in 1854. Charles Wood, the president of Board of control played important role in the preparation on this.

It suggested a scheme

of education from the primary to the university level.

- Dalhousie played important role in the development of Railways in India. The first railway line was opened

in April 1853 from Bombay to Thane and second line was started from Calcutta to Raniganj.

- He also gave a great impetus to the development of post and telegraph.

Telegraph lines were laid in various

parts of India. First line was opened between Calcutta and Agra.

O'Shaughnessy was appointed as

superintendent of electric telegraph department in 1852.

- Dalhousie enacted a new Post Office Act in 1854. Uniform postal rates were introduced and postage stamps

were issued for the first time in 1854.

Second Anglo-Sikh war

- He fought Second Anglo-Sikh war during 1848-49 and annexed Punjab.

- On April 19, 1848 Vans Agnew of the civil service and Lieutenant Anderson of the Bombay European regiment,

having been sent to take charge of Multan from Diwan Mulraj, were murdered there, and within a short

time the Sikh troops and sardars joined in open rebellion.

- He organized a strong army for operations in November, and himself proceeded to the Punjab. Despite the

successes gained by Herbert Edwards in the Second Anglo-Sikh War with Mulraj, and Gough's indecisive

victories at **Ramnagar** in November, at **Sadulapur** in December, and at

Chillianwallain the following month,

the stubborn resistance at Multan showed that the task required the utmost resources of the government.

- At length, on January 22, 1849, the Multan fortress was taken by General Whish, who was thus set at liberty

to join Gough at Gujrat. Here a complete victory was won on the February 21 at the Battle of Gujrat, the Sikh

army surrendered at Rawalpindi, and their Afghan allies were chased out of India.

- The war being now over, Dalhousie, without specific instructions from his superiors, annexed the Punjab,

and made provision for the control and education of the infant maharaja.

- Shimla was made summer capital and army headquarters. Headquarters of artillery was shifted from Calcutta to Meerut.
- Hindu Widow Remarriage Act was passed by him in 1856.
- Dalhousie annexed Lower Burma or Pegu in 1852 on account of ill treatment by the Burmese government of the British merchants.

Second Burmese War

- There arose a dispute between the Governor of Rangoon and certain British shipping interests. Commodore Lambert, despatched personally by Dalhousie, deliberately provoked an incident and then announced a war. Martaban was taken on April 5, 1852, and Rangoon and Bassein shortly afterwards.
- The annexation of the province of Pegu was declared by a proclamation dated December 20, 1853.
- Colonel Arthur Phayre was placed in charge of it.
- He abolished the titles and pensions of Nawab of Carnatic (1853). This was partially reversed in 1867.

Raja of Tanjore (1855)

- Stopped annual payment of Nana Saheb, adopted son of the Peshwa Baji Rao II after his death.
- Planned to stop pension and remove regal titles of the Mughal emperor after death of Bahadur Shah II but

this was rejected by the Court of Directors.

- He annexed Berar in 1853 from the Nizam of Hyderabad on account of arrears for auxiliary forces.
- In 1854 he appointed Outram as resident at the court of Lucknow, directing him to submit a report on the

condition of the province. This was furnished in March 1855. The report provided the British an excuse for action based on “disorder and misrule”. Dalhousie, looking at the treaty of 1801, decided that he could do as he wished with Oudh as long as he had the king’s consent. On November 21, 1855 the

court of directors instructed Dalhousie to assume the control of Oudh. He at once laid down instructions for Outram and a proclamation annexing the province was therefore issued on February 13, 1856. Nawab Wajid Ali Shah was exiled to Calcutta.

- Dalhousie raised Gorkha Regiments.
- Ports of India were thrown open to commerce of the world.
- By Saharanpur Rules of 1855, Dalhousie reduced the state demand of land revenue to 50% in the Mahalwari

areas.

- The famous Santhal rebellion took place during his tenure in 1855-56.
- Govt. passed **Religious Disabilities Act** to facilitate religious conversion into Christianity. This Act was

proposed in 1845 and was passed in 1850. This act provided the right to inherit ancestral property to Hindu converts to Christianity. This Act was also known as **Lex Loci Act**.

LORD CANNING (1856-62)

- He entered upon the duties of his office in India at the close of February 1856.
- He was first viceroy of British India. Canning was given the additional designation of Viceroy in 1858 when the British crown took over Indian empire from the company.
- The great revolt of 1857 took place during his tenure. After the suppression of the revolt Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah was exiled to Rangoon (Burma).
- The famous Indigo revolt of Bengal took place in 1859-60. The plight of Indigo planters was depicted by Din Bandhu Mitra in his book Neel Darpan.
- He announced Queen Victoria's Proclamation at Allahabad on 1st November 1858.
- The government of India Act 1858 was passed during his tenure. This act created the post Secretary of State for India. He was assisted by a council of 15 members known as India Council.
- Indian Council Act of 1861 was also passed during his tenure. The act provided for the setting up of Legislative Councils both at the Central and provincial level.
- Portfolio system of government was introduced by Indian Council Act of 1861.
- Doctrine of Lapse started by Lord Dalhousie was officially withdrawn in 1857.
- In 1857 the universities at Calcutta, respectively. Bombay and Madras were established.

- The European troops of the EIC revolted in 1859. This is known as White Mutiny.
- Rajput states of Baghat and Udaipur were returned to their respective rulers on the ground that they were protected ally and not subordinate states.
- Penal Code of 1860 declared slave-trade in India illegal.

LORD ELGIN (1862-63)

- He suppressed the Wahabi movement
- He died in Dharamsala in 1863.

SIR ROBERT NAPIER (OFFICIATING)

- In December 1845 he joined the Army of the Sutlej and commanded the Bengal Engineers at the Battle of

Mudki. He was severely wounded at the battle of Ferozeshah on 1845-12-31 while storming the Sikh camp.

- He was also present at the battle of Sobraon on 1846-02-10 and in the advance on Lahore.

• He also participated in Second Anglo-Sikh War. In 1848 Napier was again called into action, to direct the

siege of Multan. In September 1848 he was wounded in the attack, but managed to be present at the successful storming of Multan on 1849-01-23 and the surrender of the fortress of Chiniot.

- Joining Sir Hugh Gough, Napier then took part in the battle of Gujrat in February 1849, accompanied Sir Walter Gilbert as he pursued the Sikhs, and was present at the passage of the Jhelum, and the surrender of the Sikh army.
- He also played role in suppression of the revolt of 1857. He was appointed military secretary and adjutantgeneral to Sir James Outram, whose forces took part in the actions leading to the first relief of Lucknow on 1857-09-25. He then took charge of Lucknow's defence until the second relief, when he was badly wounded while crossing an exposed space with Outram and Sir Henry Havelock to meet with Sir Colin Campbell.
- He then joined Sir Hugh Rose as second-in-command in the march on Gwalior, and commanded the 2nd Brigade at the battle of Morar on 1858-06-16.
- After Gwalior was taken he was given the task of pursuing the enemy. With only 700 men he pursued and caught Tantia Tope and 12,000 men on the plains of Jaora Alipur and completely defeated him.

SIR JOHN LAWRENCE (1864-69)

- He was famous for his Policy of **Masterly inactivity**. This policy was associated with Afghanistan. He remained watchful about the activities taking place in Afghanistan but he did not intervene there.
- In 1869-70 Telegraphic communication started with Europe.
- High Courts were set up at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865.
- In 1864 he fought war with Bhutan.
- In 1865-66 a severe famine took place in Orissa. It took heavy tolls.
- In domestic affairs, he increased educational opportunities for Indians, but at the same time limited the use of native Indians in high civil service posts.

LORD MAYO (1869-72)

- He consolidated the frontiers of and reorganised the country's finances; he also did much to promote irrigation, railways, forests and other useful public works.
- He initiated the policy of financial and administrative decentralization India in 1870.
- First census was held in India in 1872.
- Established the Rajkot College in Kathiawar and the Mayo College at Ajmer in Rajasthan for the education and political training of the Indian Princes.
- The Statistical Survey of India was set up by him. He also established the Department of Agriculture and Commerce.
- He began the system of state railways.
- While visiting the convict settlement at Port Blair in the Andaman Islands, for the purpose of inspection, he was assassinated by Sher Ali, a Muslim convict.

SIR JOHN STRACHEY (OFFICIATING)

- On the assassination of Lord Mayo in 1872 he acted temporarily as viceroy.
- In 1861, Lord Canning had appointed him president of a commission to investigate the great cholera epidemic of that year.
- In 1864, after the report of the royal commission on the sanitary condition of the army, a permanent sanitary commission was established in India, with Strachey as president.
- He was joint author with his brother Lt-Gen Sir Richard Strachey of *The Finances and Public Works of India* (1882), besides writing *India* (3rd ed., 1903), and *Hastings and the Rohilla War* (1892).

LORD NORTHBROOK (1872-1876)

- In 1872 the Kuka revolt took place in Punjab.
- In 1874 famine occurred in Bihar.
- Prince of Wales visited India in 1875.
- The Gaekwad ruler of Baroda was deposed by him in 1875.
- In January 1876, however, he resigned. He had recommended the conclusion of arrangements with Sher Ali of Afghanistan. This would have prevented the Second Afghan War but his policy was overruled by the Duke of Argyll, then Secretary of State.

LORD LYTTON (1876-80)

- Lytton was known to literary world as Owen Meridith.
- He was a reactionary Governor General. During his tenure many unpopular measures were initiated.
- A great famine took place in 1876-78 in most parts of India. This had maximum impact in Madras province because of this it was known as Madras famine.
- In 1876 the Royal Title Act was passed by British Parliament and the title of “Empress of India” (Kaiser-i-Hind) was conferred upon Queen Victoria. This title was formally assumed by queen at Delhi Durbar held in January 1877.
- In 1878 Lytton enacted Vernacular Press Act to suppress Indian native press. This act empowered a magistrate to call upon the printer and publisher of any vernacular newspaper to enter into an undertaking not to publish any news which would create antipathy against the government.
- Arms Act was passed in 1878 which declared keeping, bearing and trafficking in arms without a license a criminal offence. The Europeans, Anglo-Indians and same categories of government officials were exempted from the provisions of this act.
- He started Statutory Civil Services in 1878.
- He lowered the maximum age from 21 years to 19 years for the Civil Services Examination in order to prevent Indians from entering civil Services.
- Lytton appointed a Famine Commission under Sir Richard Strachey.
- He dropped the Policy of Masterly Inactivity and initiated aggressive Forward Policy. He fought second Anglo-Afghan war during 1878-80. This proved to be a misadventure and the war ended in a failure.
- In 1879 Lytton removed the 5% advalorem duties from imported cotton

products.

- In 1879 Deccan Agriculturists Relief Act (DARA) was passed to provide relief to the peasants against the money lenders.
- Interstate smuggling of salt was stopped by him. Princes of the Indian states were made to surrender rights to manufacture salt.

GEORGE ROBINSON/LORD RIPON (1880-84)

- He was appointed by Liberal Party under Gladstone.
- First Factory Act was passed by him in 1881 for the welfare of child labour. This prohibited employment of children below the age of seven years. This act also limited the number of working hours for children below the age of twelve and required the dangerous machinery to be fenced. This act was applicable only to factories employing 100 or more hands.
- Vernacular Press Act of 1878 was repealed in 1882.
- Foundation of local Self- Government (1882) – passing of local self- Government acts in various provinces during the period 1883-85.
- First decennial & regular census was held in 1881 which put the total population figure at 254 millions.
- Ripon advanced further the process of financial decentralization in 1882 which was earlier initiated by Lord Mayo.
- An education commission was appointed under Sir William Hunter in 1882.
- Ripon was associated with the Ilbert Bill controversy. In 1883-84 he sought to abolish the judicial disqualification based on race. Sir C.P. Ilbert, the law member of the Viceroy's Council prepared a bill which sought to abolish the judicial disqualification based on race. There was a strong protest on the part of the Europeans particularly the English. The Europeans formed **European Defence Association** to oppose Ilbert bill. Eventually under pressure the government amended the bill and provided for the rights of the Europeans to claim trial by jury of 12 out of which at least 7 were to be Europeans.
- Rippon resigned from the Governor Generalship over this issue.
- In 1881 Rippon restored the state of Mysore which was annexed by Lord William Bentinck.
- He framed a Famine Code in 1883.
- He is remembered for his liberal measures and known as Ripon the popular.
- He usually said "Judge me by my works and not by my words".
- He sought unsuccessfully to modify the permanent Settlement of Bengal by

proposing to give permanence and security to the ryot. The Zamindars of Bengal opposed this.

- Rippon set up department of Agriculture and commerce.
- Pandit Madan Mohan Malviya in his Presidential Address of the Congress (1909) said that Ripon was the greatest and most beloved Viceroy whom India has ever known.
- Surendra Nath Banerjee said that Ripon is remembered for the purity of his intentions, the loftiness of his ideals, the righteousness of his policy and his hatred of racial disqualifications.

LORD DUFFERIN (1884-88)

- In 1885-86 he fought third Burmese war and finally annexed Burma.
- India national Congress was founded during his tenure in 1885.
- He passed Bengal Tenancy Act in 1885 to check unjust eviction of peasants by the land lords. He also passed the Act of 1887 for Punjab tenants.
- He challenged the mass character of Congress and Commented in 1888 that the Congress represented a microscopic minority.
- He carried out the delimitation of North-Western boundary with Afghanistan.
- In 1888, he published the *Report on the Conditions of the Lower Classes of Population in Bengal* (known as the **Dufferin Report**). The report highlighted the plight of the poor in Bengal, and was used by nationalists to counter the Anglo-Indian claim that British rule had been beneficial to the poorest members of Indian society. Following publication of the report, Dufferin recommended the establishment of provincial and central councils with Indian membership, a key demand of Congress at that time.
- He was frequently occupied with external affairs during his tenure. He successfully dealt with the **Panjdeh incident** of 1885 in Afghanistan, in which Russian forces encroached into Afghan territory around the Panjdeh oasis. Britain and Russia had for decades been engaged in a virtual cold war in Central and South Asia known as the Great Game, and the Panjdeh incident threatened to precipitate a full-blown conflict. Lord Dufferin negotiated a settlement in which Russia kept Panjdeh but relinquished the furthest territories it had taken in its advance.

LORD LANSDOWNE (1888-94)

- Division of the civil services into imperial, provincial and subordinate was

carried out by him.

- Indian Councils act of 1892 was passed during his tenure.
- Passed the Second Factory Act of 1891.
- Passed the *Age of Consent Act* in 1891 which forbade marriage of girl below 12.
- He set up Durand Commission in 1893. This commission demarcated Indo-Afghan boundary (Durand Line).

LORD ELGIN II (1894-99)

- Plague broke out in Bombay in 1896.
- Lyall Commission was appointed to look into the cause of famines.
- A great drought took place in 1899.
- Munda Uprising was suppressed and its leader Birsa Munda was captured and killed.

LORD CURZON (1899-1905)

- He separated the North Western part of Punjab and created of a new province called the **North West**

Frontier Province in 1899.

- In 1899 Calcutta Corporation Act was enacted which provided for the reduction of elected members.
- India was put on gold-standard in 1899.
- Curzon appointed an irrigation Commission in 1902 under the chairmanship of **Sir Colin Scott Moncriff**.
- Curzon appointed a **police Commission** under the presidentship of **Sir Andrew Frazer** to inquire into the

police administration in 1902-03. It recommended for enhancement in salaries and creation of a Department of Criminal Intelligence.

- In 1902 Curzon appointed Universities Commissions under **Sir Thomas Raleigh**. The recommendations of this commission formed the basis of Indian Universities Act in 1904. It provided for an increase in the official control over universities by enhancing nominated members over elected ones.
- Pusa Agricultural institute was established in 1903.
- Curzon also created a new Department of Commerce and industry.

- In 1904 Curzon enacted Ancient Monuments Protection Act for the preservation of India's Cultural heritage. This was followed by the foundation of Archaeological Survey of India. During his tenure, Curzon undertook the restoration of the Taj Mahal.
- Partition of the province of Bengal into Bengal proper and East Bengal and Assam was carried out in 1905 on the grounds of administrative inconvenience but the real motto was to weaken the national movement. The Indian nationalists launched Swadeshi Movement in order to protest against the partition of Bengal.
- It is said about him that Like James II of England, Curzon knew the art of making enemies.
- He sent a military expedition into Tibet led by Francis Younghusband in 1904 ostensibly to forestall a Russian advance. After bloody conflicts with Tibet's poorly-armed defenders, the mission penetrated to Lhasa, where a treaty was signed in September 1904. No Russian presence was found in Lhasa.
- He adopted policy of centralization and officialisation in the name of efficiency.
- A major famine coincided with Curzon's time as viceroy. Large parts of India were affected and millions died. Curzon implemented a variety of measures to fight the famine, including opening up famine relief works that fed between 3 million and five million, reducing taxes and spending vast amounts of money on irrigation works.
- He also appointed MacDonnell Commission on Famine in 1901.
- Official Secrets Act was passed in 1904 which extended the scope of sedition.
- His biography "The life of Lord Curzon" was written by Ronaldshay.
- He followed a policy of patronage and intrusive surveillance towards the princes of Indian states and put restrictions on their trips to Europe.
- A difference of opinion with the British military Commander-in-Chief in India, Lord Kitchener, regarding the position of the military member of council in India, led to a controversy in which Lord Curzon failed to obtain support from the home government. He resigned in August 1905 and returned to England.
- According to Rabindranath Tagore Curzon was untouched by hand, i.e. the human element was missing.

LORD MINTO II (1905-10)

- Swadeshi Movement was launched.
- Split in the Congress took place at its Surat Session in 1907.

- Morley – Minto reforms or the Indian Councils Act of 1909 was enacted.
- Muslim League was founded in 1906.
- In 1908 News Papers Act was enacted.
- Lord S.P. Sinha became the first Indian member to be appointed as a member of Governor- Generals Executive council.
- The partition of Bengal came into force on 16th October, 1905.
- Khudi Ram Bose was hanged on April 30, 1908.
- British Government formally adopts the policy of divide and rule. Its first formal manifestation was reservation of seats for Muslim in the 1909 reform.
- Tilak was sentenced for 6 years of imprisonment and he was sent to Mandalay Jail.
- B. C. Pal and Aurobindo Ghose retired from public life. Aurobindo later led a spiritual life and established his Ashram at Pondichery.

LORD HARDINGE (1910-16)

- Coronation Durbar was held in 1911 at Delhi in the honour of George V. The partition of Bengal was revoked in this durbar. The transfer of the Capital to Delhi from Calcutta was also announced.
- A separate state of Bihar and Orissa was created in 1911.
- A bomb was thrown on his carriage at Chandni Chowk in Delhi in 1912 while he was entering the capital.
- Ghadar movement was started in 1915.
- Education Resolution of the Government of India was passed in February 1913 by which the Government took responsibility to eradicate illiteracy.
- Defence of India Act, 1915 was enacted to counter nationalist activities.
- G.K. Gokhle and Pherozshah Mehta died in 1915.

FREDERIC JOHN NAPIER THESIGER /LORD CHELMSFORD (1916-21)

- Foundation of two Home Rule Leagues – one by Tilak & other by Mrs. Annie Besent (1916). Madras Government interns Mrs. Annie Besent.
- Lucknow Session and the reunion of the congress (1916).
- Lucknow Pact between the Congress and the Muslim League (1916).
- August Declaration (1917) by Montague, the secretary of state.
- The Government of India Act of 1919.
- Launching of Khilafat Movement (1919-20)

- Launching of the Non-cooperation Movement (1920-22).
- Jallianwala Bagh tragedy occurred in April 1919. Hunter Committee was constituted on Punjab wrongs.
- Foundation of Women's University at Poona in 1916. Foundation of Banaras Hindu University at Banaras in 1916.
- India stirred against the Rowlatt Act.
- Aligarh Muslim University was founded.
- Communist activities began in India.
- Chambers of princess was established in 1921.
- Mopilla uprising took place in 1921.
- Prince of Wales visited India in 1921.

LORD READING (1921-26)

- Chauri Chaura incident (5th Feb. 1922) & the withdrawal of Non-cooperation Movement by Gandhi.
- Foundation of Rashtriya Swyam Sevak Sangh (RSS) by K.B. Hedgewar at Nagapur in 1925.
- Beginning of Indianisation of the officers cadre of the Indian army.
- Foundation of the Communist Part of India (1925).
- Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and Rowlatt Act of 1919.
- Certification of salt tax was carried out.
- Railway budget was separated from General Budget in 1925.
- Inter University Board was formed.
- Royal Commission on Agriculture was established.
- **Skeen Committee or Indian Sandhurst Committee** on Army reforms was appointed in 1925. It submitted its Report in 1926.
- Lee Commission on Public Services in 1924. Report Submitted in 1924.
- Young Hilton Committee on Currency (1926).

E. F. L. WOOD/LORD IRWIN (1926-31)

- Popularly known as Christian Viceroy.
- The Indian States Commission under Harcourt Butler was appointed in 1927 to recommend measures for the establishment of better relations between the Indian states and the Central Government.
- **Deepawali Declaration** that India would be granted Dominion status in due course was announced in October 1929.

- Simon Commission visited India in 1928.
- **Independence of India League** was founded by Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Bose to pressurise the Congress for accepting the goal of Complete Independence.
- Civil Disobedience Movement was started with Dandi March of Gandhi in 1930.
- Gandhi Irwin Pact was signed on March 5, 1931.
- Indian Navy Act was passed.
- The Royal commission on Agriculture submitted its report.
- Imperial Council of Agriculture Research was founded.
- Royal commission on Indian Labour was appointed (1929). It submitted its report in 1931.
- First and second Round Table Conferences took place in London.
- Simon Commission submitted its report in May, 1930.
- Lahore Congress (1929). Congress demanded Poorna Swaraj. Jawaharlal Nehru hoisted tricolour of Indian independence on Dec. 31.1929.
- Sharda Act was passed in 1929. Marriage of girls below 14 and boys below 18 years of age was prohibited.

LORD WILLINGTON (1931-36)

- Government of India Act of 1935 was enacted.
- Foundation of the Congress Socialist Party by Acharya Narendra dev and Jai Prakash Narayan in 1934.
- Formation of the All India Kisan Sabha in 1936. Second Round Table conference held in 1931.
- Communal Award was announced in August 1932.
- Individual Civil Disobedience movement was launched in January 1933.
- Civil Disobedience Movement was formally withdrawn in 1934 from Patna.
- Poona Pact was signed between Gandhi and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar.
- Indian Military Academy was set up at Dehardun in 1932.
- Third Round Table Conference was held in 1931-32.
- White Paper on political reforms in India was published in 1933.
- Burma and Aden was separated from the British India Empire in 1935.
- Orissa, Bihar and Sind were made new States (1935).
- Lee –Moody Pact (October 1933). By this Bombay textiles group agreed to further preferences for British textiles in place of Japanese imports in return for a

Lancashire promise to buy more Indian raw cotton.

- Muslim Conference was founded in Kashmir (1932). It was renamed as National Conference in 1938. Important leaders-Sheikh Abdhullah and P.N. Bajaj.

LORD LINLITHGOW (1936-43)

- Muslim league celebrated of the resignation of Congress Ministries (after the outbreak of World War II) as

Deliverance Day on 22 December, 1939.

- Cripps Mission came to India in March 1942.
- Passing of the Quit India Resolution by the congress and outbreak of the August Revolution or Revolt of

1942.

- Muslim League at its Lahore Session (1940) passed Pakistan resolution.
- Singapore fell to the British and Rangoon was evacuated.
- Individual Civil disobedience was started by the congress in October 1940.
- Rabindra Nath Tagore died in 1941.
- Subhas Chandra Bose resigns from the congress (1939) and forms Forward Bloc.
- At its Haripura Session (February 1939) Congress declared Poona Swaraj ideal to cover native states and

British India.

LORD WAVELL (1943-47)

- He prepared Wavell Plan to end the prevailing political deadlock in India and called Shimla conference to discuss this plan. Congress was represented by Maulana Azad (President of Congress) in this conference.
- Cabinet Mission visited India in March 1946.
- Muslim League launched Direct Action Day on 16th August, 1946.
- RIN mutiny took place in February 1946.
- General Elections were held in 1945-46.
- On 2nd September 1946 Interim Government was formed.
- On 20th February 1947 Clement Attlee, the Prime Minister of Britain, announced that the British will leave India by June 1948.

LORD MOUNTBATTEN (1947-48)

- He was the last Governor General of British Indian empire and the first Governor General of free India.
- He proposed Balkan Plan in April 1947 when Muslim League and Congress could not agree about the form of independence. This plan proposed the transfer of sovereignty to all the native states and provinces of British India. But this plan was dropped later.
- He prepared Mountbatten Plan/3rd June plan. This plan provided for the partition and independence of India. This plan is also known as Dickie-Bird plan.
- He played important role in annexation of Princely States to Indian Union.
- He developed a strong relationship with the Indian princes who were said to have considerable confidence in him, and on the basis of his relationship with the British monarchy persuaded most of them to accede to the new states of India and Pakistan.
- After Independence (midnight of 14 August/15 August 1947, celebrated on the 14th in Pakistan and the 15th in India) he remained in New Delhi for ten months, serving as the first of independent India's two governors general until June 1948.
- Mountbatten's nickname among family and friends was "Dickie".

C. RAJAGOPALACHARI

- Chakravarthi Rajagopalachari (December 10, 1878 - December 25, 1972), known as Rajaji or C.R., was an Indian lawyer, writer, statesman and a devout Hindu. He was the second Governor-General of independent India.
- *Rajaji started to take part in the politics of the nation at the beginning of the 1900s. At first he was drawn towards Bal Gangadhar Tilak. He had a good relationship with V. O. Chidambaram Pillai, an ardent follower of Tilak. During the Home Rule League days he admired Dr. Annie Besant and he highly revered Salem C. Vijayaraghavachariar, one of the founders of the Congress Party.*
- Rajaji, Nehru and Patel were christened the "head, heart and hands" of Gandhi.
- Both of Sardar Patel and Rajaji were averse to socialism and communism.
- Though he was active in Congress for nearly 50 years, Rajaji was not Congress president even once. In 1932 he was the acting President of Congress Party and played a vital role in forging the Poona Pact with Ambedkar.
- Rajaji was perhaps the earliest Congress leader in the 1940s to accept the right of Muslims to self-determination. He devised a formula whereby there could be

common defence and communications between the two nations.

- He became a member of the Governor's Council in 1946 and first held the portfolios of Education and Arts and in Jan, 1947 held the portfolio of Industries and Supply and after the resignation of Liaquat Ali Khan from the Interim Government, the portfolio of Finance was also held by him. In 1948, after Indian independence was attained, he replaced Mountbatten to become the only Indian Governor-General of India, in which post he continued until the Republic was declared on January 26, 1950. The office was replaced by that of President, first held by Rajendra Prasad.
- Rajaji became a member of Jawaharlal Nehru's cabinet, first without portfolio, then, after Patel's death, as Home Minister. He was chief minister of Madras from 1952 to 1954.
- Potti Sriramulu called for a separate state by the name of Andhra and went on an unconditional fast until his goal was achieved. He died following complications that arose during the fast. Rajaji did not intervene to break the fast or provide medical help for Sriramulu even though the fast had continued for over 50 days.
- Just ahead of the 1957, CR and his followers broke away from the Congress and formed the Congress Reform Committee. He came to an understanding with his former adversary, Forward Bloc leader U. Muthuramalingam Thevar, in forming an anti-Congress front. The two parties contested the elections jointly. In September CRC was renamed the Indian National Democratic Congress.
- In July 1957, CR merged his INDC into the Swatantra Party. He attacked the license-permit Raj fearing its potential for corruption and stagnation, even while the tide was in favour of Nehru's socialistic pattern.
- There were many great personalities who got themselves affiliated with the Swatantra Party such as K.M. Munshi, Prof. N.G. Ranga, Minoo Masani, H.M. Patel, V.P. Menon and Gayatri Devi of Jaipur.

TOPIC

5 REVOLUTIONARY TERRORISTS MOVEMENT

RISE OF REVOLUTIONARY TERRORISTS MOVEMENT

- The failure of the Moderates and the extremists to get anything substantial from the British government.
- Repressive policy of the British government such as enactment of various laws

making it an offence to preach nationalism (1898), restriction on the freedom of the press (1908), Imprisonment of dignitaries such as Tilak and other important personalities for preaching nationalism through newspaper etc.

- Influence of Western ideas and Western methods of struggle such as Irish movement.
- Existence of a Militant Nationalist School of thought in the Nationalist Movement represented by Raj Narain Bose and Ashwini Kumar Dutt in Bengal and Vishnu Shastri Chipulunkar in Maharashtra and the emergence of eminent extremist leaders in the beginning of the 20th century e.g. Bal Gangadhar Tilak in Maharashtra, Bipin Chandra Pal and Aurobindo Ghosh in Bengal, Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh (Uncle of Bhagat Singh) in Punjab, T. Prakasam and M. Krishna Rao in Andhra, V.O. Chidambaram Pillai in South Tamilnadu, etc. also helped in the spread of extremism.

DEVELOPMENT OF REVOLUTIONARY TERRORISTS MOVEMENT

1897

- Damodar Chapekar and his brother Balakrishna Chapekar carried out the first political murder at Poona on

22nd June 1897.

- They wanted to kill Mr. Rand, the President of Plague committee but Lt. Ayerst was shot dead accidentally.
- Chapekar brothers were associated with Hindu Dharma Sangha.
- Tilak praised their act in his papers **Maratha and Kesari**. For this he was tried and sentenced for 18 months

R.I.

1899

- V.D. Savarkar set up an association called “**Mitra Mela**” at Nasik.
- In 1904 V.D. Savarkar organized “**Abhinav Bharat**”. Mitra Mela was merged with Abhinav Bharat. **1902**
- P. Mitra and Satish Chandra Bose organized “**Anushilan Samiti**” at Calcutta. Aurobindo Ghose and Sister

Nivedita, the Irish disciple of Swami Vivekananda greatly encouraged and supported it.

- Pulin Das organized another “**Anushilan Samiti**” at Dacca. It had about 500 branches in East Bengal. **1905**

- Shyamji Krishna Varma set up “**India Home Rule society**” at London. This was popularly known as “**India**

House” .

- He was originally a resident of Kathiawar. He was studying at Cambridge.
- He also published a monthly journal “**Indian Sociologist**” to espouse Indian causes.
- In May 1907 India House celebrated the golden jubilee of Indian Revolt of 1857 and V.D. Savarkar described

it a war of independence.

- Savarkar’s views were described in 1908 in his book “**The Indian war of independence**”.
- India House also published a pamphlet titled Grave Warning. Its copies were distributed in London and in

India.

- Barindra Kumar Ghose published a pamphlet titled “**Bhavani Mandir**” indicating a detailed plan for organizing a centre of revolutionary activities. This was followed by the publication of “**Vartaman Rananiti**”.
- The Bengali revolutionaries also published Yugantar and Sandhya.
- They also published a pamphlet titled “Mukti Kon Pathe”.

1907

- Barindra Kumar Ghose and Bhupendra Nath Dutta made unsuccessful attempt on the life of Fuller, the Lt. Governor of West Bengal.

1908

- In April 1908, Prafulla Chaki and Khudiram Bose threw a bomb at a carriage which they believed was occupied by Mr. Kingsford, the unpopular Judge of Muzaffarpur.
- By mistake this bomb fell on a carriage carrying Mr. Kennedy and two ladies were killed.
- Prafulla Chaki and Khudiram Bose were arrested. Chaki shot himself dead while Bose was tried and hanged.

1908

- Pulin Das of Dacca Anushilan Samiti carried out Barrah dacoity.

1908

- Ghose brothers i.e. Aurobindo Ghose and Barindra Kumar Ghose were tried in

Alipur Conspiracy case.

- They were arrested when police seized huge cache of arms from Maniktala Gardens during searches.
- Narendra Gosain, who turned approver, was shot dead in jail.
- Barindra Kumar Ghose was sentenced for life but Aurobindo Ghose was acquitted.
- B.G. Tilak lauded the Bengali revolutionaries for their higher aims. For this he was tried and sentenced for 6 years R.I. He was sent to Mandalay Jail in Burma.

1908-09

- Madam Bhikaji Kama founded “**Paris India Society**” in Paris.
- She also founded “**Independent India Society**” in Paris.
- She also published a journal “**Vande Mataram**” to espouse Indian causes.
- She represented India at International Socialist Congress at Stuttgart in August 1907. After the end of the conference she unfurled the national flag of India. This was tricolour in green, yellow and red. This was the first occasion when Indian tri-colour was unfurled.
- She was known as *the mother of Indian revolution*. Sardar Singh Rana was her associate.

1909

- Madan Lal Dhingra shot dead Col. William Curzon Wylie, political ADC to India Office.
- Dhingra was arrested and hanged. Savarkar was arrested and was deported to India where he was sentenced for life. Shyamji Krishna Varma left London and settled in Paris.

Nov. 1909

- Ahmadabad bomb case took place.

21st Dec. 1909

- Mr. Jackson, the unpopular district magistrate of Nasik was shot dead by Anant Lakshmana Kharkare. Kharkare was a member of Abhinav Bharat.
- Jackson had arrested Ganesh Savarkar, the brother of V.D. Savarkar. Ganesh was sentenced for life imprisonment.
- The action taken by the government in this connection is known as “**Nasik conspiracy case**”.

1910

- **Satara conspiracy** took place.
- Vanchi Ayyer and Nilkanth Brahmachari of Bharat Mata Association murdered

Ashe, the District Magistrate of Tirunavelli.

- Ayyer founded **India Mother Association**.

1912

- Rash Bihari Bose and Sachin Sanyal threw a bomb on the Viceroy Lord Hardinge while he was passing through Chandni Chowk at the time of his state entry in Delhi on 23rd December 1912. Hardinge was wounded and his attendants were killed.
- The action taken by the government in this connection is known as **Delhi conspiracy case**.
- 13 persons were arrested in this case. They included Master Amir Chand, Dina Nath, Bal Mukund, Balraj Bhalla, Basant Kumar Biswas and Avadh Bihari.
- Dina Nath had turned approver.

1913

- Lala Har Dayal founded “Hindi Association” in Portland in May 1913. A weekly paper “The Ghadar” was started and set up their HQ called Yugantar Ashram in San Francisco.
- On 1st Nov. 1913 1st issue of Ghadar was published in Urdu language. 2nd issue was published on 9th Dec. in Gurmukhi.
- The Ghadar was published in Urdu, Gurmukhi, Gujarati and Hindi.
- The Ghadar Party planned for all India revolution. Lala Har Dayal, Baba Harnam Singh, Sohan Singh Bhakna were main leaders of Ghadar movement.
- Ras Bihari Bose, Sachindranath Sanyal, Ganesh Pingle and Baghi Kartar Singh prepared the master plan for this purpose.
- This plan for all India revolt failed because one Kirpal Singh passed all the secret of the plan to the government.

1914

- Kamagatamaru incident occurred in September 1914.

1915

- Raja Mahendra Pratap, Barkhatulla, Maulana Bashir, C. Pillai, Dr. Mathura Singh, Shamsher Singh, Muhammad Ali, Khudabaksh, Maulana Abdulla and Abdullah Sindhi formed Provisional government of free India in Kabul.
- Raja Mahendra Pratap was the President of this government and Md. Barkhatulla was the Prime Minister.
- Raja Mahendra Pratap met Lenin to seek support for his interim government.
- The silk handkerchief conspiracy was associated with Abdullah Sindhi.
- In 1915 Jatindranath Mukherjee popularly known as Bagha (tiger) Jatin tried to capture Fort William situated in Balasore. He was surrounded by police on 9th

September 1915 and was killed after a heroic fight.

1924

- In January 1924 Gopinath Saha and Kartar Singh Sarabha attempted to assassinate Charles Tegart, the hated Police Commissioner of Calcutta but by an error another Englishman named Day was killed.

1924

- After the death of C.R. Das the Congress leadership in Bengal got divided into two wings, one led by Subhas Chandra Bose and the other by J.M. Sengupta. The Yugantar group joined forces with the first and Anushilan with the second.

1924

- Ram Prasad Bismil, Jogesh Chatterjee, Chandra Shekhar Azad and Sachindranath Sanyal met in October 1924 at Kanpur and founded the Hindustan Republican Association (or Army).
- **The Revolutionary** was the main mouthpiece of HRA.
- Sachindranath Sanyal wrote journal titled **Bandi Jivan**. This was published in Hindi and Gurumukhi languages.
- HRA declared that its aim is overthrow colonial rule from India through armed revolution and to establish the republic of United States of India.

1925

- On 9 August 1925 the revolutionaries carried out a train robbery in 8 down train at Kakori.
- Ashfaqullah Khan, Ram Prasad Bismil, Roshan Singh and Rajendra Lahiri were hanged. Four others were sent to Andaman for life and seventeen others were sentenced to long terms of imprisonment. Only Chandra Shekhar Azad could escape.

1928

- Young revolutionaries such as Bijoy Kumar Sinha, Shiv Varma and Jaidev Kapur of U.P., Bhagat Singh, Bhagvati Charan Vohra and Sukhdev of Punjab, Jatindranath, Ajay Ghose and Fanindranath Ghose of Bengal met under the leadership of Chandra Shekhar Azad at Firozshah Kotla ground at Delhi on 9 and 10 September 1928.
- They created a new leadership, adopted Socialism as their goal and changed the name of Hindustan Republican Association (or Army) to Hindustan Socialist Republican Association (Army).

1928

- On 30th October 1928 Lala Lajpat Rai was brutally beaten by police while he was leading anti-Simon agitation at Lahore.

- He succumbed to his injuries on 17th November 1928.
- On 17th December 1928 Bhagat Singh, Azad and Rajguru assassinated Saunders at Lahore railway station.
- The action taken by the government in this connection is known as **Lahore conspiracy case**.

1929

- On 8th April 1929 Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutta threw a bomb in Central Legislative Assembly against the passage of the **Public Safety Bill** and **the Trade Disputes Bill**.
- The bomb was deliberately thrown on empty benches because they did not want to kill any body.
- Here Bhagat Singh for the first time used the slogan of Inquilab Zindabad (written by Iqbal).
- They were arrested and tried. Later their trial was combined with Lahore Conspiracy Case (Saunders's murder).
- Jatin Das died in jail on 13 September on 64th day of his epic fast. He was opposing the inhuman treatment meted out to the revolutionaries. He was demanding that the revolutionaries should be treated as political prisoners.
- Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and Rajguru were sentenced to be hanged. The sentence was carried out on 23 March 1931.

1930

- On 18th April 1930 a group of six revolutionaries, led by Ganesh Ghosh captured the Police Armoury at Chittagong.
- Another group of ten revolutionaries led by Lokenath Paul took over the Auxiliary force Armoury along with its Lewis guns and 303 army rifles. But they could not take cartridges with them in hurry.
- Ganesh Ghosh, Lokenath Paul, Anant Singh, Anand Gupta, Tegra Bal, Ambika Chakravarti, Pritilata Wadekar and Kalpana Dutt were members of IRA under Surya Sen.
- In all sixty five revolutionaries were involved in the raid which was undertaken in the name of the Indian Republican Army's Chittagong Branch.
- After this loot all the revolutionaries gathered outside police armory under the leadership of Surya Sen. They shouted the slogans of Bande Mataram and Inquilab Zindabad. They also proclaimed a provisional Revolutionary Government.
- Surya Sen was finally arrested on 16 February 1933. He was tried and hanged on 12 January 1934.

- In 1933 police arrested Jawaharlal Nehru and he was sentenced to a two year term in Jail for sedition because he praised the heroism of revolutionary youth.
- Surya Sen had participated in Non-cooperation movement. He became a teacher in a school in Chittagong. Because of this came to be popularly known as *Masterda*.
- Chittagong IRA cadre included many Muslims like Sattar, Mir Ahmad, Fakir Ahmad Khan and Tunu Mian.

1931

- Chandrasekhar Azad shot himself dead during an encounter in Alfred Park at Allahabad on 27th February 1931.
- In December 1931 two school girls of Comilla Shanti Ghosh and Suniti Chowdhary shot dead District magistrate of Comilla.

1932

- In February 1932 Bina Das fired at Governor of Bengal from point blank range while receiving her degree at convocation.

1940

- Udham Singh killed Michael O'Dwyer in March 1940 in London to take revenge of Jallianwala bag killing. Michael O'Dwyer was the Lt. Governor of Punjab at the time of Jallianwala bag killing.

MISC. FACTS ABOUT REVOLUTIONARY TERRORISTS MOVEMENT

- Hem Chandra Ghose was one of the earliest revolutionary of Bengal.
- Bengal Volunteers Party was founded by Hem Chandra Ghose and Lila Nag.
- The writings of Bankim Chandra Chatterjee provided the cultural and ideological background the revolutionaries of Bengal.
- In 1904 J.M. Chatterjee whose family had settled in Saharanpur founded Bharat Mata Society. Later he was joined by Lala Har Dayal, Ajit Singh and Sufi Amba Prasad.
- **“The Philosophy of bomb”** was written by Bhagvati Charan Vohra, Chandrashekhar Azad and Yashpal. Bhagat Singh wrote its introduction.
- Bhagat Singh said that the sword of revolution is sharpened in the whetting stone of ideas. He helped in the establishment of **“Punjab Nujawan Bharat”** in 1926. He was its founding Secretary. Chabeeldas and Yashpal also played role in its foundation.
- Bhagat Singh said that “the real revolutionary armies are in the Villages and in factories”.

- Bhagat Singh wrote the article “*Why I am an Atheist*”.
- Bhagat Singh and Sukhdev established Lahore Students Federation.
- Hindu Dharma Sanga and Arya Bhandhav Samaj (formed under the inspiration of Tilak) were active in Maharashtra.
- Abhinav Bharat established its branches in various towns of Maharashtra and Central Provinces.
- **Atmonnati Samiti** was founded by Bipin Bihari Ganguly.
- Sakhran Ganesh Deuskar, a Marathi scholar who was proficient in Bengali served as link between the revolutionaries of Bengal and Maharashtra.
- Swadesh Bandhav Samiti was founded by Ashwini Kumar Dutt. He was teacher in Barisal.
- Suhrid Samiti, Sadhna Samiti of Mymensingh, the Swadesh Bandhav Samiti of Barisal and Brati Samiti of Faridpur were founded after the partition of Bengal.
- Yugantar society was led by Barindra Ghose. Sri Sanga was founded by Anil Roy.
- In Punjab, Ajit Singh founded “**Anjuman-i-Mohibbah-i-Watan**” and published a journal **Bharat Mata**.
- In 1926 Satish Chandra Chatterjee published ***Pather Dabi***. In this paper need of urban middle class revolution was put forward.
- Brahma Bandhopadhyaya was first person to call Rabindranath Tagore as Gurudeo.
- On 15th February 1915 the 36th Sikh battalion of 5th light infantry revolted in Singapore. This revolt was led by Jamadar Chisti Khan, Jamadar Abdul Gani and Subedar Daud Khan. This is known as **Singapore revolt**.

BOOKS AND JOURNALS ASSOCIATED WITH REVOLUTIONARY ACTIVITIES

Sl. No. Title

1. Bandi Jivan
2. Bharat Mata
3. Bhavani Mandir
4. Bomb Manual
5. Indian Sociologist
6. Mother
7. Pather Dabi
8. Sandhya

9. Vande Mataram
10. Vande Mataram
11. Vartaman Rananiti
12. Yugantar
13. Zamindar
14. Kal

Editor/author

Sachindranath Sanyal

Ajit Singh

Barindra Kumar Ghose and Aurobindo Ghose P.N. Bapat

Shyamji Krishna Varma

Lala Har Dayal (in Newyork)

Sarat Chandra Chattopadhyaya

Mukhda Charan, Brahmabandhab Upadhaya Aurobindo Ghose

Madam Bhikaji Kama (in Paris)

Barindra Kumar Ghose

Barindra Kumar Ghose and Bhupendra Nath Dutt Sirajuddin

S.M. Paranjape

TOPIC

6 SOCIO-RELIGIOUS REFORM MOVEMENTS

RAJA RAM MOHAN ROY AND BRAHMA SAMAJ

- Raja Ram Mohan Roy was born in village Radhanagar in Hooghly District of Bengal on May 22, 1772 in an orthodox Brahmin family.
- The original surname of his family was **Banerjee**. His grand father Krishna Chandra Banerjee was granted the title of **Rai Rayan**. From this title the surname of Roy emerged later on.
- Ram Mohan Roy is acclaimed as the Father of Modern India because he was the first Indian who made efforts to pull the Indian society out of the medieval age.
- He was a profound scholar of Arabic, Persian, Sanskrit, English and Bengali and also knew foreign languages like Greek, Latin and Hebrew.
- Ram Mohan Roy believed that the philosophy of Vedanta was based on the principle of reason. He propounded that the Vedanta provides the purest form of

theistic principles, uncontaminated by idolatry.

- He opposed polygamy, Kulinism and Sati and came out in support of the inheritance of property by daughters.
- He opposed Idolatry and he was deeply influenced by the monotheism and anti- idolatry of Islam and Sufism.
- Ram Mohan Roy was also a relentless crusader against child marriage and the rigidity of the caste system, which he described as undemocratic and inhuman. He stood for the freedom of widows to remarry and equal rights of man and women.
- He worked under the East India Company for about ten years from 1803 to 1814.
- In 1805 he published a treatise in Persian titled **Tuhfat-ul-Muwahhidin**. This was his first philosophical work. He also published **Manazarutul Adyan** - a discussion in Persian on various religions.
- He was badly hurt by the performance of Sati by his elder brother's wife in 1811. He decided to eliminate this evil practice from India.
- In 1815 Ram Mohan Roy established **Atmiya Sabha** to fight against social evils in Hinduism and also to propagate monotheism.
- He provided enthusiastic support to David Hare who, along with many other Indians founded the famous **Hindu college in 1817**.
- In 1820 Ram Mohan Roy published "**Precepts of Jesus - the guide to peace and happiness**". This pamphlet contained his conviction about the simplicity and morality of the Christian religion. In this pamphlet he attempted to separate moral and philosophical message of the New Testament.
- In December 1821 he launched a Bengali weekly Paper **Samvad Kaumudi** (The Moon of intelligence). **This was the first Indian newspaper edited, published and managed by Indians.**
- In 1822 he began publication of another weekly in Persian **Mirat- ul- Akhbar** or the Mirror of Intelligence.
- In 1822 he also published "**Modern Encroachments on the ancient rights of females according to the Hindu law of Inheritance**". In this paper he criticised all kinds of discriminations against women. In support of arguments Ram Mohan Roy produced references from ancient Smritis.
- In 1825 Raja Ram Mohan Roy established **Vedanta College** at Calcutta.
- In 1828 Raja Ram Mohan Roy established **Brahma Samaj**. The principles of the Samaj were defined in the **Trust Deed** and in a pamphlet published about the same time.

- The Brahmo Samaj believed that the God is the cause and source of all his creations. Brahmo Samaj did not allow any sacrifice, ritual or idol worship.
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy looked with favour upon British rule in India. He admired it for inaugurating progressive measures of social reforms. But he criticised the government for excluding Indians from the higher posts. **He was the first person to start political agitation in India.**
- His efforts to eliminate the practice of sati bore fruit when Governor General Lord William Bentinck declared Sati illegal and made it punishable as a criminal offence through **Regulation XVII of 4th December, 1829**. Initially this ban applicable in the presidency of Bengal only. In 1830 the regulation was extended to Bombay and Madras Presidencies also.
- Ram Mohan Roy established **Trust Deed in 1830** which explained the object of the Samaj as the worship and adoration of the Eternal Unsearchable, immutable being who is the author and preserver of the Universe.
- In 1830 Mughal Emperor Akbar Shah II invested Ram Mohan Roy with the title of **Raja** and he was sent to England as an envoy to the court of **King William IV** to represent to the sovereign the inadequacy of pension granted to Mughal emperor.
- He was well received in various circles in England where he stayed for three years.
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy died **in Bristol on September 27, 1833**.
- Subhash Chandra Bose called Raja Ram Mohan Roy as the **Ambassador of the Age**.

Devendra Nath Tagore and Brahma Samaj

- Devendra Nath Tagore (1817 - 1905) was the son of Maharshi Dwarakanath Tagore. He succeeded Raja Ram Mohan Roy as the head of Brahma Samaj.
- Before joining Brahma Samaj he organised the **Tattvaranjini Sabha at Jorasanko (Calcutta)** in 1839. This was later renamed as **Tattvabodhini Sabha**. Its main objectives were promotion of religious enquiry and dissemination of the knowledge of the Upanishads. He also aimed at counteracting the rapid progress of Christianity in India and advocated the development of Vedantism.
- In 1840 the **Tattvabodhini School** was founded. Akshay Kumar Datta, a great writer and scholar and man of gifted intellect, was appointed as a teacher in this school. Rajendralal Mitra, Pt. Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar, Tarachandra Chakravarti and Pyarelal Mitra were other teachers of this school.
- **Tattvabodhini Press** was established in 1843.

- **Tattvabodhini Patrika**, a journal of the organisation was started for the propagation of its ideas.
- Devendranath along with 20 of his associates formally joined the Brahmo Samaj on **21st December, 1843**.
- He condemned idol worship, discouraged pilgrimages, ceremonials and penances prevailing among the Brahmos.
- He compiled a religious text called “**Brahmo Dharma**” containing spiritual and moral texts from different Hindu scriptures and also introduced the Brahmo form of worship or **Brahmopasana**.
- Devendra Nath Tagore introduced a formal ceremony of initiation into the Sabha which was based on the **Mahanirvan Tantra**.
- Devendranath remodelled the ceremonies, from which everything idolatrous was eliminated. These Brahmo rites are mentioned in the **Anushthana Paddhati**.

K. C. Sen and Brahma Samaj

- Keshab Chandra Sen joined the Brahmo Samaj in 1858.
- He established in 1859 a small society known as **Sangat Sabha** (Friendly Association).
- Devendranath Tagore and Keshab Chandra Sen were more critical of Hindu scriptures than Ram Mohan Roy. Keshab Chandra Sen in most unambiguous terms repudiated the caste system without invoking any scriptural authority.
- In 1861 a fortnightly journal named **the Indian Mirror** was started with Keshab Chandra Sen as editor. **The India Mirror was the first Indian daily paper in English language.**
- K.C. Sen strove for radical social changes and emerged as a staunch supporter of emancipation of women through the promotion of female education and inter caste marriages. He also launched an organised campaign against child marriage.
- Keshab Chandra Sen gave a cosmopolitan outlook to the Samaj because religious scriptures of every sect and every people Christians, Muslims and Parsis began to be read in Brahmo Samaj Meetings.
- In 1872 K.C. Sen persuaded the Government to enact the Brahmo Marriage Act. His was also known as Civil Marriage Act or Native Marriage Act. This legalised marriage according to Brahmo rites.
- The Native Marriage Act fixed the minimum age of marriage for boys and girls at 18 years and 14 years respectively. But **The Native Marriage Act was not applicable to Hindus, Muslims and other recognised faiths.**
- He also established **the Indian Reform Association** in 1870 which worked for

the spread of western education, emancipation of women, female education and social work.

- K. C. Sen started a journal for women called **Brahmo Bodhini Patrika**.

First split in Brahma Samaj

- The radical changes introduced and proposed by K.C. Sen were opposed by a group under the leadership of Devendranath Tagore.
- In 1866 when Devendranath's group calling itself **Adi Brahma Samaj** separated from Keshav Chandra's group.
- The group of K.C. Sen assumed the name of **Brahmo Samaj of India or the Church of New Dispensation or Convention (Nav Vidhana)**.
- Adi Brahma Samaj gave the slogan that Brahmoism is Hinduism. The group of K.C. Sen adopted the slogan that Brahmoism is Catholic and Universal.
- First split in Brahma Samaj took place in 1867. The Brahma Samaj of India was led by Keshab Chandra Sen and Adi Brahma Samaj was led by Devendra Nath Tagore.

Second split in Brahma Samaj

- Though Keshab Chandra Sen preached high ideals to others but he failed to apply them in his personal life.
- In 1878 K. C. Sen married his daughter to the Maharaja of Cooch Bihar. Both the bride and the groom were under age.
- The marriage was solemnised with full orthodox Hindu Ceremonies in violation of Brahma marriage Act.
- This led to Second split in Brahma Samaj in 1878.
- After this split the Church of the New Dispensation was led by K. C. Sen and the younger group of Brahma Samaj of India separated themselves from Keshab Chandra Sen and formed Sadharan Brahma Samaj.
- **Sadharan Brahma Samaj** was formed under the leadership of Ram Kumar Vidyaratna and Anand Mohan Bose.
- The constitution of the Sadharan Brahma Samaj was drafted by Anand Mohan Bose.

ARYA SAMAJ

- The real name of Swami Dayanand Saraswati was Mula Shankar.
- He was born in 1824 AD in a Brahmin family in the state of Moorvi in Kathiawar in Gujarat.
- At the age of 21 he left home in order to escape the entanglement of marriage

and to seek to pacify the urges of his soul.

- At the age of 24 years, he met **Swami Poorna Nanda**. Poorna Nanda taught him art of meditation and gave him new name i.e. Swami Dayanand Saraswati
- He spent two and a half years at Mathura as a disciple of a blind saint scholar **Swami Virjananda** who taught him the philosophic interpretation of the Vedas. Swami Virjananda charged him with the mission to purge Hinduism of all its ugly accretions and aberrations.
- In 1875 Swami Dayanand Saraswati founded Arya Samaj. The early HQ was established at **Bombay**. Latter on the headquarters was shifted at Lahore.
- Swami Dayanand Saraswati stood for the fourfold Varna system to be determined by merit and not by birth. He stood for equal rights of man and women in social and educational matters.
- The Arya Samaj opposed untouchability, caste discriminations, child marriage and supported widow remarriage and inter caste marriages.
- Swami Dayanand rejected western idea and emphasized on reviving the ancient religion of the Aryans.
- He condemned idol worship, disregarded the authority of the later Hindu scriptures like the Puranas. He also launched a frontal attack on the numerous abuses like idolatry, polytheism belief in magic, charms and animal sacrifices.
- Dayanand held that, God, soul and matter were distinct and eternal entities. He rejected Monism and accepted the doctrine of Karma. He also rejected the theory of Niyati (destiny).
- Swami Dayanand challenged the dominant position of the Brahmin priestly class in the spiritual and social life of the Hindus. He condemned the caste system based on birth and advocated complete equality between man and woman.
- He pleaded for widow remarriage and condemned child marriages.
- Dayanand's slogan of Back to the Vedas was a call for revival of Vedic learning and Vedic purity of religion and not revival of Vedic times.
- Swami Dayanand was organised **Shuddhi Movement** to reconvert such persons back to Hinduism who had changed their faith.. This movement was mainly directed against the Christian missionaries who had converted a large number of Hindus, particularly from the depressed classes into Christianity.
- **Lala Hans Raj, Pandit Guru Dutt, Pandit Lekh Ram, Lala Munshi Ram (later known as Swami Shradhananda) and Lala Lajpat Rai were other leaders associated with Shuddhi Movement.**
- In 1882 the Arya Samaj formed a Cow protection Association.

- Swami Dayanand Saraswati died on 30th October 1883 in Ajmer.
- The death of Dayanand Saraswati enthused his followers with new vigour to propagate the message of Arya Samaj.
- Some tensions and ideological rift developed in Arya Samaj over the period of time and two groups i.e. the moderates and the militants emerged.
- **Lala Hans Raj** became the core leader of the moderates, who came to be known as the College Party.
- The leadership of the militants, later known as the Gurukul wing, was centred on **Pandit Lekh Ram and Lala Munshi Ram (later known as Swami Shradhananda)**.
- Lala Hans Raj was the main force behind the DAV education movement. First DAV school was opened in Lahore on 1st June 1886.
- In March 1892 Lala Munshi Ram (or Swami Shradhananda) founded the Gurukul Kangri in Haridwar.
- In 1893, the Arya Samaj formally broke up along these ideological lines.
- The College Party established Arya Kanya Pathshala in Jullundur in 1890.
- On 14 June 1896 Kanya Mahavidyalaya (college) was established. The Kanya Mahavidyalaya published literature for women's education and started the Hindi monthly **Panchal Pandita** in 1898 to preach and propagate female education.
- In December 1923, eighty representatives from Hindu, Jain and Sikh caste associations agreed to form a new organisation – **The Bhartiya Hindu Shuddhi Sabha** – to work for the goal of reconversion.
- Swami Dayanand Saraswati gave the political slogan that **India is for Indians**.
- Arya Samaj movement took deep roots in the Punjab, Haryana, the Uttar Pradesh, Bihar & Rajasthan.
- Dayanand said – **World is a battlefield where every individual has to work out his salvation by right deeds.**

JAT PAT TODAK MANDAL (SOCIETY FOR THE ABOLITION OF CASTE)

- Bhai Parmanand established Jat Pat Todak Mandal (Society for the Abolition of Caste) at Lahore in 1922.
- This association was established to work among the Arya Samajists and common public in order to assimilate the reconverted members brought in through Shuddhi.

SARVADESHIK HINDU SABHA

- To counter the challenge from the Muslim League, founded in 1906, the politically conscious Hindus founded the Punjab Hindu Conference in 1909.
- In 1915, at its annual meeting, this conference renamed itself the Sarvadeshik Hindu Sabha and in 1921 again renamed itself the Akhil Bharat Hindu Mahasabha.

RAMAKRISHNA MISSION

- The Ramakrishna monastic order and Ramakrishna Mission was officially established in 1896 with its headquarter at Bellur near Calcutta (formally registered under Societies Registration Act in 1909) by Swami Vivekananda.
- The real name of Swami Vivekananda was Narendra Nath Dutta. He was the foremost disciple of Ramakrishna Paramahansa. His name was changed at the suggestion Maharaj Khetri at the time of moving to Chicago.
- Ramakrishna Paramhansa was a priest at Dakshineswar temple near Calcutta.
- Ramakrishna Paramhansa considered different religion as different paths to reach the same God.
- Ramakrishna Paramhansa was initiated into Islam by a Muslim Sufi. He also had the Bible read out to him. He venerated the Sikh Gurus and in his trances had the vision of the Christ and the Buddha besides Kali and Krishna.
- Ramakrishna said not mercy, but service for man must be regarded as God.
- Vivekananda said that the only God in whom I believe, the sum total of all souls, and above all, my God the wicked, my God the afflicted, my God the poor of all races.
- In 1893, Vivekananda went to America and attended the world Parliament of Religions at Chicago. **The New York Herald** reported after hearing him that “we feel how foolish it is to send missionaries to this learned nation”.
- Vivekananda was the first Indian who questioned the superiority of the west and instead of defending his religion against the attacks of its critics; he boldly asserted its spiritual pre eminence and incomparable greatness.
- From America he went on a tour of England, France, Switzerland and Germany.
- After four years of stay abroad Vivekananda returned to India and established two principal centres, one at Belur near Calcutta and the other at Mayavati near Almora,
- He believed in the philosophy of Vedanta. He opposed untouchability, caste system and condemned touch me not attitude of Hindus on religious matters

- He declared that he would talk of religion only when he succeeded in removing poverty and misery from the country.
- He argued that education, with all that it implied, would automatically rid society of its ailments, thereby dispensing with the necessity of a formal movement.
- In his pamphlet, “**I am a Socialist**”, Vivekananda appealed to the upper classes in India to give up their position and privileges and to merge themselves with the lower classes.
- Vivekananda published two papers - **Prabudha Bharat** (monthly in English) and **Udbodhana** (fortnightly in Bengali).
- Swami Vivekananda said that “*I do not believe in a God who cannot give me bread here*”.
- Swami Vivekananda also said that “*So long as millions live in hunger and ignorance, I hold every man as a traitor who while educated at their expense, pays not the least heed to them*”.
- Vivekananda said that “*To him I call a Mahatma whose heart bleeds for the poor, otherwise he is a Duratma*”.
- The concept of Daridra – Narayana, subsequently popularised by Gandhiji, had its origin in Vivekananda.
- Swami Vivekananda said that “*with 500 dedicated men, I will take 50 years to transform this country. But with 50 dedicated women, it may take only a few years*”.
- Swami Vivekananda also said that “*Forgot not that the lower castes, the ignorant, the poor, illiterate, the cobbler, the sweeper are thy in flesh and blood*”.
- Swami Vivekananda said that “*The only hope of India is the masses; the upper classes are physically and morally dead.*”
- He said that Hinduism had degenerated into **don’t touchism or religion of the kitchen**.
- Subhas Chandra Bose wrote that so far as Bengal is concerned Vivekananda may be regarded as the spiritual father of modern nationalist movement.

THEOSOPHICAL SOCIETY

- Theosophical Society was established by H. P. Blavatsky in the USA in 1875.
- Later the US Army colonel M.S. Olcott joined it.
- The Headquarters of Theosophical Society was shifted to India at **Adyar** near

Madras in 1882.

- The society accepted the Hindu beliefs in re – incarnation, Karma and drew inspiration from the philosophy of the Upanishads and Samkhya, Yoga, and Vedanta school of thought to promote international brotherhood.
- Mrs. Annie Besant joined it in 1893 & became the President of this society in 1907.
- She laid the foundation of the **Central Hindu college in Banaras in 1898** where both the Hindu religion & Western scientific subjects were taught. This college later on developed into Benaras Hindu University in 1916 by the efforts of Madan Mohan Malviya.
- Theosophical Society was revivalist in nature and advocated revival and strengthening of ancient religions of Hinduism, Zoroastrianism and Buddhism.
- Annie Besant translated Bhagwat Gita in which she put emphasis on occult than spiritualism.

PARAMHANS MANDALI

- This was formed by Balakrishna Jayakar in 1850 in Maharashtra.
- It aimed at fighting against caste system & idolatry.
- The Paramahansa Mandali used to meet in secret.

YOUNG BENGAL MOVEMENT

- Young Bengal Movement was initiated by Henry Vivian Derozio.
- Henry Vivian Derozio was an Anglo – Indian teacher of the Hindu College from 1826 to 1831 and he was removed in 1831 because of his radicalism.
- Henry Vivian Derozio was a free thinker and a rationalist. He helped to promote a radical and critical outlook among his students.
- His followers known as the Derozians. They attacked old and decadent customs, rites and traditions.
- **Dakshinaranjan Mukherjee, Ram Gopal Ghose, Mahesh Chandra Ghose and Krishna Mohan Banerjee** were other prominent members of Young Bengal Movement. They stood for a rejection of traditions and revolted against archaic social norms.
- The movement was active during 1820's and 1830's.
- Henry Vivian Derozio is called **first nationalist poet of modern India**.
- The Derozians advocated women's right and demanded education for them.
- Young Bengal Movement failed to strike roots in the Indian Society.

- Derozio established **Academic Association** and **Society for the Acquisition of General Knowledge** for the spread of knowledge.
- He was associated with the publication of Journals like Hesperus, Calcutta Literary Gazette and East India.

PARAMHANS SABHA

- Paramhans Sabha was established in 1849 by Dadoba Pandurang Tarkhadkar.
- This was the first reform organisation of 19th century in Maharashtra.
- Main objective was demolition of all caste distinctions.
- Organized an initiation ceremony in which a new recruit had to eat a slice of bread baked by Christian and drink water at the hands of Muslim.

PRARTHANA SAMAJ

- As a result of Keshav Chandra Sen's visit to Maharashtra the Paramhans Sabha was reorganised under the name of Prarthana Samaj in 1867.
- M. G. Ranade joined the Samaj in 1870.
- Prarthana Samaj did credible work in the field of social works and education.
- Its prominent leaders were M. G. Ranade, R. G. Bhandarkar, N. G. Chandavarkar, Dr. Atmaram Pandurang and R.G. Bhandarkar.
- M. G. Ranade was known as the **Socrates of India**.
- Its chief architect was Mahadev Govind Ranade (1842- 1901) who has been described as **the prophet of cultural renaissance in western India**.
- M. G. Ranade's views regarding theism are set out in 39 articles which he drew up under the title "**Atheist's Confession of Faith**".
- Ranade's philosophy of religion and society was deeply influenced by western ideology.
- Ranade and D.K. Karve launched the widow remarriage movement and started **Widow's Home Association** to provide education to widows.
- For the spread of education Ranade established **Deccan Education Society at Poona**. Later on this society came to be known as **Ferguson Collage**.

RADHASWAMI MOVEMENT

- This movement was founded in 1861 by Tulsi Ram, of Agra.
- He was a banker by profession.
- Tulsi Ram was also popularly known as **Shiv Dayal Sahib or Swamiji**

Maharaj.

- Radhaswamis believed that there is no need to renounce the worldly life for spiritual attainments.
- They further held that all religions are true.
- The sect recognises **no temples, shrines or sacred places**.
- They also believe in **Satsang** (company of pious people).

DEVA SAMAJ

- This sect was founded in 1887 at Lahore by Shiv Narain Agnihotri.
- He was an erstwhile follower of Brahmo Samaj.
- The teachings of the Samaj were compiled in book form in **Deva Shashtra**.
- The teachings of the Deva Samaj emphasise upon the existence of Supreme Being, eternity of the soul, the supremacy of the Guru and need for good action.
- The movement, however, lost its popular appeal after 1813, when Agnihotri appointed his second son, Devanand, to succeed him.

MADRAS HINDU SOCIAL REFORM ASSOCIATION

- This was founded by Virasalingam Pantulu (1848 - 1939) in 1892.

THE MADRAS HINDU ASSOCIATION

- This was founded by Mrs. Annie Besant in 1904.

GANDIYA SABHA

- Gandiya Sabha was established by Radha Kant Deb.
- Its main aim was to propagate education.

VED SAMAJ

- Ved Samaj was established under the influence of Keshav Chandra Sen when he visited Madras in 1864.
- The founder of the organisation was the young K. Sridharalu Naidu.
- Ved Samaj was turned into – **Brahmo Samaj of Southern India** in 1871 by Sridharalu Naidu.
- Subbarayulu Chetty was also associated with it.

THE BHARAT DHARMA MAHA MANDALA

- The Bharat Dharma Maha Mandalawas established by orthodox Hindus to oppose the teachings of Arya

Samaj and other such movements.

- Founded by **Pandit Din Dayalu Sharma** in **Haridwar** in **1887**.
- The Dharma Maha Parishad in south India and the Dharma Maha Mandali in Bengal were also established

with similar objectives.

- Pandit Din Dayalu also founded the **Hindu College** at Delhi on May 15, 1899.
- Sanatan Dharma Sabhas were the offshoots of the Maha Mandala.
- Madan Mohan Malaviya was very closely associated with the Mahamandala and the Sanatan Dharma

movements.

SWAMI NARAIN SECT

- Founded by Swami Sahajanand in the beginning of the 19th century.
- This is more popular in Gujarat.

SATNAMIS OF CHHATTISGARH

- Ghasi Das was the founder of the Satnami sect.
- He hailed from Bilaspur district of Madhya Pradesh.
- He was an untouchable and belonged to the cobbler caste.
- He opposed the caste system and taught that all men are equal.
- He propounded the concept of Satnam, a single true god, and urged his followers to abandon idol worship.
- His followers were forbidden the consumption of meat, drugs, liquor and tobacco.
- After Ghasi Das's death in 1850, his son Balak Das took over the leadership of the Satnamis.

THE SATYA MAHIMA DHARMA

- Mukund Das, known as Mahima Gosain, founded the Satya Mahima Dharma in the 1860s.
- He was assisted by Govinda Baba and Bhima Bhoi.
- Mahima Gosain preached the existence of one deity – Alakh Param Brahma.
- He opposed idol worship.
- Joranda in Orissa was the headquarters of the Satya Mahima Dharma.
- Under Bhima Bhoi, they criticised Vaishnavism and the worship of Lord Jagannath, which led to their open conflict with the orthodox Hindus.

BHIL SEVA MANDAL

- Founded by Amrital Vithaldas Thakar in 1922.

DHARMA SABHA

- Founded by Radha Kant Deb in 1830.
- Stood for socio – religions status quo.
- Campaigned against abolition of Sati.
- This was another orthodox society, founded in 1830 by Radhakant Deb (1794-1876). Members of the Sabha demanded the socio-religious status quo against both reformers and radicals, mainly through its newspaper. They even, oppose the abolition of Sati.

SEVA SADAN

- Seva Sadan was established by Behramji M. Malabari in 1885 AD.
- The Parsi social reformer Behramji M. Malabari campaigned all his life against child marriage and enforced windowhood.

SERVANTS OF INDIA SOCIETY

- The **Servants of India Society** was formed in Pune, Maharashtra, in 1905 by Gopal Krishna Gokhale, who left the Deccan Education Society to form this association. Along with him were a small group of educated Indians, as Natesh Appaji Dravid, Gopal Krishna Deodhar and Anant Patwardhan who wanted to promote social and human development and overthrow the British rule in India.
- The Society organized many campaigns to promote education, sanitation, health care and fight the social evils of untouchability and discrimination, alcoholism, poverty, oppression of women and domestic abuse. This association organised many welfare programmes viz famine relief, union organisation, cooperatives and uplift of tribals and depressed classes.
- Servants of India Society aimed at training the National missionaries for the free service of India.
- Prominent Indians were its members and leaders. It chose to remain away from political activities and national organizations like the Indian National Congress.
- The base of the Society shrunk in the 1920s with Gokhale's death and the rise of Mahatma Gandhi's Congress, which launched social reform campaigns on a mass scale throughout the nation and attracted most young Indians. However, it still continues its activities albeit with a small membership. It is based in the city

of Mumbai, Maharashtra

INDIAN (NATIONAL) SOCIAL CONFERENCE

- This was established by M. G. Ranade and Raghunath Rao.
- The Conference was virtually the social reform cell of the Indian National Congress.
- Its first session was held in Madras in December 1887.
- The Conference met annually as a subsidiary convention of the Indian National Congress, at the same venue, and focused attention on social reform.
- The Conference advocated intercaste marriages and opposed Kulinism and polygamy.
- It launched the famous pledge movement to inspire people to take an oath to prohibit child marriage.

SOCIAL SERVICE LEAGUE

- Narayan Malhar Joshi, a leading member of the Servants of India Society, founded the Social Service League in 1911.
- The objective of the movement was to collect and study social facts and discuss social problems with a view to forming public opinion on questions of social service and to secure for the masses a better quality of life and work.
- The League opened a number of day and night schools, libraries, dispensaries and started boys' clubs and scouts corps.

SEVA SAMITI

- Seva Samiti was established by Hiridayanath Kunzru in 1914 at Allahabad.
- He was a prominent member of the Servants of India Society.
- Seva Samiti was established with the objective to organise social service during natural disasters like floods and epidemics, to promote the spread of education, cooperation, sanitation, to uplift depressed classes, reform criminals and rescue the fallen.

LOKAHITAWADI

- Gopal Hari Deshmukh (1823–92), popularly known as Lokahitawadi, was a product of the Western learning in

India. He was a judge and a member of the Governor-General's Council in 1880.

- He attended the Delhi Durbar in 1876 wearing handspun khadi.
- A profound scholar, he wrote hundreds of articles on social issues and volumes on history.
- In his essays, "**Lokahitawadi**", he deplored the prevalent ignorance, the hold of outdated social values, the

dominance of religion in social life, and the selfishness of the upper classes.

- He supported the cause of women and advocated female education.

SATYASHODHAK SAMAJ

- Satyashodhak Samaj was started by Jyotibha Govindrao Phule in 1875. Jyotiba Phule was born in a Shudra

Mali family in Poona in 1827.

- Phule was the first girl's school at Poona with his wife in 1851.
- He was also the first Indian to start a school for untouchables in 1854.
- He also started a private orphanage to help widows.
- Satyashodhak Samaj was anti – Brahmin organisation. It aimed at fighting against Brahmanism and its

ideology.

- It criticized idolatry, ritualism and priesthood, theory of Karma, rebirth and heaven.
- He refuted the sacred Hindu texts and scriptures. His main ideas on economics of the agrarian classes were

published in the Pamphlet, **Isara** in 1885.

- Propagated his ideas through a journal **Deen Bandhu** in Marathi, his book

Gulamgiri (1872) and **Setukaryancha**

Asuda (the whip–cord of the peasantry).

- Jyotibha Phule opposed Indian National Congress because it failed to take up peasant problems.

• After the death of Jyotibha Phule Satya Sahodhak was revived by Chhatrapati Shahu Maharaj of Kolhapur.

• Chhatrapati Shahu Maharaj of Kolhapur wrote **Sarvajnik Satyadharma Pustak**.

- After 1919, Bhaskar Rao Jadhav, inspired by the ideas of Jyotiba Phule, formed

an anti-Brahman and strongly anti-Congress party,

- From 1920 Mukundrao Patil began to publish a Satyashodhak paper **Din-Mitra**.
- The Satyashodhak message was spread in the countryside through tamasha—the folk drama tradition of Maharashtra.
- **Gail Omvedt** is of the opinion that the Satyashodhak Samaj contained both an elite-based conservative trend and a more genuine mass-based radicalism.

BAHUJAN SAMAJ MOVEMENT

- This movement was initiated by Chhatrapati Shahu Maharaj of Kolhapur
- The British supported this movement and the Maharaja of Kolhapur with the objective of creating an anti – Congress front against Bal Gangadhar Tilak.

VOKKALINGA SANGHA AND LINGAYATA EDUCATION FUND ASSOCIATION

- These were established in 1905–06 in Karnataka.

ARAVIPURAM MOVEMENT / SRI NARAYAN DHARMA PARIPALANA YOGAM

- This movement was launched by **Nanu Asan** popularly known as Sri Narayana Guru on Shivaratri day of 1888.
- This movement aimed at asserting the rights for Ezhawas. Temple entry was their main programme.
- Sri Narayana Guru gave the slogan of – “**one caste, one religion, one god**”.
- Sri Narayana Guru wrote a book titled “Jati Mimamsa”.
- He defied the religious restrictions traditionally placed on the Ezhava community, and consecrated an idol of Shiva at Aravipuram.
- He urged them to abandon the occupation of toddy – tapping and to abstain from liquor.
- In the early years of the 20th century, the Aravipuram movement was given new vigour when two new leaders i.e. Dr. Palpu and Kumaran Asan joined Sri Narayana Guru.

JUSTICE PARTY

- Justice Party was founded by **T. N. Nair, P. Tyagaraya Chetti** and **C. Natesa Mudaliar** in **1916** at **Madras**.
- Its real name was South Indian Liberal Federation.
- The initial demand of the justice Leaders was reservation of seats in the Provincial Legislative Council for the lower castes.
- Later on, the demand was extended to include concessions in education, public appointments and nomination to local boards.
- Social base of Justice Party was non – Brahmin leading Zamindars and the urban business groups.
- It served the political interests of feudal and commercial classes.
- Vellalas (Tamil) Reddis (Telgu) and Kammas (Telgu) constituted the movement.

SELF – RESPECT MOVEMENT

- Self-respect Movement was initiated by E. V. Ramaswami Naicker, popularly known as Periyar.
- He advocated the burning of Manu Dharma Shashtra and Ramayana. He abandoned Hindu mythology.
- He was a radical social reformer and vehemently supported the Harijans.
- He attacked religion and the supremacy of the Brahmins and the caste system.
- Self-respect Movement emphasized on legalising the widow marriage and birth control.
- Self-respect League was merged with Justice Party in 1944 to form **Dravida Kazhagam**.

NAIR SERVICE SOCIETY

- This was founded by Mannath Padmanabha Pillai in 1914 at Travancore.

DEPRESSED CLASSES MISSION

- Founded by V. R. Shinde in 1906 in Bombay.
- This was organised for providing educational facilities to lower classes.

DEPRESSED CLASS MISSION SOCIETY

- Founded in Madras in 1909.
- Its first All India Depressed Classes Conference was held in 1918.

ALL INDIA DEPRESSED, CLASSES FEDERATION

- Founded by Dr. Ambedkar in 1920.
- This was organised to work among the Maharas of Maharashtra.
- Bahiskrit Bharat Movement was also started by him.

HARIJAN SEVAK SANGH

- Founded by Mahatma Gandhi in 1932.
- He gave the untouchables the name Harijan.
- He also started a magazine Harijan in 1933.
- This was organised to work for their upliftment of dalits and untouchables.

NADAR MOVEMENT

- Tamil Nadu, Late 19th & Early 20th Century
- Low caste Nadars demanded Kshatriya status and temple entry rights.
- Founded Nadar Mahajan Sabha in 1910.

PILLAI MOVEMENT

- This was organised in Tamil Nadu during late 19th century.
- The Pallais claimed Kshatriya status & called themselves Venniya Kula Kshatriya.
- They imitated Brahmanical customs like taboo on widow remarriage etc.

VAIKOM SATYAGRAHA

- This was organised in Kerala 1924 – 25.
- The Satyagriha was led by **T. K. Madhavan, K. Kellapan & Keshava Menon.**
- It was the first organised temple entry movement of the depressed classes.
- They asserted the right of Ezhavas & other untouchable to use the road near Travancore temple along Gandhian lines.
- As a result of the movement, in November 1936, the Maharaja of Travancore issued a proclamation throwing open all government controlled temples to all Hindus irrespective of castes.

NAIR MOVEMENT

- This was organised in Travancore during late 19th and early 20th century.
- They attacked the social and political dominance of the Namboodri Brahmins.

PRAJA MITHRA MANDALI

- This was organised in Mysore in 1917.
- Founded by C. R. Reddi.

- It was Mysore's first political organisation and was founded on anti – Brahmin platform.

MAHAR MOVEMENT

- Maharashtra late 19th century
- Led by Gopal Baba Walangkar.
- The Mahars (untouchable caste of inferior village servants) claimed Kshatriya status and more jobs in the army & services.

MAHAR SATYAGRAHA

- This was organised in Maharashtra in 1927.
- Led by B.R. Ambedkar.
- Ambedkar demanded the right of the Mahars to use tanks and temples & abolition of Mahar's traditional service to village chiefs.

WOMEN UPLIFTMENT REFORMERS

K. VIRASALINGAM PANTULU (1848 - 1919)

- He was a Telugu Brahman of Madras presidency.
- He was the earliest champion in South India of women's emancipation.
- He published **Viveka Vardhani** (Journal to Promote Enlightenment).
- He opened his first girls' school in 1874 and made widow remarriage and female education as the key points

of his programme for social reforms.

- In 1878, he organised a Society for Social Reform, which launched an anti – nautch movement (against hiring of dancing girls for celebrations).

M.G. RANADE

- In 1869, **Ranade** joined the Widow Remarriage Association and encouraged widow remarriage and female education and opposed child marriage.
- He founded the National Social Conference, which became a pre – eminent institution for social reform.

The role of

PANDITA RAMABAI

- Founded the Sharda Sadan, a school for widows, in Bombay and at Mukti, near Pune.
- Her greatest legacy was her effort, the first in India, to educate widows.

RAI SALIG RAM

- He was also known as Huzur Maharaj.
- He belonged to of the Radhaswami sect.
- He advocated female emancipation in his work titled **Prem Patra**.

BEHRAMJI MALABARI

- The Parsi social reformer, **Behramji Malabari**, captured the attention of the British people with his articles in The Times (of London) on the evils of child marriage and the tragedy of enforced widowhood for young women.

ALTAF HUSSAIN HALI

- He was first Muslim scholar to raise the issue of reforms among Muslim society.
- Other than him Shaikh Muhammad Abdullah and Begum Rokeya Sakhawat Hussain also worked for the education of Muslim girls.

DHONDO KESHAV KARVE

- He founded the first Indian women's university in 1916.

GANGABAI

- She was popularly known as Mataji Maharani Tapaswini.
- She was a Brahman woman of the Deccan, who settled down in Calcutta with a mission to promote female education in harmony with Hindu religious and moral principles.
- Maharani Tapaswini founded the **Mahakali Pathshala** in Calcutta in 1893,

SISTER SUBBALAKSHMI (1886 - 1969)

- She was the first Hindu widow in the Madras Presidency to study for her graduation.
- Her greatest concern was society's discarded child widows.

ORGANISATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH WOMEN'S UPLIFTMENT

THE BHARAT MAHILA PARISHAD

- This was a part of the National Social Conference
- Aim was to provide a forum for the discussion of social issues.

THE ARYA MAHILA SAMAJ

- was founded by Ramabai, wife of Justice Ranade,
- Aim was to provide a support network for newly educated women.

THE STRI ZARTHOSTI MANDAL

- This was a Parsi Women's Circle. This was a major Parsi women's organisation.
- This served as a training ground for women.

THE BHARAT STREE MAHAMANDALA

- This was founded by Sarladevi Chaudhurani at Allahabad in 1910.
- It was the first permanent association of Indian women to promote their common interests.
- Sarladevi Chaudhurani was also associated with Jibaner Jhara Pata.

THE WOMEN'S INDIAN ASSOCIATION

- This was founded by an Irish feminist and theosophist. Dorothy Jinarajadasa, in 1915.
- Annie Besant became its first President.
- Its journal, **Stri Dharma**, carried news of events of interest to women, reports from its branches, and articles

on women's condition.

THE NATIONAL COUNCIL OF WOMEN FOR INDIA

- This was an all – India organisation established in 1925, which was affiliated to the International Council of

Women. Mehribai Tata (Wife of Dorab Tata) played a key role in its advancement.

THE ALL – INDIA WOMEN'S CONFERENCE (AIWC)

- The AIWC first met at Pune in January 1927, through the efforts of Margaret Cousins and other women

belonging to the Women's Indian Association.

- IN 1941 the AIWC established its quarterly journal, **Roshni**, and in 1946 set up a central office The AIWC created a great deal of public opinion in favour of the Child
- First, Muthulakshmi Reddy, the first woman legislator, was appointed to the Madras legislative Council in 1927.

VIDHWA VIVAH UTTEJAKA MANDAL

- Started by Vishnu Parashuram Shastri Pandit in 1865.
- Advocated widow – marriage.
- He set example by marrying a widow in 1875.

RAJAMUNDY SOCIAL REFORM ASSOCIATION

- Founded by Virasalingam in 1878.
- Emphasized on promotion of widow remarriage.

BOMBAY SOCIAL REFORM ASSOCIATION

- Founded by M. G. Ranade in 1903.

WIDOW MARRIAGE ASSOCIATION

- Founded by Vishnu Shastri Pandit & M. G. Ranade in 1861.

THE SIKH MOVEMENTS

THE NIRANKARI MOVEMENT

- This was founded by Baba Dayal Das (1783 - 1885) in 1840 AD.
- Baba Dayal Das was the first among the reformers in Sikh religion.
- He disapproved of the worship of tombs and graves.
- Introduced a simplified version of Marriage named Anand Karaj
- Under this system, marriage was performed in the presence the Guru Granth with the priest singing four

relevant hymns from the holy book of the Sikhs.

- Disapproved dowry, marriage procession drinking, dancing and rituals.
- Baba Dayal preached against idol worship of – human gurus and expected his followers to believe in one

formless God.

- Succeeded by his son Baba Darbara Singh, who continued to propagate his father's teachings.

• Rattan Chan, popularly known as Baba Rathaji continued the work after the death of Darbara Singh. **THE NAMDHARI MOVEMENT**

- This was Started by Bhagat Jawahar Mal and Baba Balak Singh.
- This was an offshoot of the Kuka movement in Punjab. Balak Singh's followers saw in him a reincarnation of

Guru Govind Singh.

- It became powerful instrument of socio – religious awakening among the Sikhs under Baba Ram Singh

- In 1857, Balak Singh's disciple Baba Ram Singh (1816-85) formally inaugurated the Namdhari movement

with a set of rituals modelled after Guru Govind Singh's founding of the Khalsa.

- The Namdharis were staunch opponents of the foreign (British) rule.
- In July 1872, sixty – five Namdharis were arrested and executed. Baba Ram Singh was also arrested and

exiled to Burma (now Myanmar), where he died in 1885.

- Popularly known as Kuka Movement because of the followers resorting to shrieks (Kukan) while in ecstasy.
- Baba Ram Singh advised to be engaged at all times in the worship of God through prayer and meditation.
- He preached against social evils such as the caste system, female infanticide, early marriage and barter of

daughters in marriage.

THE SINGH SABHA

- To strengthen Sikhism, a small group of prominent Sikhs, led by Thakur Singh Sandhawalia and Giani Gian

Singh, founded the Singh Sabha of Amritsar on October 1, 1873.

- The objectives of the Sabha were to restore Sikhism to its pristine purity, to publish historical religious books and periodicals and to propagate knowledge using Punjabi,
- The promoters of the Singh Sabha Movement were mostly from educated middle class, connected with other socio – religious movements in Punjab as well.
- They believed that social evils among the Sikhs were due to lack of education.
- It aimed at social and religious reform through the spread of education.
- Major contribution of the Singh Sabha leadership lay in the creation of learning through Sikh Educational Conference.
- Khalsa College was founded at Amritsar in 1892.
- In 1880, a General Sabha was established in Amritsar, which was renamed the Khalsa Diwan, to provide a central organisation for all Singh Sabhas.

GURUDWARA REFORM MOVEMENTS

- Before 1920 the Sikh Gurudwaras were governed by the Udasi Sikh Mahants, who treated the Gurudwara offering as their personal assets.
- The British Government supported these Mahants as a counterpoise to the rising tide of nationalism among the Sikhs.
- Matters came to such a pass that the priests of the Golden Temple issued a hukamnama (injunction) against the Ghadarites, declaring them renegades, and then honoured General Dyer, the butcher of Jallianwala massacre, with a saropa.
- The movement for the liberation of the Gurudwaras soon turned into the Akali movement. **AKALI MOVEMENT**
- Started by the Sikh reformers to purify their religious places by removal of the evil social practices.
- Popularly known as the Akali movement because of the Akali Jathas leading this movement of reform the Sikh Gurudwaras.
- The property and privileges attached to the religious places led to the introduction of complicated rites and ritual and emergence of rich and powerful Mahants.
- The entire wall – known Gurudwaras were endowed with rich tax free jagirs by Maharaj Ranjit Singh and other Sikh chiefs.
- Followers of Sikhism tried to check the evil practices of these Mahants by social protest and organised a movement of liberation of Sikh shrines from the control of the hereditary Mahants.
- Akali reformers had to take control of the important shrines the Golden Temple and Akal Takht because of the misuse of temple premises by anti social corrupt elements and the ban on the entry of low caste people in the holy shrines.
- The works of this movement resulted in the passing of the All - India Sikhs Gurudwara Act in 1925.

THE PARSI MOVEMENTS

RAHANUMAI MAZDAYASANAN SABHA (RELIGIOUS REFORM ASSOCIATION)

- The Western – educated progressive Parsis like Dadabhai Naoroji, J. B. Wacha, S. S. Bengali and Naoroji

Furdonji founded the Rahanumai Mazdayasanan Sabha (Religious Reform Association) in 1851.

- Its objective was the regeneration of the social condition of the Parsis and the restoration of the Zoroastrian religion to its pristine purity.
- **Rast Goftar** (Voice of Truth) was its weekly organ.
- It stood for the modernisation of Parsi religion and social customs.
- It launched a struggle for the introduction and spread of education among women, and grant of a legal status to them.
- Also struggled for uniform laws of inheritance and marriage for the Parsi community.

MUSLIM REFORMS – ORGANISATIONS & MOVEMENTS

WAHABI MOVEMENT

- Started in India in 1821 under the leadership of Syed Ahmed of Raibaraeili, who was influenced by the teaching of the Delhi Saint Shah Waliullah.
- The main centre of this movement was **Patna**.
- This movement aimed at reformation of religious life and restoration of political power of the Muslim community.
- It was a kind of holy war.
- It was religious in form but political in content.
- Syed Ahmed was killed in the Battle of Balakot in 1831.
- He campaigns initially against the Sikhs of Punjab but after its annexation in 1849, the movement turned anti – British.
- This movement was suppressed by the British in 1870's.

AHL – I – HADITH

- This was led by Nawab Siddiq Hasan Khan and Sayyid Nazir in 1850's.
- They were the moderate followers of Syed Ahmed of Raibaraeili.
- They did not regard him as Mahdi and nor accepted his concept of jihad.
- The Ahl – i- Hadith was a branch of Tarikh – I – Muhammadiyah.
- The leaders of the Ahl – i – Hadith rejected Sufism and condemned

polytheism.

- The movement advocated widow remarriage as Islamic and attacked the institution of dowry as a non – Muslim innovation.

AHMADIYA MOVEMENT/QUADIANI MOVEMENT

- This movement was started in around 1899 at a town at a town Quadiyan under the leadership of **Mirza Ghulam Ahmed** of Quadim (Gurudaspur, Punjab).
- He- began his work as a defender of Islam against the polemics of the Arya Samaj and the Christian missionaries. In 1889 he claimed to be Masih (messiah) and Mahdi, and later also to be an incarnation of the Hindu god Krishna and Jesus returned to earth.
- The Ahmadiyas opposed jihad or sacred war against non – Muslims and stressed fraternal relations among all people. The movement spread Western liberal education among Indian Muslims and started a network of schools and colleges for that purpose.
- It emphasized the humanitarian and universal character of Islam.
- It also emphasized that the technological progress should be regarded by the Muslim as a part of God's purpose and should be given religious recognition.
- This movement was strictly apolitical.
- It was conservative in social morals.
- There was a split in this movement in 1914 into Quadiyani and Lahori.

ALIGARH MOVEMENT

- Started by Sayyid Ahmed Khan in 1860's.
- Syed Ahmad Khan was in the judicial service of the Company at the time of the rebellion of 1857 and stood loyal to the Government.
- Based on the liberal interpretation of the Koran.
- It aimed at spreading western and scientific education among the Muslim masses.
- He established **Scientific Society** in **1864** to introduce the western sciences through Urdu translation.
- He began the publication of Urdu journal **Tahzib – Al – Akhlaq** in 1870.
- With the full backing of the bureaucracy he founded the Aligarh School on May 24, 1875, on the birth anniversary of Queen Victoria. This school was upgraded in 1877 to a college, the forerunner of the Aligarh Muslim University.
- His interpretation of Islam emphasized the validity of free enquiry and similarities between Koranic revelation and the laws of nature discovered by modern science.
- The programmes for reforms were educational, religious and political.

- Muhammadan Anglo – Oriental Education Conference was started in 1886 for promoting western education among Muslims.
 - His work in 1860 – **The Loyal Muhammadans of India**.
 - In 1878 he became a member of imperial Legislative Council.
 - He was given title of Knighthood in 1888.
 - He opposed Ilbert Bill and said – Hindus and Muslims are two eyes of India.
 - He founded United Indian Patriotic Association to counter congress.
 - He opposed Indian National Congress along with Raja Sheo Prasad of Banaras.
 - He founded Muhammadan Anglo – Oriental Defence Association in 1883.
 - Poets associated with him – Altaf Hussain Hali, Maulavi Nazir Ahmad.
- Maulavi Shibli Numani.

ANJUMAN – I – HIMAYAT - I – ISLAM

- This was founded in Lahore in **1866** by Muhammad Shafi and Shah Din.
- Both were followers of Sayyid Ahmad Khan, the founder of the Aligarh movement.
- This Islamic society opened schools imparting Western education emphasised female education, loyalty to the British Government and opposed the Indian National Congress.
- In 1869, the Anjuman – i – Islamiyah was organised in Lahore to teach Muslim youths the principles of Islam and elements of western education

NADWAH – UL - ULAMA

- Founded by **Maulana Shibli Numani** in 1894 at Lucknow.
- Shibli Numani (1857 - 1914), was a profound scholar of Persian and Arabic and a prolific writer in Urdu. He was in favour of reforming the traditional Islamic system of education by cutting down its formal studies and including the English language and European sciences. He founded the Nadwah – ul – Ulama and Dar – ul – Uloom in Lucknow in 1894 – 96, where he tried to give effect to his educational ideas.
- It aimed at reforms in Muslim morals through changes in Muslim education system.
- It emphasized upon the development and upliftment through education.

FARANGI MAHAL MOVEMENT

- Famous traditional school at Farangi Mahal in Lucknow.
- It accepted Sufism.
- Nizamiyya syllabus evolved from it which was followed by most of the religious or communal Muslim schools all over India.

DEOBAND MOVEMENT

- The Islamic Seminary at Deoband was founded in 1867 by two theologians, Muhammad Qasim Nanautavi (1837 - 80) and Rashid Ahmad Gangohi.
- It was anti – British movement.
- It aimed at upliftment of Muslims through religious education and resuscitate classical Islam.
- It emphasized on educational efforts as a means for upliftment.
- It welcomed the formation of Indian National Congress in 1885.
- Deoband Ulema issued Fatwa against S. A Khan's organisations –
- India United Patriotic Association
- Muhammadan Anglo Oriental Defence Association
- Its new leader Muhammad – ul – Hasan worked for synthesis of Islamic principles and national aspirations. His plea was concretised by Jamait – Ulema.

KHASKAR MOVEMENT

- Started by Allam Mashirigi in 1931.
- It was based on religious ideology of early Islam.
- This movement advocated reforms on the basis of military discipline for regeneration of Islam and social service.
- It was popular in Punjab and Sind etc.

MOVEMENT OF TITU MIR

- This was started by Mir Nithar Ali/ Titu Mir, a disciple of Syed Ahmed of Raibarelwi in Bengal in 1820's.
- Mir Nithar Ali, popularly known as Titu Mir (1782 - 1831), was an ardent follower of Sayyid Ahmad Raibarelwi. Titu Mir preached fundamentalist doctrines of Islam in rural western Bengal. He opposed Hinduism and the landlord class. He mobilised his Muslim peasant followers and organised a rebellion against the government in 1831, which was subdued by the British troops.
- When Titu Mir organised the Muslim peasants against Hindu landlords and British indigo planters, some Hindu landlords imposed a beard – tax on his followers and persecuted them in other ways.
- Titu Mir's organisation and his movement were not really as militant or revolutionary as the British records make out; only during the last year of his life there was confrontation between him and the British police. Finally he was killed in action in 1831 by a British regiment of native infantry.
- It was independent offshoot of Wahabis.

- He advocated a change in the mode of dress to distinguish Muslims from Hindus
- It was against the customs and beliefs borrowed from popular Hinduism.
- It came in conflict with Hindu landlords and British indigo planters and eventually with British administration.

FARAIZI MOVEMENT

- This Movement was deeply influenced by the teachings of Saudi Arabia.
- It was started by Hazi Shariatullah in 1847 at Faridpur (East Bengal).
- It was the protest of the peasants against the Zamindars, govt. officials and British indigo planters.
- It was religious in form but political in content.
- It emphasized on reforms in Muslim practices.
- Suspended Friday and ID Prayers considering India under the British as Dar – Ul – Harb.
- Dadu Mian son of Shariatullah advocated equality of mankind and emphasized that earth belonged to God

and man didn't have power to levy the tax.

- This led to introduction of new clothes in order to distinguish the Muslims from the Hindus. **TA'AYUUNI MOVEMENT**

- Started by Karmat Ali Jaunpuri.
- Inspired by religious thought of Shah – Waliullah.
- It was opposed to Faraizis.
- It rejected introduction of new things in Islam like innovations and syncretistic practices.
- He sailed the rivers of Bengal and Assam for nearly forty years in a flotilla, which constituted a travelling –

cum – residential college.

- Ta'ayuuni movement did not agree with the Faraizi's view that India under the British rule was Dar – ul – Harb or that India under the British rule was Dar – ul – Harb or enemy territory, where Muslims should not practise their religious rituals.
- They were trenchantly critical of the Faraizi's suspension of Friday and Id prayers, arguing that, since there was religious freedom for the Muslims under British rule, India was not Dar – ul

– Harb. **AHL – I – QURAN (PEOPLE OF QURAN)**

- Founded by **Maulavi Obedullah Chakralvi** in Punjab.
- Aimed at preaching the teaching of Koran as the ultimate authority on Islam.

PAGAL PANTHIS MOVEMENT

- Founded by Karam Shah in Bengal.
- It was a semi – religious sect.
- It took up the cause of the tenants against the oppressions of the Zamindars.

AHRAR MOVEMENT

- Started by the young Muslim nationalists Md. Ali, Hakim Ajmal Khan, Mazhar – ul – Haq, and Zafar Ali Khan in 1890 in Punjab.

• It was against loyalist politics of Aligarh school and was inspired by the modern idea of self government. **AZAD MUSLIM CONFERENCE**

- Founded by Allah Bux in 1940.
- Supported by the nationalist Muslims within the Congress, Jamayat-al –Ulema, Ahrar Party etc.
- It opposed the claim of Pakistan.

KRISHAK PRAJA PARTY

- Founded by **Fazl ul Haq** in Bengal in 1929.
- It was a Muslim peasantry party.
- He emphasized upon the programme of agrarian revolution through parliamentary and constitutional means.
- It exhibited sometimes communalist tendencies because the Zamindars who were Hindus and peasantry were Muslims in Bengal.

KHUDAI KHIDMATGARS

- This was also known as Red Shirt Movement.
- This was started by Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan in 1930 in North West Frontier Province.
- It was nationalist and pro – Congress organisation.
- In Baluchistan the nationalist Muslims were organised into Watan party.
- It started no – rent campaign during civil – disobedience Movement on Gandhian methodology. **KHILAFAT MOVEMENT**

- Started in 1919 by Hakim Ajmal Khan. Hasrat Mohani, the Ali brothers and Maulana Azad.

- Initially it was religious in spirit but later on assumed political complexion and lined with Indian Freedom

Struggle.

- A protest movement against the humiliation of the caliph.

WATAN PARTY

- Founded in Baluchistan by Nationalist Muslims.
- Attitude pro – Congress.

ALL INDIA MOMIN CONFERENCE

- This was a political organisation of Muslim Weavers.
- Supported Indian National congress.
- This was anti – Muslim League and anti – Pakistan demand.

ALL INDIA SHIA POLITICAL CONFERENCE

- This was a political organisation of Indian Shias.
- Its attitude was pro – Congress.

RISE & DEVELOPMENT OF SIKHISM

NANAK (1469 - 1539)

- He was the founder of Sikhism.
- Nanak's disciples called themselves, derived from the Sanskrit word Shishya (disciple) or path Sikkha

instruction.

- Nanak was born at Talwandi
- He was a mystic of Nirguna School.
- He established Sikh Sangatas.
- Appointed Lehana who succeeded him as Guru Angad

ANGAD (1538- 1552)

- Invented new script **Gurumukhi**.
- He was also known as Lehana and Baba Srichandra
- He divided the Sikh spiritual empire into 22 Parishes or Manjis or Gadiyan.
- He started collecting and compiling Nanak's hymns.

AMARDAS (1552 - 1574)

- Introduced features which served to maintain the cohesion of the community.
- Initiated **Langars** (Free kitchens) which were maintained by voluntary offerings.
- Introduced many innovations which later helped in emergence of Sikh Church.
- Emperor Akbar granted many villages to his daughter.
- He was follower of Vaishnavism initially.
- He asked his disciples to lead family life and preach the religion.

- He opposed Sati, use of drugs and liquor and the practice of veiling.

RAMDAS (1574 - 1581)

- He had a tank dug at the site granted to his wife by Akbar.
- Founded Amritsar.
- During his period succession became hereditary.

ARJUN (1581 - 1606)

- He founded Hamandir Sahib at Amritsar which later came to be known as Golden Temple.
- He composed Guru Granth Sahib (Adi Granth) in 1604.
- He was executed by Jehangir in 1606 on the pretext of Khusrav Rebellion. He blessed Khusrav during rebellion.
- Organised collection of spiritual tribute by agents called **Masanads**.
- The uncalled for execution of Guru Arjun Dev in May 1606 by Jahangir had compelled the peace – loving

Sikhs to take up arms for their self – defence under the guidance of their sixth Guru Hargobind (1606 – 45). **HAR GOVIND (1606 - 1645)**

- He declared himself to be the spiritual as well as temporal head of the Sikhs and adopted a new policy

(Policy of **Miri and Piri**) which gradually transformed the Sikh devotees into soldier – saints.

- He started giving military training to his followers.
- He also enlisted a body of troops.
- He built **Akal Takht** (Throne of Almighty)
- He fortified Amritsar.
- The young Guru had to suffer imprisonment in the fort of Gwalior for a couple of years during the reign of

Jahangir. He was later released in 1611.

- The new policy adopted by Guru, Hargobind brought the Sikhs into armed conflict with the Mughal government under Shah Jahan.
- Defeated the imperial forces at Songrama in 1628.
- He shifted headquarter to Kiratpur
- He allowed his followers to eat meat.
- After heroically fighting three battles with the Mughals, the Guru retreated to the foothills of the Shivaliks

and set up his abode at Kiratpur, on the borders of the Kahlur (Bilaspur) state. The place being situated away from the main highways and centres of mughal administration was comparatively safe, and yet it was not far away from the hearts and homes of his followers.

HAR RAI (1645 - 1661)

- He blessed Dara Shukoh.
- He helped Dara Shukoh to escape after his defeat in the battle of Samugarh.
- The seventh Guru Har Rai (1645 – 61) devoted himself exclusively to the missionary work. During his period, the Sikhs remained at peace with the Mughal government. Aurangzeb kept a vigilant eye on the Mughal government. Aurangzeb kept a vigilant eye on the activities of the Sikhs from the very beginning of his reign.
- On a complaint received from some Muslims regarding the alleged anti – Islamic contents of the Adi Granth, he called Guru Har Rai to Delhi for explanation. The latter excused himself but sent his elder son Ram Rai to the Mughal court. Ram Rai, overawed by the Mughal might and tempted by the royal favours, played a subservient role to Aurangzeb and was, accordingly, deprived of his nomination to the guruship by his father. As a result, on the death of Guru Har Rai 1661, his second son Har Krishan, then a child of five or six, became the eighth Guru of the Sikhs. Ram Rai's made efforts to secure the guru – gaddi for himself with the intervention of the Mughal court but failed.

HAR KISAN (1661 - 1664)

- He settled at Anandpur.
- His brother Ram Rai contested his claims to throne.
- The child Guru Har Krishan was called by Aurangzeb to Delhi and kept under his watchful eyes till his death in 1664.

TEG BAHADUR (1664 - 1675)

- The ninth guru of the Sikhs, Tegh Bahadur (1664 – 75), better known among

his disciples as Deg Bahadur for his bounteous nature and peaceful dispositions, was the grandson of Guru Arjan Dev and the youngest son of Guru Hargobind. Born in 1621 he was past forty – three at the time of his accession to the guruship which was disputed by a number of impostors with the connivance of the corrupt masands. Tegh Bahadur's claim of the guru – gaddi, though based on a vague remark and parting indication of the child Guru that his successor lived at Bakala, was justified on grounds of his virtuous character and the ability with which he provided spiritual as well as temporal guidance to the Sikhs.

- In order to allow the dust to settle on the dispute about his succession, Tegh Bahadur left Punjab with his family and some devoted Sikhs on a missionary tour to the eastern India. His wife, Gujari, who was in her advanced stage of pregnancy, had to be left at Patna under the care of her brother Kripal Chand and Nanaki, the aged mother of the Guru. They were looked after by the Sikh sangat of Patna. It was here that Gobind Rai (the future Guru Gobind Singh), the only son of Tegh Bahadur, was born on December 26, 1666. The latter heard of his birth when he was stationed at Dacca. In Assam, Guru Tegh Bahadur came into contact with Raja Ram Singh, son of Raja Jai Singh, who was engaged in warfare with the Ahoms. According to the Sikh tradition, the Guru brought about a compromise between the Mughal armies and the Ahoms and effected peace. This event took place at Dhubri on the bank of the Brahmaputra.

- In 1673 – 74, the Guru toured the Malwa region and the Punjab extensively and encouraged his followers to shun fear and resist the religious tyranny of the Mughal government.

- Aurangzeb flew into rage; he immediately sent orders for the arrest of Guru Tegh Bahadur. The latter, along with five disciples, was brought in chains to Delhi and given the choice between Islam and death. The Guru chose the latter and was tortured to death on November 11, 1675.

- Accompanied the Mughal in Assam.

- Resisted religious intolerance of Aurangzeb by encouraging Brahmanas of Kashmir.

GOVIND SINGH (1675 - 1708)

- He was born at Patna. He started **Khalsa Panth** in 1699 AD.

- After the execution of the ninth guru Teg Bahadur, the Sikhs were led by the tenth guru Govind Singh.

- The young Guru was styled as Sacha Padshah.

- The Guru's literary activities included the translations of the Ramayana, Mahabharata and the Puranas into Punjabi and the preparation of the biographies

of the great Hindu heroes of the past, with the assistance of a galaxy of scholars and poets from Benaras and Patna. Being a scholar of Hindi, Sanskrit and Persian; and a born poet, he had himself composed the celebrated japji Sahib, Chandi Charittar, Ukat Bilas and a part of the Krishna avtar while at Anandpur. At Paonta, the Guru completed the Krishan Avtar, and wrote Shastar Nam mala Puran, Chandi di Var, Pakhyan Charittar, Akal Ustat, Ram Avtar, and his autobiography, entitled Bachittar Natak.

- On the receipt of his communication, Aurangzeb invited the Guru to meet him in the south where he was engaged in life and death struggle against the Marathas. Therefore, the Guru set for the Deccan through Rajasthan, in the company of a few thousands of his warriors. He heard of Aurangzeb's death near Baghaur in Rajasthan in April 1707. Thereupon, Guru Gobind Singh returned to Delhi to meet the powers that be.

- Immediately after the death of his father, prince Muazzam, now styled Bahadur Shah, contacted the Sikhs through his officials and expressed his desire to make a settlement with them. The Guru met him at Agra in July and was received with open arms by Bahadur Shah. As the latter had to move with his armies to the south to fight a war of succession with his youngest brother Kam Bakhsh, the Guru also accompanied him to the Deccan.

- He wrote a letter in Persian verse to Aurangzeb. The letter, entitled **Zafarnama**, was sent to the emperor through Daya Singh and Dharam Singh. In this letter, the Guru condemned the policy of religious persecution as adopted by Aurangzeb, and exposed the treachery of the Mughal commanders at Anandpur who broke the written agreement and massacred the unsuspecting Sikhs and their families.

- They reached Nanded on the bank of the river Godavari where the imperial troops halted for about two months. Guru Gobind Singh set up his camp at a short distance from the imperial armies. It was here that the Guru was fatally wounded with a dagger, in the beginning of October 1708, by a Pathan, probably named **Jamashid Khan**. The Guru died of the wound on October 18, 1708, at the age of forty – two.

- Introduced two titles of Singh and Kaur.

- He put stress on self reliance.

- He introduced Panj Piyare and Panj Kakke (Five K's) – Kesa, Kachcha, Kara, Kirpan, Kangha.

- He was called **Sachcha Padshah**.

- Compiled **Daswen Padshah Ka Granth**.

- Introduced a new rite named **Pahul**.
- He suppressed the organisation of the Masanads who had become corrupt.
- He said about Khalsa – Khalsa is the Guru and Guru is Khalsa.
- He was defeated by the hill chiefs in which he lost two sons–**Ajit Singh and Juhar Singh**.
- He defeated Wazir Khan. Governor of Sirhind.
- He served Mughals under Bahadur Shah to Deccan.
- He was killed by a Pathan at Nanded on the Godavari river.

BANDA BAHADUR

- His real name was Lachman Das.
- He abolished Zamindari.
- He defeated the Mughal governor Wazir Khan and sacked Sirhind.
- He established himself at hill fort of Lohgarh.
- He was captured by Abdus Samad Khan, the governor of Lahore and put to death in Delhi in 1716 by Farrukhsiyar.

KAPUR SINGH

- Kapur Singh organised independent Jathas into one army called **Dal Khalsa** under Jassa Singh.
- The Sikhs struck – first coin in 1764 there by signifying their sovereign power.

VARIOUS SOCIAL REFORM LEGISLATIONS

Abolition of infanticide

- By Bengal **Regulation XXI of 1795**.

Abolition of infanticide

- By Lord Wellesley by **Regulation III** of 1804 again.

Abolition of slavery

- Through **Regulation X** by Bengal Government in 1811 AD.

Abolition of sati

- By Lord William Bentinck through under **Regulation XVII** in **1829**.
- Pioneering efforts in this direction were made by Raja Ram Mohan Roy.
- Initially this ban applicable in the presidency of Bengal only. In 1830 the regulation was extended to Bombay

and Madras Presidencies also.

Abolition of Thugi

- By William Bentinck
- Military operations against the thugs were led by Capt. William Sleeman

during 1831 – 37 AD. **Abolition of slavery**

- By **Regulation III** in 1832

Abolition of slavery

- By Lord Ellenborough through **Act V** in 1843.

Widow's Remarriage Act

- Through **Act 15th in 1856.**
- Approval of widow remarriage by Hindu Widow's Remarriage Act.
- This was result of the pioneering efforts of Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar.

Native Marriage Act

- The Native Marriage Act 1872 banned the child marriage, polygamy & approval of intercaste marriage &

widow remarriage.

- The Native Marriage Act fixed the minimum age of marriage for boys and girls at 18 years and 14 years respectively.

• The Native Marriage Act was not applicable to Hindus, Muslims and other recognised faiths. **Age of Consent Act 1891**

- Age of Consent Act 1891 prohibited child marriages.
- Age of Marriage for girls was increased to 12 years.
- This was result of the pioneering efforts of Behramji Malabari and K.C. Sen.

Sharda Act 1929

- The age of marriage was increased to 18 years in the case of Boy's and 14 years in the case of girls.
- The Child Marriage Restraint Act 1929 was commonly known as Sharda Act.

Banning of Child marriage by infant Marriage Prevention Act

- Child marriages were banned by infant Marriage Prevention Act 1931.

MISC. POINTS

- Condition of India was written by India League.
- Edward Thompson wrote Farewell to India.
- Mother India was written by Katherine Mayo.
- E. M. Forster wrote Passage to India.
- Madhududhan Dutta wrote Meghananda Kavya.
- Devi Chaudhrani was written by Bankimchandra Chatterjee.
- Neel Darpan was written by Dinabandhu Mitra.
- Raghunathaya was associated with Upasana Sabha.

- Gajalu Lakshmanarasu Chetty was associated with Crescent.
- Stree Darpan was written by Rameshwari Nehru.
- Hukumo Devi was associated with Kanya Hitkarini Sabha.
- The Mahdi movement during the time of Islam Shah was led by Mir Sayid Muhammad Mahdi.

TOPIC

REVOLT OF 1857

CAUSES OF THE REVOLT OF 1857

POLITICAL FACTORS

- The British imperialism had created suspicion in mind of native rulers. The acts of Lord Dalhausie endangered

the existence of native states.

- Dalhausie annexed the following native states through the Doctrine of Lapse – of
- Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambhalpur (1849), Bagat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854).
- The native states annexed by Dalhausie through war –
- Punjab (1849) and Lower Burma/Pegu (1852).
- Awadh was annexed by him on the pretext of **misgovernance**.
- Dalhausie took away the royal titles of the rulers of Tanjore and Karnataka.
- He also ordered that the successors of Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah Jafar will leave Red Fort and will live

near Qutub Minar.

SOCIO-RELIGIOUS FACTORS

- The activities of Christian Missionaries deeply hurt the feelings of common public. They attacked India

culture and customs openly.

- The company's government was in full sympathy with the Missionaries and supported their activities.
- The Charter Act of 1833 legalized the proselytizing activities of Christian Missionaries.
- Govt. passed **Religious Disabilities Act** to facilitate religious conversion into Christianity. This Act was

proposed in 1845 and was passed in 1850. This act provided the right to inherit ancestral property to Hindu converts to Christianity. This Act was also known as

Lex Loci Act.

- In 1857 Mr. Mangles, the Chairman of the Directors of the East India Company, in the House of Commons said that Providence has entrusted the extensive empire of Hindustan to England in order that the banner of Christ should wave triumphant from one end of India to the other. Everyone must exert all his strength that there may be no dilatoriness on any account in continuing in the country the grand work of making all Indians Christians.
- Major Edwards also openly declared that the Christianization of India was to be the ultimate end of our continued possession of it.
- Lord Shaftsbury believed that the failure to Christianize India was the cause of the whole trouble.
- In Dec. 1856 the Govt. of Lord Canning introduced new Enfield rifle in place of Brown Bess. The cartridges used in the new rifle were to be taken to the mouth to remove the seal before putting into the rifle. A rumour became current in India that the seal was prepared by mixing the fat of cow and pig. The issue of greased cartridges provided the immediate spark and Indian soldiers refused to use them.

MILITARY GRIEVANCES

- The privilege of free postage so long enjoyed by the sepoy was withdrawn with the passing of the Post

Office Act of 1854 by Dalhausie.

- In 1856 Canning's government passed the **General Service Enlistment Act** which decreed that all future recruits for the Bengal army would have to give an undertaking to serve anywhere their services might be required by the Government.
- Coverly Jackson, the British resident at Awadh disbanded the native soldiers and strictly enquired into the titles of the talukdars of Oudh. This made Oudh the chief centre of the Rebellion.

ECONOMIC GRIEVANCES

- The land revenue policy of the company also created resentment among the common public.
- The Inam Commission appointed in 1852 in Bombay confiscated as many as 20,000 estates.

VARIOUS STATEMENTS ABOUT THE REVOLT

- Benjamin Disraeli, the leader of opposition in British Parliament remarked that that decline and fall of empires are not affairs of greased cartridges. Such rebellions are occasioned by adequate causes and accumulation of adequate causes. He contended that the so – called Mutiny was no sudden impulse but was the result of careful combinations, vigilant and well – organised, on the watch for an opportunity.
- John Lawrence remarked that had a single leader of ability arisen among them (the rebels) we must have been lost beyond redemption.
- Hugh Rose remarked about Rani Lakshmi Bai that **here lay the woman who was the only man among the rebels.**
- Commenting on the role of telegraph played in Suppression of the revolt The Times of London Commented “Never since its discovery has the electric telegraph played so important and daring a role as it now does in India”.
- In the moment of crisis, Canning the Governor- General Said “If the Sindhia joins the Mutiny today, I shall have to pack off tomorrow”.
- Lord Cromer remarked – I wish the young generation of the English would read, understand, learn and inwardly digest the history of Indian mutiny. It abounds in lessons and warnings.
- Queen’s proclamation read by Lord Canning stated – The Indian states had served as breakwaters in the storm which would otherwise have swept over us in one great wave.

BEGINNING OF THE REVOLT

Sl. No. Chronology Development

1. 2nd Feb. 1857 The 19th Native Infantry at Behrampur refused to use the newly introduced

Enfield rifle and was disbanded.

2. 29 Mar. 1857 34th Native Infantry revolted at Barrackpur. Soldiers under Mangal Pandey refused to use greased cartridges and shot dead **Lt. Baugh and Lt. Gen. Hughson.**

Mangal Pandey was hanged on 8 Apr 1857. Mangal Pandey was native of Balia Distt. in modern U.P.

3. 10 May 1857 20th Native Infantry and 3rd cavalry refused to use greased cartridges and

revolted at Meerut. The rebels killed the European commander **Gen. Hewitt**. The sepoys, then, set out to capture and control the imperial city of Delhi. **4. 12 May 1857** The rebels entered Delhi on 11 May, 1857 and captured Delhi. **Lt.**

Willoughby

was the European commander at Delhi. He set on fire the ammunition depot of Delhi. **Simon Fraser**, the English Political Agent in Delhi and several other Englishmen were killed. Bahadur Shah II was declared as Emperor of India.

Bahadur Shah was the nominal leader. The real command was under General Bakht Khan. **Delhi was recaptured by the English on 20 Sep. 1857.**

Henry Bernard

and **Brig. Wilson** besieged Delhi. **J. Nicholson** climbed the Kashmiri gate and captured city entrance. He was badly wounded during the operations and succumbed to his injuries. Bahadur Shah took shelter at Humayun tomb. **Lt.**

Hudson arrested Bahadur Shah and killed his sons and grandsons. Bahadur Shah was deported to Rangoon where he died in 1862

5. 10 – 30 May 1857 Revolt spread to Delhi, Bombay and U.P.

6. 4 June 1857 The revolt took place at Lucknow. The revolt was led by Hazrat Mahal, the begum

of Avadh. Maulavi Ahmadullah of Faizabad was also one of the great leaders.

7. 4th June, 1857

8. 5th June, 1857

9. 5th June, 1857

10. June, 1857

11. September 1857

12. October, 1857

13. November, 1857

14 December, 1857

15. 11th March, 1858

16. April, 1858

17. May, 1858

18. July to Dec. 1858

1. Barrackpur 2. Delhi

Henry Lawrence was the Chief Commissioner of Awadh. He died fighting the rebels. **Brig. Inglis** continued to defend Europeans in Lucknow against heavy

pressure of the rebels. **Havelock and Outram** attempted to recapture Lucknow but failed. In November 1857 **Sir Colin Campbell**, the new Commander – in – Chief, sent from England entered the city with the help of **Gorkha regiments** and evacuated the Europeans. **Lucknow was recaptured by the English on 21 March 1858.** After the recapture of Lucknow, Begam Hazrat Mahal escaped to Nepal.

Rani Laxmi Bai, the widow of late king Gangadhar Rao revolted at Jhansi. She assumed the Leadership of the Sepoys. Sir Hugh Rose recaptured Jhansi by assault on 3rd April 1858. Rani captured Gwalior with the help of Tantia Tope and Afghan guards. The Rani of Jhansi died fighting clad in soldier's uniform on 17 June 1858 on the ramparts of the fort of Gwalior against English forces under **Gen. Hugh Rose**. Tantia Tope took shelter with his Zamindar friend Man Singh but Man Singh informed the English and Tantia Tope was captured. He was hanged after brief trial on **15 Apr. 1859 AD.**

The revolt began at Kanpur. The revolt was led by Nana Sahib. Most of the fighting was done by Tantia Tope. Azim Ullah Khan was another loyal servant of Nana Sahib. Sir Hugh Wheeler defended Kanpur against Nana Saheb's forces in the beginning but he surrendered on 27 June, 1857. **Colin Campbell recaptured Kanpur on 6 Dec. 1858.** After being defeated Nana Saheb refused to surrender and escaped to Nepal in early 1859, never to be heard again. After the loss of Kanpur, Tantia Tope joined the Rani Laxmi Bai. At Banaras a rebellion had been organised which was mercilessly suppressed by **Colonel Neill** who put to death all rebels, suspects and even disorderly boys. Colonel Neill killed Indians as revenge against the killing of English by Nana Sahib's forces in Benaras and Allahabad.

The revolt spread in Central India and Punjab. Mutinies at Indore, Jhelum and Sialkot (both Punjab)

Khan Bahadur Khan proclaimed himself Nawab Nazim.

Revolt further breaks out in Central India.

Revolt breaks out in Kota district.

General Widham was defeated by the rebels outside Kanpur

Sir Colin Campbell wins the battle of Kanpur. Tantia Tope escapes. Campbell captures Lucknow

First uprising in Bihar by Kunwar Singh. Kunwar Singh, the ruined Zamindar of Jagdishpur was the main leader. Kunwar Singh died due to the wounds of the battle on 9 May 1858. After the death of Kunwar Singh the revolt was led by Amar Singh. The revolt was suppressed by **Major William Taylor and Gen.**

Eye in Dec. 1858.

The English capture Bareilly, Jagdishpur and Kalpi.

English authority was re-established.

LEADERS OF THE REVOLT

Mangal Pandey

Bahadur Shah II Gen Bakht Khan Hakim Ahsanullah (Chief Advisor to Bahadur

Shah II Delhi) Firuz Shah (Relative of Bahadur Shah II Delhi) **3. Jhansi** Rani

Laxmi Bai

4. Lucknow Begam Hazrat Mahal, Birjis Qadir **5. Faizabad** Maulavi

Ahmadullah

6. Kanpur Nana Saheb Azim Ullah Khan Tantia Tope **7. Jagdishpur** Kunwar

Singh Amar Singh

8. Bareilly Khan Bahadur Khan

9. Kullu Rana Pratap Singh Vir Singh **10. Satara** Rango Bapuji Gupte

11. Assam Diwan Maniram Dutta

SUPPRESSION OF REVOLT AND OFFICER ASSOCIATED Sl. No.

Centre of Revolt Beginning of Revolt

1. Delhi 11 May 1857

2. Lucknow

3. Jhansi

4. Kanpur

5. Jagdishpur

4 June 1857

4 June 1857

5 June 1857 April 1858

6. Faizabad

7. Allahabad

8. Bareilly

June 1857

June 1857

June 1857

Officer who suppressed End of Revolt the Revolt

Gen John Nicholson, 20 Sep. 1857 Henry Bernard Brig.

Wilson Lt. Hudson

Colin Campbell 21 March 1858 Gen Hugh Rose 17 June 1858 Colin Campbell 6

Dec. 1858 Major William Dec. 1858 Taylor and Gen. Eyre

Gen. Reynard Dec. 1858 Gen. Neil Dec. 1858 Vincent Eyre Dec. 1858

Sl. No. Author

1. S. N. Sen

2. P.C. Joshi

3. H.P. Chattopadhyay

4. A.T. Embree

5. R.C. Majumdar

6. S.B. Chaudhuri

7. Eric Strokes VARIOUS BOOKS ABOUT THE REVOLT

Name of the book

1857

Rebellion, 1857

The Sepoy Mutiny, 1857

1857 in India

The Sepoy Mutiny and the Revolt of 1857

Civil Rebellion in the Indian Mutinies, 1857-59. Theories of the Indian

Mutiny English historical writings on the Indian mutiny, 1857-59. The Peasant and the Raj

8. Maulana Abul Kalam Azad Eighteen Fifty Seven

9. V.D. Savarkar The Indian war of Independence 1857

10. Ashok Mehta 1857 A great Revolt

11. John Caye History of Sepoy War

12. T.R. Holms Sepoy War

MISC. POINTS ABOUT THE REVOLT

- The revolt embraced almost every cantonment in Bengal and a few in Bombay. Only the Madras army remained totally loyal.
- When the rebels captured the city of Delhi and Bahadur Shah II was declared

as Emperor of India and a court of administrators was established in Delhi which was responsible for all matters of state. The court consisted of ten members, six from the army and four from the civilian department.

- Although the rebels received the sympathy of the people, the country as a whole was not behind them. **The merchants, intelligentsia and Indian rulers** not only kept aloof, but actively supported the British.
- Bahadur Shah and Zeenat Mahal had no faith in the sepoys and negotiated with the British to secure their safety.
- According to historian Sunder Lal planning of the revolt was made either in London or at Bithur.
- **Lotus and Bread** were the symbol of the rebels.
- Nana Saheb challenged the colonial rulers that till the time blood is running in my body the battle will continue. Even if you kill me, arrest me or hang me i shall reply everything with sword.
- Bahadur Shah died in Rangoon. An inscription on his tomb read that Zafar was so unlucky that he could not get two yard land in his motherland for his burial.
- **Ramchandra Pandurang** was the real name of Tantia Tope.
- For his invincible courage and bravery Kunwar Singh came to be known as **the Lion of Bihar**.
- Maulavi Ahmadullah, the leader of revolt in Faizabad asked Indians to rise against the foreign rulers. **He declared Jihad against the English.** The government was so much terrified by the activities that a prize of Rs 50000 was declared on his head. He was shot dead on 5 June 1858 at Poyan near the border of Rohilkhand.
- In Assam the revolt was led by **Diwan Maniram Dutta**. He declared Kandarpeswar singh, the grandson of last king of Assam as the ruler. The revolt was quickly suppressed and Maniram was hanged.
- A regiment stationed at Kota revolted and killed English Resident **Major Burton** stationed there.

TOPIC

INDIAN NATIONAL MOVEMENT

INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS

- Indian National Congress was founded in 1885 by seventy-two political workers. It was the first organised expression of Indian nationalism on an all-India scale. A.O. Hume, a retired English ICS officer, played an important role in its formation.
- The safety valve theory was put forward by Lala Lajpat Rai in paper Young India in 1916 AD. He supported his arguments with references contained in A. O Hume's biography written by William Wedderburn in 1913.
- According to this theory the Congress was started by A.O. Hume and others under the official advice of Lord Dufferin, the viceroy, to provide a 'Safety valve' for the rising discontent among the masses.
- R. Palme Dutt further popularised this theory in his work India Today.
- In 1939 M.S. Golwalkar, the RSS chief also used the safety valve theory for attacking the Congress for its secularism. He published the pamphlet named **WE**.
- The liberal C. F. Andrews and Girija Mukherjee fully accepted the safety valve theory in their work "The Rise and Growth of the Congress in India" published in 1938.
- Hume was one of the chief stimulants of the Indian National movement. Hume retired from the Indian Civil Service in 1882.
- According to Gokhale no Indian could have stated the Indian National Congress if Indian had come forward to start a movement embracing all India the officials India would not have allowed the movement to come into existence.
- In 1881-82 Indian Nationalists had organized a protest against the plantation Labour and the Inland Emigration Act which condemned plantation Labourers to serfdom.
- In July 1883 a massive all India effort was made to raise a National Fund which would be used to promote political agitation in India as well as England.
- In January 1885, B. M. Malabari wrote some editorials in the "**Indian Spectator**" urging educated Indians to inaugurate a movement for social reform.
- Lord Dufferin criticised Hume as cleverish a little cracked excessively vain and

absolutely indifferent to truth.

- P. Ananda Charlu in his presidential address to the Congress in 1891 described Congress as a mighty nationalizer.
- Commenting on the first Congress session the Indu Prakash of Bombay wrote that It marks the beginning of a new life it will greatly help in creating a national feeling and binding together distant people by common sympathies and common ends .
- The 1888 session Congress decided that no resolution will be passed to which an over whelming majority of Hindu or Muslim delegates objected.
- In 1889 a minority clause was adopted in the resolution demanding reform of legislative councils.
- Dadabhai Naoroji said that “A National Congress must confine itself to questions in which the entire nation has a direct participation”.
- Gokhale criticised the liberal policies of Congress. At this Ranade said to Gokhale that “You don t realize our place in the history of our country. These memorials are nominally addressed to Government in reality they are addressed to the people”.
- Gokhale wrote in 1907 AD that Let us not forget that we are at a stage of the country’s progress when our achievements are bound to be small and our disappointments frequent and trying.

FACTS ABOUT CONGRESS

- Foundation in 1885.
- First Session at Gokaldas Tejpal Sanskrit College in Bombay. Earlier Poona was selected for the venue, but it

has to be shifted to Bombay because of the outbreak of Cholera in Poona.

- First president was Womesh Chandra Banerjee of Bengal.
- First Session was attended by 100 men of whom 72 were non-officials & were recognised as members.
- Founder members were Pherozeshah Mehta, Badruddin Tyabji, W.C. Banerjee, Romesh Chandra Dutt, Dada

Bhai Naoroji etc.

- Initially it was named **Indian National Union**.
- Named “Indian National Congress” on the suggestion of Dadabhai Naoroji.
- The Governor-General of India at the time of foundation was Lord Dufferin. He suggested that Congress

should devote itself to social issues rather than political matters.

- Among the classes, the educated middle class had the largest share in the beginning.
- The legal profession was most heavily represented among the professions.
- The Brahmins among the castes were comparatively large in number.
- Among the provinces, Bombay, Calcutta and Madras took the leading part.
- Landed classes and the masses were absent.
- **‘British Committee of the Congress’** was established in 1889 by Dada Bhai Naoroji, A.O. Hume and William

Wedderburn to influence British Public opinion at London.

- The Congress started the journal **“India”** in 1890.
- Sir William Wedderburn and W. S. Caine had set up the Indian Parliamentary Committee in 1893 to agitate for

Indian political reforms in the House of Commons.

COMMENTS ABOUT CONGRESS

- Congress is a begging institution – B.C. Pal
- Congress sessions are three days Tamasha – Ashwini Kumar Dutta
- Congress leaders playing with bubbles - Aurobindo Ghose (in New lamps for old in 1893-94)
- Congress sessions as croaking once a year like frog -Tilak
- Congress was a safety valve to British rule in India - Lala Lajpat Rai
- Congress represents only a microscopic minority in India – Lord Dufferin.
- The members of Congress are selfish babus who represent no one but themselves – Lord Dufferin.
- Congress is tottering to its fall and it is my greatest ambition to assist in its peaceful demise – Lord Curzon.

PARTITION OF BENGAL

- The partition proposals became publicly known in December 1903.
- This was formally announced on July 19, 1905. Motive of partition was totally political.
- Partition of Bengal was effected in 16th October, 1905.
- H.H. Risley, the then Home Secretary wrote— “Bengal united is a power; Bengal divided will pull in several different ways”.

- Initially the state of Bengal comprised Bengal proper, Assam, Bihar and Orissa with capital at Calcutta.
- In 1874 Assam was separated from Bengal and a new state comprising Assam and Sylhet was created.
- In 1905 Bengal (total population-54 million) was partitioned by Lord Curzon and two separate states were created. These were –
- **Bengal** comprising Western part of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa with capital at Calcutta. Its total population was 54 million. Out of this 32 m were Hindus and 9 m were Muslims.
- **East Bengal** and Assam with capital at Dacca comprising the Chittagong, Dacca and Rajshahi divisions, Hill Tippera (Tripura), Malda and Assam. Its total population was 31 million. Out of this 12 m were Hindus and 18 m were Muslims.
- The partition of Bengal was annulled in 1911. This declaration was made at Delhi Durbar attended by King James V. The Western and Eastern Bengals were integrated and three separate states were created. These were
 - o Bengal comprising West and East Bengal.
 - o Assam
 - o Bihar and Orissa.
 - o Bihar was separated from Orissa in 1935 AD.

SWADESHI MOVEMENT

- The Swadeshi Movement was started to oppose the British decision to partition Bengal.
- In a meeting held at Calcutta town hall the nationalists gave a call for Swadeshi Movement against partition on August 7, 1905. The Boycott resolution was passed in this meeting.
- The Congress supported the boycott movement only for Bengal at its Benaras session in Dec. 1905 which was presided by Gopal Krishna Gokhale.
- Moderate methods –public meetings, petitions, memorandums.
- S.N. Banerjee, K.K. Mitra, Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal, Lajpat Rai, Aurobindo Ghosh etc. were important leaders.
- Corps of volunteers or Samitis were another major form of mass mobilization widely used by the Swadeshi Movement.
- The Swadesh Bandhab Samiti set up by Ashwini Kumar Dutta.
- Rabindranath Tagore composed ‘Amar Sonar Bangla’.

- In the sphere of painting, the names of Nanda Lal Bose and Abanindranath Tagore contributed
- In science, J.C. Bose, Prafullachandra Roy and others pioneered original research.
- In 1906 session at Calcutta, Dadabhai Naoroji declared the aim of the Congress “Swaraj like that of U.K. or Colonies”.
- Four compromise resolutions were passed at this session — (a) Swadeshi (b) Boycott (c) National Education and (d) Swarajya (Self-Government).
- Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh led the Swadeshi Movement in canal colonies in Punjab.
- In Delhi the Swadeshi Movement was led by Syed Haider Raja.
- In Andhra Pradesh the Swadeshi Movement was led by Hari Sarvottam Rao.
- Chidambaram Pillai led the Swadeshi Movement in Madras.
- Dadshinaranjan Mitra Majumdar the famous work Thakur mar jholi.
- Muslim leaders like Liaquat Hussain Ghaznavi (businessman) and Abdul Rasul (head of Bengal Provincial Conference at Barisal in 1906) supported Swadeshi Movement in Bengal.

INDIGENOUS ORGANISATIONS IN VARIOUS FIELDS DEVELOPED DUE TO SWADESHI MOVEMENT

- Bengal National College was established.
- Bengal Council of National Education headed by Guru Das Banerjee.
- Pachaiaipa National College was established in Madras.
- Bengal Chemical Factory established by Acharya P.C. Ray.
- To mark the Hindu-Muslim unity Raksha Bandhan was celebrated on the day of Partition.
- Nanda Lal Bose became the first recipient of scholarship offered by Indian Society of Oriental Art. This

society was set up in 1907.

IMPORTANT QUOTES ABOUT SWADESHI MOVEMENT

- Swaraj is my birth right and I shall have it- Tilak
- Swaraj or self-government is essential for the exercise of Swadharma. Without Swaraj there could be no

social reform, no industrial progress, no useful education, no fulfilment of national life - Tilak

- It is not reform but reform, which is the new cry in the country - B.C. Pal

- Swaraj is the fulfilment of the ancient life of India under modern conditions, the return of Satyuga of

national greatness. Political freedom is the life breath of a nation. - Aurobindo Ghose

- A man without soul is a mere animal. A nation without a soul is only a dumb driven cattle.- Lala Lajpat Rai **SURAT SPLIT**

- The Extremists were expelled from the Congress by the Moderates in Dec.1907 at Surat Session.
- The Moderates dominated the session and their main leader was Firoz Shah Mehta.
- Lala Lajpat Rai was the presidential candidate of the Extremists. But later on he withdrew his nomination and Ras Bihari Ghose was elected as the president of the Congress.

GHADAR MOVEMENT

- In 1907 Ramnath Puri, a political exile, issued a **Circular-i-Azadi** (circular of Liberty) in USA pleading for support to the Swadeshi Movement in India.
- Tarak Nath Das, the leader of Indian Community in North America, started a paper named “**Free Hindustan**”.
- Virendranath Chattopadhyaya started ‘Talwar’ from Berlin. He also established Indian Independence Committee in Berlin.
- G.D. Kumar established “Swadesh Sevak Home” in Vancouver on the lines of India House in London. He also published a paper titled “Swadesh Sevak” in Gurumukhi language which advocated social reforms and asked Indian troops to rise in revolt against the British.
- In 1910 Tarak Nath Das and G.D. Kumar set up “United India House” in Seattle (USA).
- United India House developed links with Khalsa Diwan Society and they sent a deputation to London but they failed in their efforts to remove restrictive measures adopted by the Canadian Government on the immigration of the Indian on request of the British Government.
- Lala Har Dayal founded “Hindi Association” in Portland in May 1913. A weekly paper “The Ghadar” was started and set up their HQ called *Yugantar Ashram* in San Francisco.
- On 1st Nov. 1913 1st issue of Ghadar was published in Urdu language. 2nd

issue was published on 9th Dec. in Gurmukhi.

- The Ghadar was published in Urdu, Gurmukhi, Gujarati and Hindi.
- Caption of Ghadar was “**Angrezi Raj ka Dushman**”.
- The front page of each issue entitled a feature titled “**Angrezi Raj Ka Kachcha Chittha**” (An expose of the British Rule). This exposed the ill effects of the British rule in India.
- The Ghadar also published a series of poems called “Ghadar ki Goonj”.
- Copies of the “Ghadar” were distributed in North America, Philippines, Hong Kong, China, Singapore, Thailand and India.
- The Ghadarites adopted nationalist salute “**Bande Matram**” not any Sikh religious greeting such as Sat Sri Akal.
- The Ghadarites attempted to organise armed revolt in India by instigating public and British Indian military.
- February 19, 1915 was fixed as date for first mutiny in Punjab. Ras Bihari Bose was made leader of the Ghadar Movement in India. But the British authorities (CID) came to know of the plan and disbanded the concerned army units.
- The Ghadar movement was crushed by Defence of India Act (March, 1915).
- Important Ghadar Leaders—Lala Har Dayal, Kartar Singh Saraba, Raghubir Dayal Gupta, Ras Bihari Bose, Bhai Parmanand.
- Major causes of the failure - Underestimation of the might of the British Empire, lack of army leadership, lack of organisational structure.

KAMAGATAMARU INCIDENT

- Kamagatamaru incident occurred in 1914.
- Gurdit Singh, an Indian contractor living in Singapore, chartered a Japanese ship named Kamagatamaru to carry Indians living in various places in East and South East Asia. This ship carried total 376 passengers. This ship was not allowed to disembark in Vancouver.
- The ship reached Vancouver on May 23, 1914. But the Canadian authorities refused permission to the ship to land there, although it followed the Canadian rule that such immigrants would be allowed in Canada whose ship came direct from port to port. This rule had been made specifically, to put obstacles against the Indians because in going to Canada their ships used to touch Chinese or Japanese ports.
- To get over this Canadian rule, Gurdit Singh, had directly come with immigrants in a Japanese ship without touching any intermediate port on the

way. But the Canadian authorities did not allow the ship to disembark at Vancouver. The tired and angry passengers had to return from Vancouver. The Indian government also gave them a rough treatment on return to Calcutta on September 27, 1914.

- There were nearly 250 Sikhs who got down from the ship and a clash followed between the police and the passengers leading to the death of 18 persons at Budge Budge, Calcutta. The embittered returnees spread revolutionary feeling among the people in Punjab.
- **“Shore Committee”** was set up under the leadership of Hussain Rahim, Sohan Lal Pathak and Balwant Singh to fight for the rights of the passengers.

HOME RULE MOVEMENT

- The year 1916 is also memorable for the inauguration of the two Home Rule Leagues, one founded by

Lokmanya Tilak in April and other founded by Annie Besant in September 1916.

- The main thrust of the activity was directed toward building up an agitation around the demand for Home Rule. This was to be achieved by promoting political education and discussion. It was decided to establish libraries containing material on national politics, organize classes for students on politics, print and circulate pamphlets, collect funds, organize social work, take part in local government, arrange political meetings and lectures etc.
- To prevent any kind of conflict between the supporters of Tilak and Mrs. Annie Basent, the areas of both Home Rule Leagues were divided. Maharashtra (except Bombay), Central Province, Berar and Karnataka were the areas of Tilak’s League and remaining parts of India including Bombay were given to the League of Mrs. Annie Basent.
- The government of Madras placed Mrs. Besant and her associates B.P. Wadia, C.P. Ramaswamy Ayyar and George Arundale under arrest in June 1917. Their internment became the occasion for nation wide protest.
- Indulal Yagnik, Shankarlal Banker and Jamnadas Dwarkadas started paper

Young India (at Bombay) and set up an All India Propaganda Fund.

- Jawahar Lal Nehru led Home Rule Movement at Allahabad, B. Chakravarty and J. Banerjee at Calcutta and Khaliq-uz-Jama at Lucknow.
- M.A. Jinnah, M.M. Malviya and S.N. Banerjee also participated in Home Rule Movement.
- Gandhiji did not join Home Rule Movement.
- Tilak linked the demand of Swaraj with formation of linguistic states and education through vernaculars.
- Tilak declared: If a God were to tolerate untouchability, I would not recognize him as god at all.
- Two hundred branches of Besant's League were set up.
- A special train, known variously as the **Congress Special** or the **Home rule Special** was started to carry delegates to Lucknow. Later this became a tradition for carrying delegates to Congress sessions.
- Another very significant proposal made by Tilak during Lucknow session (1916) that the Congress should appoint a small and cohesive Working Committee that would carry on the day to day affairs of the congress and for the implementation of resolutions.
- Sir S. Subramanian Ayyar renounced his knighthood.
- At Gandhiji's instance, Shankarlal Banker and Jamnadas Dwarkadas collected signatures of one thousand men willing to defy the internment orders.
- The new Secretary of State, Montague, made a historic declaration in the House of Commons, on August 20, 1917. The importance of Montague's declaration was that after this demand for Home Rule or self-government could no longer be treated as seditious.
- The movement, after its great advance in 1917, gradually dissolved because the moderates who had joined the movement after Besant's arrest were pacified by the promise of reforms and by Besant's release.
- The publication of the scheme of government reforms in July 1918 also divided the nationalist ranks. Annie

Besent herself indulged in a lot of vacillation on this question as well as on the question of passive resistance.

Towards the end of that year, Tilak decided to go to England to pursue the legal case that he had filed against

Valentine Chirol, and thus was away for many critical months. With Annie Besent unable to give a firm lead,

and Tilak away in England, the movement was left leaderless and declined.

- The tremendous achievement of the Home Rule Movement and its legacy was that it created a generation of ardent nationalists who formed the backbone of the national movement in the coming years.

- The Home Rule Leagues also created organizational links between town and country which were to prove invaluable in later years.

- Further, by popularising the idea of Home Rule or Self-Government and making it a common place thing, it generated a widespread pro-nationalist atmosphere in the country.

LUCKNOW PACT

- This pact was signed between Congress and Muslim League at Lucknow in 1916 AD. Muslim League had come under nationalist influence after 1913. League accepted the national goal of Swarajya in 1913 at its Lucknow session. Because of this both Congress and Muslim League were drawing closer to each other.

- Taking another step towards strengthening the ties of comradeship, both the parties held their annual sessions simultaneously at Bombay in 1915. **M.A. Jinnah and Tilak** played important role in bringing both the groups together at Bombay.

- Prominent Congress leaders, namely Mahatma Gandhi, Madan Mohan Malaviya and Sarojini Naidu spoke from the League platform.

- The League appointed a committee to prepare a scheme for India in consultation with the Congress. The report of the committee was the basis of the Lucknow Pact ratified by both the parties in 1916 at Lucknow.

PROVISIONS OF LUCKNOW PACT

- India to be treated as an independent unit of the Empire, as a self-autonomous

state with equal rights and responsibility.

- The strength of Imperial Legislative Council should be 140 members out of which four-fifths were to be elected and one-fifth to be nominated. One third of the elected members were to be Muslims. The elected members of the Imperial Legislative Council were to be elected by elected members of the Provincial Legislative Council.
- Defence, foreign affairs and political relations of India, i.e., making of war, peace and signing of treaty were to be excluded from the control of the Imperial Legislative.
- The Pact laid down that the number of elected members in the Provincial Legislature should be raised to four-fifths of the total strength. The membership of the Legislatures in big Provinces should be raised to 125 and in the smaller ones between 50 and 75. As far as possible all the members of the Legislatures should be elected on the basis of as broad a franchise as possible.
- The minorities should be given adequate separate representation in the elected bodies.
- It was demanded that at least half the members of the Executive Council of the governor-General should be Indians returned by only the elected members of the Central Legislature. The same procedure was to be adopted in the case of Provincial Executive Councils.
- The Provinces should be given a large measure of autonomy in their internal sphere. The Central Government should confine - itself to acts of general supervision over them.
- No Bill could be introduced in the Legislative Council if it affected the interest of any community and such a bill could not be passed if it was opposed by three-fourth members of that community.
- Indian should be placed on a footing of equality in respect of status and right of citizenship with other subjects of his Majesty, the King Emperor throughout the Empire.
- The Secretary of State for India should have the same powers as the Secretary of State for other selfgoverning colonies. He should be assisted by two Under Secretaries, of whom, one should be an Indian.
- Judiciary should be separated from Executive. Members of the Judiciary in every Province should be placed under the control of the Highest Court of that Province.

DRAWBACKS OF THE LUCKNOW PACT

- Since the Congress agreed to the scheme of communal electo-rates for

Muslims, it lost its secular character and paved the way for future communal tension.

- The Pact provided for Muslim representation in the councils far in excess of their proportion in the total population.
- With the introduction of “Communal Veto” in legislation, no Legislature could proceed with any Bill if three-fourth of the members of a particular community opposed it.
- In case there was a dead lock between the Executive and the Legislatures, it could not be removed because the Executive branch of Government was responsible to the Secretary of State for India, operating from England.

LUCKNOW UNITY

- The Lucknow session (1916) of Congress historical significance because the Extremists were allowed reentry into Congress at this session.
- B.G. Tilak and Annie Besant played important role in bringing both the groups together.

MAHATMA GANDHI

SOUTH AFRICAN EXPERIMENTS OF MAHATMA GANDHI

- Reached South Africa in 1893 to work out legal problems of **Dadu Abdullah**, a Gujarati merchant.
- In 1899 Gandhiji organised Indian Ambulance Corps for British Army during boer war. He was given the title

of ***Kaiser-i-Hind*** by the British government for his support during Boer war.

- The issue on which his South African struggle began was the proposed bill of the Natal government to disfranchise Indians.
- The first phase of his struggle was during 1894-1906. During this period Gandhiji relied upon constitutional methods of agitation.
- His second phase of struggle was during 1906-1914. During this period Gandhiji gave the constitutional methods of agitation and adopted Satyagraha as his main weapon.
- He formed Indian Natal organisation / **Natal Indian Congress** in 1893.
- He also started a weekly “**Indian opinion**” in 1903.

- On the issue “Registration certificates have finger prints” Mahatma Gandhi organized **first Satyagraha** and performed first civil disobedience in South Africa.
- Gandhiji formed ‘Passive Resistance Association’ in 1907 to boycott permit offices associated with registration issue.
- Established Phoenix Ashram in Natal in 1904.
- Founded Tolstoy Farm at Transvaal with the help of his German friend Kallenbach to house the families of Satyagrahis.
- Gandhiji satyagraha for the time being on the assurance of Gen. Smuts to repeal the registration law but later Gen. Smuts went back on his words & this created great indignation of the people against him.
- Gandhiji began a spectacular march across Transvaal boarder with a huge band of a Satyagrahis on 6, November 1913 against the Supreme Court judgement of invalidating all marriages not performed according to Christian rites.
- Finally he got a package deal signed according to which marriage performed according to Indian rites were declared legal, poll tax of 3 pounds on freed laboured was abolished and a domicile certificate was now required only to enter the Union of South Africa.
- During his struggle in South Africa Gandhiji received Rs. 25.000 from Sir Ratan Tata. Congress, Muslim League and the Nizam of Hyderabad also sent their contributions.
- The Viceroy Lord Hardinge condemned the repression in South Africa as one that would not be tolerated by any country that calls itself civilized.
- Gokhale hailed Mahatma Gandhi “as made of the stuff of which heroes and martyrs are made”. **ISSUES AGAINST WHICH GANDHI FOUGHT**
 - o Bill to disfranchise Indians in the process of being passed.
 - o Legislation making it compulsory for Indians to take out certificates of registration which held their finger prints.
 - o Restriction on Indian immigration.
 - o Poll tax of 3 pounds imposed on all ex-indentured Indians.

- o Invalidation of all marriages not conducted through Christian rites and registered by Registrar of marriages.
- o Gandhiji returned to India from South Africa on 9th January 1915. On the advice of Ghokhle Gandhiji decided not to enter into active politics in India immediately and decided to take some time for understanding Indian problems. He went on a pan-Indian tour to learn about India.
- o Gopal Krishna Ghokhle was the political guru of Gandhiji.
- o In 1916 Gandhiji established Sabarmati ashram near Ahmadabad.
- o He edited newspaper **Young India** (English language) and **Navjivan** (Gujrati language).

EARLY WORKS OF MAHATMA GANDHI

Champaran Satyagriha– 1917

- Led by Gandhiji in Bihar on the issue of Tin Kathia System under which peasants were obliged to cultivate indigo on 3/20 of their land for European planters at unremunerative prices.
 - The planters later began to demand Shahbarbeshi (rent enhancement) and Tawan (A lump – sump compensation) from the peasants in return for freeing them from the obligation.
 - Raj Kumar Shukla, a local peasant leader persuaded Gandhiji to lead the peasants opposition.
 - Gandhiji organised Satyagraha campaign against the oppression of peasants.
 - Rajendra Prasad, Braj Kishore, Mahadev Desai (later became Gandhiji's secretary, he died in Aga Khan Palace on August 15, 1942 during *Quit India* Movement), Narhari Parikh and J.B. Kriplani were with Gandhiji during Champaran Satyagriha.
 - This led to the abolition of Tin Kathia System, reduction in Shahbarbeshi and giving back to the peasants 25% of the total money extracted illegally.
 - Rabindra Nath Tagore called Gandhiji as **Mahatma** for his role during Champaran Satyagriha for the first time.
- ### **Ahmadabad Satyagraha – 1918**
- Organised by Gandhiji to resolve the conflict between the mill – owners and their workers in Ahmadabad.
 - The conflict was on the issue of plague bonus, the workers were demanding 35% and the owners being agreed to pay only 20%. Gandhi observed hunger –strike for the first time.
 - Ambalal Sarabhai, one of mill owner was close friend of Gandhiji. His sister Anusuya Behn was with Gandhiji

during Ahmadabad mill Satyagriha.

- The Satyagriha resulted in the fulfilment of the demand of the workers that was the plague bonus of 35%. **Kheda Satyagraha – 1918**

- Under the leadership of Gandhi over the issue of non – payment of land revenue on the part of the peasants in the event of repeated famines in Gujarat.

- Ultimately the government passed a secret order directing the officers to realise the revenue only from those who could pay.

- **Mohan Lal Pandya** of Kapadganj taluka was the first leader to give the call for not to pay land revenue in Kheda.

- Gandhiji assumed the command of movement on 22nd March 1918AD. Vallabhabhai Patel and Indu Lal Yagnik were with Gandhiji during Kheda Satyagriha.

- Gujrat Sabha played important role in this movement. Gandhiji was the president of this Sabha.

THE ROWLATT ACT AND JALLIANWALA BAGH MASSACRE

- In 1917 the Government of India appointed a committee under the chairmanship of Justice Sydney Rowlatt to investigate “revolutionary crimes” in the country and to recommend legislation for its suppression.

- After a review of the situation the Rowlatt committee proposed a series of changes in the machinery of law to enable the British government to deal effectively with the revolutionary activities. In the light of these recommendations, the Government of India drafted two bills and presented them to the imperial Legislative Council on 6 February 1910.

- The new bills attempted to make war-time restrictions permanent. They provided trial of offences by a special court consisting of three high court judges. There was no provision of appeal against the decision of this court which could meet in camera and take into consideration evidence not admissible under the Indian Evidence Act. The bill also proposed to give authority to the government to search a place and arrest a person without a warrant. Detention without a trial for maximum period of two years was also provided in the bills.

- The Rowlatt Act was passed by legislative assembly on 17 March 1919 AD. The real name of Rowlatt Act was “**Anarchical and Revolutionary crimes**”

Act”.

- There was widespread condemnation of the bills in the whole country. Gandhiji also launched his campaign against the bills. He formed a **Satyagraha Sabha** in February 1919 in Bombay to protest against the Rowlatt Bills.
- M.A. Jinnah resigned from the council in protest.
- A group of liberals like Sir D.E. Wacha, Surendranath Banerjee, T.B. Saprú and Srinivas Shastri opposed Gandhi's move of starting Satyagraha. Their reason for opposing the Satyagraha was that it would hamper the process of reforms.
- Annie Besant also condemned the Satyagraha on the grounds that there was nothing in the Act to resist civility, and that to break laws at the dictate of others was exceedingly dangerous.
- In organising this Satyagraha, Gandhi was assisted by certain Pan-Islamic Leaders, particularly Abdul Bari of Firangi Mahal Ulema group at Lucknow and some radical members of the Muslim League.
- Gandhi inaugurated his Satyagraha by calling upon the countrymen to observe a day of Hartal when business should be suspended and people should observe fast and pray as a protest against the Rowlatt Act. The date for the hartal was fixed for 30th March but it was changed to 6th April later.
- Gandhiji was arrested on 9th April 1919 AD. In Amritsar, the news of Gandhi's arrest coincided with the arrest of two local leaders Dr. Kitchlew and Dr. Satyapal on 10th April 1919 AD.
- On **13th April 1919**, General Dyer ordered his troops to fire on a peaceful unarmed crowd assembled at Jallianwala Bagh. It was the day of Baisakhi festival.
- The martial law was immediately enforced in Punjab also on the 13 April (night).
- Gandhiji called off the Rowlatt Satyagraha amidst the violence of the Jallianwala Bagh massacre. He termed Rowlatt Satyagraha as his “Himalayan blunder”
- Under immense public pressure government appointed **Hunter Committee** to investigate Punjab atrocities. Its members were Lord Hunter, Justice Reskin, Mr Rice, Sir Thomas Smith, Sir George Burro, Sir Chimanlal Sitalvad, Shah Bajaji, Sultan Ahmad and Jagat Narayan.
- In its report the Hunter Committee put forward the view that firing was necessary under the circumstances to control the situation but Gen. Dyer used more force than required.
- Rabindranath Tagore renounced Knighthood after Jallianwala Bagh Massacre.

- To enquire into the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre Congress appointed a committee under the chairmanship of **Madan Mohan Malviya**. Its other members were Motilal Nehru, Mahatma Gandhi, C.R. Das, Abbas Tyabji and M.R. Jayakar.
- **“Danda Force”** (Stick Force) was organised in Punjab under the leadership of Chamandeep to awaken masses to rise and fight against British.

KHILAFAT MOVEMENT AND NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT

- Khilafat Movement was organised against the planned dismemberment of Turkey by the victor powers of First World War. The treaty of Sevres was imposed upon the Turkey after the end of the war. This treaty threatened dismemberment of Ottoman Empire whose head was the Caliph. This undermined the position of the Caliph and aroused Muslim sentiments.
- 17th October 1919 was celebrated as Khilafat Day in India.
- It gave rise to protest movements against British and its allies. It led to formation of **“All India Khilafat Committee”** in September 1919 by Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan, Md. Ali, Shaukat Ali and Hashrat Mohani.
- Gandhiji was also attracted by the Khilafat Movement. He considered this as an important opportunity to forge permanent Hindu-Muslim unity. According to him Lucknow Pact was far from being a real base for this. The Khilafat demand appeared to be just to him.
- Gandhi was elected as the President of Khilafat Committee on 24 Nov. 1919 at Delhi.
- A joint Hindu–Muslim Delegation met Viceroy and British PM Lyod George to ask for changes in the humiliating terms of the Treaty of Sevres. But British PM refused to give a preferential treatment to Turkey.
- In Feb. 1920 Gandhi advised the Khilafat Committee to launch a Non-cooperation Movement on Khilafat issue to pressurise the British.
- The Khilafat Committee at Allahabad on 9th June 1920 unanimously accepted the suggestion of non – cooperation and asked Gandhiji to lead the movement. Thus Gandhi decided to launch a Non-cooperation Movement from the platform of Khilafat on Khilafat issue.
- The Movement was launched formally on 1st August 1920 after the expiry of the notice that Gandhiji had given to the Viceroy in his latter of 22nd June.
- Gandhiji believed that Congress support was imperative for the success Non-cooperation Movement. Gandhi finally succeeded in persuading the congress

leaders. A special session of Congress was convened at Calcutta under the presidentship of Lala Lajpat Rai in September 1920.

- On 4th September 1920 Congress agreed to launch Non-cooperation Movement over three issues i.e. (a) Punjab Wrongs (b) Swarajya (c) Khilafat Issue
- Jinnah left Congress over the acceptance of goal of Swarajya and Non-cooperation Movement.
- Objections raised in passing of the programme of Non-Cooperation at special Calcutta session in Sept. 1920.
- Boycott of legislative council by C.R. Das & followers of Tilak.
- Boycott of schools by Lala Lajpat Rai.
- Goal of Swarajya by M.A. Jinnah and Madan Mohan Malviya.

PROGRAMMES OF NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT

- Surrender of titles.
- Boycott of foreign goods.
- Boycott of government schools, colleges, law courts and legislatures.
- Refusal to vote.
- Hindu-Muslim unity.
- Resignation from the councils.
- Nationalisation of education.
- Raising a National Fund. Tilak Swaraj Fund amounting Rs. 1 Crore was created.
- Organisation of workers for national service.
- Resignation from government service
- Mass civil disobedience and Non-payment of taxes was be resorted to later on

AFFECTED AREAS

- Punjab
- Bengal
- Bombay
- U.P.
- Bihar
- Orissa
- Assam

OTHER DEVELOPEMNTS

- Gandhiji renounced the title of Kaiser-i-hind given to him for his performance during Boer war.

- The Non-Cooperation resolution was ratified by the Congress at its annual session held at Nagpur in Dec.

1920 AD.

- C.R. Das moved the main resolution on Non-Cooperation at Nagpur.
- Leaders like M.A. Jinnah, G.S. Kharpade, Bipin Chandra Pal and Annie Basent left Congress because they did

not like the aggressive programme of Non-Cooperation.

- At Nagpur session the goal of the Congress was changed from the attainment of self Government with in British Empire by constitutional and legal means to the attainment of Swaraj by peaceful and legitimate means.

- A Working Committee of Congress to look after its day to day affairs was also established at Nagpur session.

Tilak was the first person to propose that the Congress should have a Working Committee to look after its day to day affairs in 1916.

- At Nagpur session decision was taken to organise provincial congress committees on linguistic basis. Formation of ward and mohalla committees was to be carried out. Membership fee of Congress was reduced to four annas to attract the masses.

- Gandhiji declared at Nagpur session that Swaraj could be achieved within one year.

- Subhash Chandra Bose resigned from the ICS and became the principal of the National College established at Calcutta during non – cooperation movement.

- In July 1921 Muhammad Ali declared that it was religiously unlawful for the Muslims to continue in the British Army.

- Prince of Wales visited India in Nov. 1921 but he was boycotted everywhere.

- Civil Disobedience Movements were organized at various places during non – cooperation movement. These included –

- Midnapur district in Bengal – Against Union Board Taxes

- Chiarla-Pirala and Pedanandipadu Taluqa in Guntur District of Andhra Pradesh – No tax movements
- Dugirala Gopalkrishnaayya led the agitation at Chiarla-Pirala in Guntur District of Andhra Pradesh.
- J.M. Sengupta, the Bengali nationalist leader played important role in organising movement in Assam and Bengal.
- In Punjab the Akali Movement was organised to wrest the Gurudwaras from the corrupt Mahants.
- Jamia Milia Islamia, Bihar Vidhyapith, Kashi Vidhyapith and Gujrat Vidhyapith came into existence.
- Capitalist Umar Shabnam of Elphinstone mill also joined the movement.
- In Dec. 1921 at Ahmadabad Session the Congress appointed Mahatma Gandhi as the sole authority to decide on the issue starting Civil Disobedience.
- On 1st February Gandhiji announced that mass civil disobedience would begin in Bardoli Taluqa of Surat district.
- On 5th February 1920 a mob attacked a police station at Chauri-Chaura in Gorakhpur district of U.P. Total 22 policemen were killed in this incident.
- This violent incident forced Gandhiji to call off the movement and by the **Bardoli resolution** passed on 12th Feb. 1922 Non – Cooperation Movement came to an end. The Bardoli resolution announced the withdrawal of Non – Cooperation Movement and asked peasants to pay taxes and tenants to pay rents.
- Gandhiji was arrested on 10th March. **Justice Broomfield** sentenced him for six years imprisonment for instigating discontentment against the government.

MISCELLANEOUS POINTS

- Gandhiji, announced attainment of Swarajya within one year.
- Tilak Swaraj Fund was founded to raise fund of Rs. 1 crore.
- Bardoli was selected as the place to launch Civil Disobedience.
- The call to suspend the movement was given from Bardoli.
- The programme to start Individual or Mass Civil Disobedience was approved by the Congress Session of

Ahmadabad.

SWARAJ PARTY

- In June 1922 Congress had appointed “**Civil Disobedience Enquiry Committee**” under the chairmanship of **Hakim Ajmal Khan** to recommend for future strategy to be adopted after the withdrawal of Non – Cooperation Movement. Motilal Nehru, Dr. M.A. Ansari, C. Rajagopalachari, Vitthalbhai Patel and Kasturi Ranga were the members.
- The annual session of the Congress was held at Gaya in December 1922. It became a battle ground between the supporters of the Council-entry and no Council-entry.
- C. Rajagopalachari, Vitthalbhai Patel and Dr. Rajendra Prasad supported Gandhiji in boycott of elections. They were called **No Changers**.
- Moti Lal Nehru and C.R. Das decided to go ahead with their programme. On 1 Jan. 1923, they announced the formation of a party, known as the Swaraj Party and the decision to wrench the constitution of 1919 from within the Councils was taken. The Swaraj Party or Congress Khilafat Swaraj Party was established in March 1923 at Allahabad.
- Similar policy was adopted by S.N. Banerjee in 1918 to participate in the elections. He established **National Liberation Federation** and participated in elections in 1920-21.
- The immediate objective was proclaimed to be the attainment of Dominion Status. Their method was that of obstructionism—to contest the election on the issue of the redress of the wrongs done by the British bureaucracy, to move resolutions necessary for the healthy growth of the national life and to oppose every measure of the Government, including the budget by which the British proposed to consolidate their power.
- The members of the Swaraj Party fought the election of 1923 and had to face the Liberals. The Swarajists achieved success and became a majority in Central Provinces (C.P.), a dominant party in Bengal and influential in U.P. and Bombay. In the Central Legislative Assembly, they won 42 out of 101 seats.
- A noteworthy achievement of Swarajists was the defeat of the **Public Safety Bill in 1928** which was aimed at empowering the Government to deport undesirable and subversive foreigners. The Government was alarmed by the spread of socialist and communist ideas and believed that a crucial role was being played by the British and other foreign activists being sent by the

Commintern.

- In a special session of the Congress held at Delhi in September 1923 the Congress suspended all propaganda against council entry and permitted Congressmen to stand as candidates and exercise their franchise in forthcoming elections.
- In December 1923 at its annual session held at Kakinada Congress allowed its members to vote and participate in the elections.
- On 18 February 1924, the Swarajists carried by majority a resolution relating to the Act of 1919. It provided that the governor-General-in-Council should take steps to have the Act of 1919 revised with a view to establishing full responsible Government in India.
- The Government appointed a committee known as **Muddiman Committee** for this purpose. The Committee comprised of Sir Alexander Muddiman (Home Member and Chairman), Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru, Md. Ali Jinnah, Sir Sivaswami Aiyar and Dr. Paranjpye.
- **Lord Birkenhead** became the new Secretary of State for India. He described the Swaraj Party as the most highly organised political party in India and the work it was doing was even more difficult to deal with than open rebellion.
- S.B. Tambe, the Swarajist President of the Legislative Council, accepted Executive Councillorship. The Central Legislative Assembly was granted the right of electing its own chairman. **Vitthalbhai Patel** was elected for the post in 1925 and he accepted it.
- In the very first session of Central Legislative Assembly Moti Lal Nehru put forward the demand that new constitution should be framed for India.
- M.L. Nehru now accepted membership of the **Skeen Committee** (1925) which was set up to report on the early Indianisation of the Army. Lajpat Raj joined the Central Legislative Assembly as a Swarajist and accepted the deputy-leadership of the Party.
- In 14 February 1926, Kelkar and Jayakar formed the **Responsivist Party** and proclaimed responsive cooperation as their creed to safeguard Hindu interests. They came closer to Pandit Malaviya and Lajpat Rai and in early April formed a new party known as the **Nationalist Party**.
- Later on Pandit Malaviya and Lajpat Rai established **Independent Congress Party** which was guided by liberal politics and emphasis upon Hinduism.
- During this period many Indian leaders became Mayor and Presidents of municipalities.
- C.R. Das

- Vallabhbhai Patel
- Rajendra Prasad
- J.L. Nehru

Mayor of Calcutta, Subash Chandra Bose became his CEO. President of Ahmadabad Municipality
President of Patna Municipality
President of Allahabad Municipality

- The no-changers took to constructive works by establishing Ashrams and National schools. Chaman Lal Mehta, Chiman Lal Bhatt and Jugatram Dave set up Vedchi Ashram and worked for the upliftment of Kaliparaj people. Ravi Shankar Maharaj worked among the lower castes Baraiyas of Kheda.

SIMON COMMISSION

- The Act of 1919 (section 84) contained provision for the appointment of a Royal Commission at the end of the ten years after the passing of the Act with the aim of enquiring into the functioning of the system of Government established by this act.
- Lord Birkenhead, Secretary of State for India announced the appointment of a Statutory Commission under the chairmanship of Sir John Simon in November, 1927.
- The aim of the Commission was to inquire into the working of provincial governments, to examine how far the representative institutions were functioning satisfactorily and to draft the outlines for the future progress in establishing responsible government.
- All the seven members of the Commission were Englishmen who were members of British Parliament.
- The announcement of the all-white commission shocked almost all Indians. At the Madras Congress of 1927, the Congress decided to boycott the Simon Commission.
- Simon Commission was greeted with strong protest by all parties, i.e., the Congress, a section of the Muslim League, Hindu Mahasabha, Liberal Federation, etc.
- The Muslim League led by **Muhammad Shafi**, Justice Party in Madras, Central Sikh Sangh and All India Achyut Federation did not oppose the Commission.

- The Simon Commission reached Bombay on 3rd February, 1928 and was greeted with slogan of Go back, Simon.
- A procession led by Lala Lajpat Rai in Lahore was lathi charged on 30th October 1928 and Lalaji succumbed to his injuries on 17th November 1928. A revolutionary group led by Bhagat Singh avenged Lala Lajpat Rai's death by killing Assistant Police Superintendent Saunders on 17th December 1928. J.L. Nehru and G.B. Pant were lathi charged in Lucknow.
- The Commission paid two visits to India (February-March 1928, October 1928-April 1929). Each time it faced boycott. It made extensive tours and prepared a report which was published in May, 1930.
- At the 1927 Madras Congress Session a resolution boycotting the Simon Commission was passed. The Working Committee was authorised to prepare a constitution for India in consultation with other organisation.
- Congress representative as well as representatives of other organisations such as Muslim League, Hindu Mahasabha, etc. met at a conference in February, 1928 at Delhi. This came to be known as the All Parties Conference. This Conference was presided over by Dr. M.A. Ansari.
- Although the 1927 Madras Congress Session had adopted the goal of complete national independence but at the All Parties Conference full Dominion self-government was declared to be the desired aim.
- In May 1928 a committee was appointed by the All Parties Conference with Motilal Nehru as President. The Nehru Committee appointed by nationalist was their response to the appointment of Simon Commission and the challenge given by Lord Birkenhead to Indians asking them to frame a Constitution on which the Indian opinion was united.
- The other members of the Committee were Sir Ali Imam, M.R. Jayakar, Tej Bahadur Sapru, N.M. Joshi, M.S. Sardar, Mangal Singh, G.R. Pradhan, Kuraishi and Subhash Chandra Bose.

RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE SIMON COMMISSION

- Dyarchy should be abolished and there should be complete autonomy in the provinces including the department of law and order, but the Governor should be given overriding powers in certain matters like internal security.
- There should be Federal Government at the Centre, consisting of British India and the Princely States.
- British troops and British officers should stay on in Indian regiments.
- Provincial Legislative Councils should be expanded

- The Governor-General should be free to select and appoint members of his Cabinet.
- High Courts should be under the administrative control of the Government of India.
- The Communal representative should continue.

NEHRU REPORT

- The Nehru Committee submitted its report on 28 August 1928. The Nehru report was approved by the All

Parties Conference held at Lucknow.

- It recommended that the future constitution of India should be based on “Full responsible Government on the model of the constitution of the self-governing Dominions”, and the conceding of the Dominion Status should be “the next immediate step” and not “a remote stage of our evolution”.
- The House of People was to be consisted of 500 members chosen on the basis of adult franchise.
- The Upper House was to be consisting of 200 members chosen by the Provincial Councils.
- The North-West Frontier Province (with its Muslim majority of over 90 percent) should acquire the same status as other Provinces and Sind (with its Muslim majority of over 70 percent) should be detached from Bombay and become a separate Province.
- The Committee made no concession to the Muslim stand point on the question of separate electorates. All elections were made by joint or mixed electorates.
- The only communal safeguard should be “reservation” of seats, and this should only be afforded to the Muslims and not to any other community or group except the non-Muslims in the North-West Frontier Province. Nor should seats be reserved for Muslims where they were in a majority, but only at the Centre and in the Provinces in which they were in a minority.
- The constitution of Indian should be federal in character and the Indian States should be welcome to join it.

- There should be inserted in the constitution a “Declaration of Rights”. assuring inter alia, the fullest liberty of conscience and religion.
- The new Indian Legislature should be empowered to legislate and budget for the Indian army, and that its control should be transferred to a responsible Indian Minister of Defence.
- The legislative power of the Commonwealth should be vested in a bicameral legislature and the executive power in the King “exercisable by the Governor-General as the King’s representative, acting on the advice of the Executive Council.”

REACTIONS AGAINST NEHRU REPORT

- Within the Congress, leaders like Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose were dissatisfied with the Nehru report because it demanded mere dominion status not complete independence.
- To press their demands Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose formed **Indian Independence League** in 1928.
- The Muslim League opposed the Nehru report. Their demands were elaborated by Jinnah in the form of an amendment at the representative convention of Calcutta (22 Dec.1928) which reviewed the Nehru Report adopted by all parties conference.

JINNAH’S “FOURTEEN POINTS”

- On 28 March 1929 the Muslim League held its meeting at Delhi and repudiated the Nehru Report. M.A. Jinnah gave an elaboration of the minimum demands of the Muslim League in the form of “fourteen points”. These points were
- The form of the future constitution of India should be federal with residuary powers vested in the provinces.
- A uniform measure of autonomy should be granted to all Provinces.
- All Legislatures and other elected bodies should be constituted on the definite principle of adequate and effective representation of minorities in every Province without reducing the majority in any Province to a minority or even equality.
- In the Central Legislature, Muslim representation should not be less than one-

third.

- Representation of communal groups should continue to be by separate electorates as at present and it should be open to any community at any time to abandon its separate electorate in favour of joint electorate.
- Any territorial redistribution should not in any way, affect the Muslim majority in Punjab, Bengal and the NWFP.
- Full liberty of belief, worship and observance, propaganda, association and education should be guaranteed to all communities.
- No bill or resolution of any party should be passed in any Legislature or any other elected body if three fourths of the members of any community in that body opposed it as being injurious to the interests of that community.
- Sind should be separated from the Bombay Presidency.
- Reforms should be introduced in the N.W.F.P. and Baluchistan on the same footing as in other Provinces.
- Adequate share for Muslims should be provided in the constitution in all services of the State subject to the requirement of efficiency.
- Adequate safeguards for the protection and promotion of Muslim Culture, education, Language, religion, personal laws and charitable institutions and for their due share in the grants-in-aid given by the State should be provided in the constitution.
- No Cabinet, either Central or Provincial, should be formed without at least one-third of the ministers being Muslims.
- No change should be made in the constitution by the Central Legislature except with the concurrence of the States constituting the Indian Federation.

DELHI MANIFESTO AND POORNA SWARAJ

- In May 1929, Ramsay MacDonald came to power. Lord Irwin (Viceroy) called for consultations and promised a

Round Table Conference for attainment of Dominion status.

- Two days later, a conference of major national leaders met and issued what came to be called as Delhi

Manifesto in which they demanded that the purpose of Round Table Conference should not be to discuss

when Dominion Status was to be granted but to formulate a scheme for its implementation.

- This was rejected by the Viceroy. Stage of negotiation was thus over and the

stage of confrontation began.

Hence at the Congress session at Lahore “Poorna Swaraj” was adopted as the goal of the freedom struggle.

CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- Although immediate provocation for the launch of Salt Satyagraha was Simon Commission. The phase of 1930-34 in the freedom movement, timing of salt Satyagraha and Civil Disobedience Movement (CDM) should be viewed at the backdrop of latent Indian grievances and unfulfilled expectations.
- The rejection of Nehru report, the economic depression of 1930's affected Indian industry, commerce and labour; cotton prices crashed in world market affecting Indian cotton exports; Rationalisation in textile mills resulting in shunting of labours; Large scale labour strikes in Bombay, Calcutta, Jamshedpur during 1928-29 and Arrest of labour leaders and trial of Meerut conspiracy case in 1929 etc forced Congress to launch Civil Disobedience Movement.
- Although the resolution affirming complete independence as the goal by the Congress was moved by Gandhi himself, and passed in 1929, the Mahatma put forward before the Viceroy Lord Irwin, on 30 January 1930, his 11 demands. These demands were
 - Total prohibition
 - Lowering of the rupee-sterling ratio to 1s 4d. The rupee should be valued at 16 pence.
 - At least 50% reduction in land revenue.
 - Abolition of Salt Tax.
 - Reduction of military expenditure to at least 50% to begin with.
 - Reduction of Government expenditure and salaries of Govt. officials.
 - Protection for Indian textiles industry. Protective tariff should be imposed on the foreign cloths.
 - Indian ships to discharge the duty of coastal transport.
 - Release of all political prisoners and elimination of section 124A from the Indian Penal Code.
 - Doing away with the services of the C.I.D.
 - Freedom to keep firearms.
- On March 2, 1930 Gandhiji wrote a letter to the Viceroy wherein he declared the British rule to be a curse which had to be combated by Civil Disobedience. The Viceroy refused to accept the demands put forward by Gandhi and regretted

the contemplated recourse to Satyagriha because there would be violation of law.

- Rejection of these demands by the government & beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement with Dandi March on 12, March 1930 from Sabarmati to Dandi to break the salt-law by Gandhi with his 78 followers. Gandhiji prepared salt out of sea water on April 6 and a nation-wide movement commenced.
- After the arrest of Gandhi the leadership was assumed by Abbas Tyabji & then by Sarojini Naidu.
- N.C. Kelkar, Satyamurti & M.A. Ansari were among those who refused to resign from legislature after the call of the Congress to do so. They are known as **New Swarajists**.
- Council-entry programme was voiced by Satyamurti in October 1933 followed by Bhulabhai Desai, B.C. Roy and M.A. Ansari in April 1934.

PROGRAMMES OF CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- To violate salt law
- Boycott schools and colleges.
- boycott foreign clothes
- resignation from Government services
- Non-payment of taxes
- Staging Dharna at liquor shops.

PROGRAMMES INTRODUCED IN MAY 1930

- Non-payment of revenue in Ryotwari area
- Non-payment of Chaukidari tax in Zamindari area.
- Violation of forest laws in central provinces.

VARIOUS MARCHES

- March from Tiruchirapalli to Vadamniyam led by C. Rajagopalachari in Tamilnadu
- March from Calicut to Payannur led by - K. Kelappan in Malabar
- March from Sylhet to Noakhali by band of Satyagrahis.

ASSOCIATED STRUGGLES

- Red Shirt Movement by Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan in North West Frontier Province.
- Sholapur uprisings in Maharashtra leading to textile mills strike
- No tax campaign against Chowkidari tax in Eastern India
- Student's agitation against Cunningham Circular in Assam which forced students and their guardians to

furnish assurances of good behaviour.

- In Bengal, the onset of monsoon made it difficult to make salt, so it brought about a shift to anti Chowkidari and anti-Union Board tax agitation.
- In Gujarat a determined no tax movement was in progress. The peasants refused to pay the land revenue.
- Defiance of salt law assumed a mass character in Maharashtra, Karnataka and the Central Provinces.
- Revolt of Rani Gaidinliu in Nagaland.

RESTARTING OF CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

- On December 28, 1931, Gandhiji reached Bombay on his way back from the London after attaining Round Table Conference. In a letter to Viceroy, Lord Willington he protested against the reign of oppression in NWFP, Bengal and Uttar Pradesh. In a letter to him on December 31, the private secretary to the Viceroy justified the measures. In the context of the veiled threat of the resumption of Civil Disobedience, the Viceroy refused to meet Gandhiji.
- In the United Provisions, leaders who were persuading the peasants for non-payment of taxes were arrested while on way to meeting Gandhiji at Bombay on his return from London. Even Gandhiji himself was not spared and on January 4, 1932 he and Vallabhabhai Patel were arrested. Soon oppression was let loose on the political prisoners lodged in different parts of the country. The Government took the offensive in 1932.
- Gandhiji gave a call to restart the Civil Disobedience Movement in January 1932. But the Movement failed pick up momentum.
- The response of Government was very hard and Government imposed half a dozen ordinances and restrictions on the Press. Further Congress was declared illegal organisation & it was followed by Large-scale arrest of Congressmen. Police and military resorted to firing, lathi charges and beating of Satyagrahis. In all 75000 Satyagrahis were put in jails.

- Suspension of Civil Disobedience Movement— July 1933.
- Withdrawal of Civil Disobedience Movement at Patna— May, 1934.

GANDHI-IRWIN PACT

- The British authorities were keen to secure the cooperation of Gandhi and other Congress leaders because they realized that no scheme of constitutional reforms would succeed unless the Congress Party agreed to it.
- Mediations were taking place between Irwin and Gandhi, and as a result Gandhiji and the members of Congress Working Committee were released on 25 January 1931.
- From February 17, negotiations began between the Viceroy and the Congress and on March 5, 1931, the Gandhi Irwin Pact was finally compiled.
- On behalf of the Congress Party, Gandhi agreed to discontinue the Civil Disobedience movement, to stop the Boycott of British commodities and to take part in the Second Round Table Conference for drafting a constitution on the basis of Federation, Responsibility and Safeguards or reservations in the interest of India for such matters as defence, external affairs, minorities, and the financial credit of India.
- On the behalf of the Government, Lord Irwin agreed to withdraw ordinances promulgated in connection with the Civil Disobedience Movement, to release prisoners who were imprisoned in connection with that movement, to return property which was seized during it, to permit people living within a certain distance of the sea shore to collect or manufacture salt free of duty, and to permit peaceful picketing of liquor and of opium shops.
- From 26 to 29 March, the annual session of the Congress was held at Karachi and the Pact was endorsed. The Congress authorized Gandhi to represent it at the second RTC and reiterated Purana Swaraj as its goal.

PROVISIONS OF GANDHI-IRVIN PACT

- All political prisoners were to be released who were not convicted for violence.
- The ordinances were to be withdrawn.
- Confiscated and forfeited property which were not yet sold, were to be restored to the owners.
- Right to make salt for consumption to the people living along the sea coast was granted.
- Lenient treatment to government employees who had resigned.
- The demand of public enquiry into police excesses was not accepted.

KARACHI SESSION OF CONGRESS

- From 26 to 29 March, the annual session of the Congress was held at Karachi. The Karachi session was presided by Sardar Patel. The congress adopted a resolution on Fundamental Rights and Economic Policy which represented the Party's Social, Economic and Political programme. It was later known as Karachi Resolution.

- Nehru had originally drafted it, but some Congress leaders thought it was too radical and it was redrafted by Gandhiji. We have been told that MN Roy also played a role in drafting this resolution, but Nehru himself later said that MN Roy had nothing to do with it. In any case, the redrafted resolution made the Karachi Session memorable, because for the first time, the resolution tried to define what would be the meaning of Swaraj for common people.

- Some important aspects of these resolutions were:
- Basic civil rights of freedom of speech, Freedom of Press, Freedom of assembly, Freedom of association, Equality before law
- Elections on the basis of Universal Adult Franchise
- Free and compulsory primary education.
- Substantial reduction in rent and taxes
- Better conditions for workers including a living wage, limited hours of work.
- Protection of women and peasants
- Government ownership or control of key industries, mines, and transport.
- Protection of Minorities.
- Thus, the Congress which was agenda less a few years back had the most impressive agenda in hand now and made this agenda- the basis of its political programme for the next many years to come.

ROUND TABLE CONFERENCES

FIRST ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE

- Since 1921, the Congress leaders and the Swaraj party were unsuccessfully demanding the holding of a Round Table Conference to settle India's political and constitutional problems. When the fervour of nationalism rose high, the Government agreed to hold the Round Table Conference.

- The First Round Table Conference met from **12 November 1930 to 19 January 1931** but it could not achieve any solid success because the Congress was not represented in it.

- Maulana Muhammad Ali and Jinnah had attended it.
- Total 89 Delegates participated in it. Among them 13 were British.
- British king George V inaugurated it and British PM presided over it.
- Princely States - 16 Member
- **Hindu Mahasabha** M.R. Jayakar, M.S. Moonje
- **Liberals** T.B. Saprú, C.Y. Chintamani, Srinivas Shastri, Homi Modi.
- **Muslim League** Aga Khan, Md. Shafi, Fazl-ul-Haq, Md. Ali Jinnah.
- **Sikhs** Sardar Sampurna Singh
- **Depressed Classes** – B.R. Ambedkar
- **Christians** - K.T. Paul
- **Princes** Akbar Hydari (Diwan of Hyderabad), Mirza Ismail (Diwan of Mysore)
- Congress did not attend it.

SECOND ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE

- The second Round Table Conference met from **7th September 1931** to **1st December 1931**.
- Gandhiji attended the Second Round Table conference along with Madan Mohan Malaviya, Sarojini Naidu and B.R. Ambedkar, but no agreed solution could be reached on the communal and national problems.
- Gandhiji was in favour of unicameral legislature. He pleaded that Fundamental Rights should be guaranteed in the Constitution and there should be Judicial Remedies for their enforcement. He also demanded full control over the army and foreign affairs.
- The committees and subcommittees of the round table conference-the franchise committee, the states enquiry committee, the federal structure sub-committee, the minorities sub-committee etc. were concerned with details of constitutional problems. But Gandhiji was all the time insistent on getting the substance of Swaraj. Once this fundamental goal was realized the details could be settled subsequently.
- Ramsay Macdonald, the British Prime Minister wanted that all members should agree to accept this verdict on the question of minorities. But Gandhi was of the firm view that the grant of independence alone would serve to melt the iceberg of communalism.
- The declaration of Macdonald at the plenary session of the conference was immensely dissatisfying because it contained no reference to the grant of Dominion Status to India. There was no assurance for the establishment of responsible government in the Provinces and at the Centre. The question of responsible government at the Centre was so linked with the establishment of the

federal pattern at the Centre that without the consent of the native States no progress could be achieved in realization of the cherished goal of responsible government. Moreover, there was no assurance regarding Fundamental Rights.

- The proposed constitutional reforms as outlined by the British Prime Minister in December 1931 totally reserved defence and military affairs for control by the British Parliament and the Viceroy.

- Gandhiji could not agree to such proposals specially in the context of the independence resolution of 1929. He was concerned with the basic question of freedom and was disinclined to discuss the details of monetary and financial schemes.

- A British citizen named **Frank Mores** wrote that the scene of Gandhiji stepping the stairs of Saint Paul palace was amazing.

- Total **112** delegates participated in it.

- Madan Mohan Malviya and Annie Besant participated in it on their own cost.

- **Capitalist** G.D. Birla

- **Muslim** – M. Iqbal

- **Depressed** – B.R. Ambedkar

- **Liberals** T.B. Saprú

THIRD ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE

- The Third Round Table Conference was held from **November, 17** to **December 24, 1932.**

- It couldn't make any progress towards Swaraj. However the deliberations at the Third Round Table Conference formed the basis on which the draft of the Government of India Act of 1935 was prepared.

- Total **46 delegates** participated in it.

- T.B. Saprú and Ambedkar participated in it.

COMMUNAL AWARD

- On 17th August, 1932, Ramsay MacDonald announced the "Communal Award".

- The award was confined to the seats to be allotted to the various communities in the Provincial Legislatures. For the purpose of representation in Provincial Legislatures (Lower House only) the Indians were divided into watertight compartments.

- Separate electorates were introduced for Muslims, Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo-Indians and women. Labour, Commerce, Industry, Landlords and

universities were given separate constituencies and fixed seats.

- In the name of securing adequate representation of “depressed classes” in Legislature, members of those classes were treated as a minority community. While they were entitled to stand for election from the general constituencies earmarked for the Hindus, they were allotted some seats which were to be filled up only by them voting separately.
- Seats were also allotted to Indian Christians and Anglo-Indians and these were to be filled up by voters voting in separate communal electorates.
- Separation of Sind from Bombay was accepted in Principle.
- MacDonald tried to show that the Award was announced because the Indian communities were unable to reach a settlement acceptable to all parties on communal questions. But in reality, the Award was the continuation of the old English policy of “divide and rule”.
- The award was unfair to the Hindus; it conceded to Muslims almost all their demands and was extremely generous to the Europeans. The award gave separate representation to the depressed classes, which aimed at the disruption of the Hindu community, whose part and parcel they had always been. The award was an attempt to perpetuate divisions based on castes and creeds in India. The retention and extension of the separate electorates prevented the growth of a single nationality.
- The Congress was opposed to a separate electorate for Muslims, Sikhs and Christians as it encouraged the communal notion that they formed separate groups or communities having interests different from the general body of Indians. The inevitable result was to divide the Indian people and prevent the growth of a common national consciousness. But the idea of a Separate electorate for Muslims had been accepted by the Congress as far back as 1916 as a part of the compromise with the Muslims League. Hence, the Congress took the position that though it was opposed to separate electorates, it was not in favour of changing the award without the consent of the minorities. Consequently, though strongly disagreeing with the communal award, it decided neither to accept it nor to reject it.

POONA PACT

- The effort to separate the Depressed Classes from the rest of Hindus by treating them as separate political entities was vehemently opposed by all the nationals.
- Gandhiji, in Yeravada jail at the time, reacted very strongly. He saw the award

as an attack on Indian unity and nationalism, harmful to both Hinduism and the Depressed Classes. Gandhi opposed the communal award and considered it as an attack on Indian unity. For it provided no answers to the socially degraded position of the latter. Once the depressed classes were treated as a separate community, the question of abolishing untouchability would not arise, and the work of Hindu social reform in this respect would come to a halt.

- He went on fast unto death on **20 September, 1932** to enforce the demand.
- Political leaders of different persuasions including Madan Mohan Malviya, M.C. Rajah and B.R. Ambedkar now became active.
- On the initiative of **Malaviya**, various Hindu leaders met in Poona and on 25 September, they concluded an agreement known as the “Poona Pact”.
- It provided that the depressed classes would forgo their separate electorates and content themselves solely with the general Hindu electorates. The “Caste Hindus”, however, were to concede to the ‘depressed classes, certain “safeguards”. The latter were to have 148 seats out of those assigned by the Communal Award to the general constituencies in the various legislatures. The members of the depressed class, who were registered in the general electoral roll in a constituency, were to form an electoral college which was to elect a panel of four candidates for each of such reserved seats. The general electorate, in its subsequent choice, was to choose one of these four. This agreement could be altered by common consent.
- The British authorities accepted this agreement. It gave to the depressed classes **148 seats** while MacDonald’s Award gave them merely **71 seats**. Gandhi also gave up the fast and he was released from prison.

CONGRESS SOCIALISTS AND COMMUNISTS

- The origin of the Congress Socialist Party is to be traced to the growing communist influence on the Indian National Congress in the 1920s. The Congress Socialists developed as a group within the Congress emphasised national revolution as a pre-condition to social change.
- The suspension of mass civil disobedience by Gandhiji (July 1933) caused confusion among radical Congressmen. Their disappointment deepened when the All-India Congress Committee met in May 1934, called off the Civil Disobedience Movement and formed a Parliamentary Board to contest elections.
- An All-India Socialist Conference was held at Patna (May 1934) with Acharya Narendra Deo in the chair. Among prominent leaders were Sampurnanand and

Sri Jaiprakash Narayan.

- The Conference decided to form an All-India Congress Socialist Party. Its objective was to press for the adoption of socialist principles by the Congress. Among those associated with the foundation of the Congress Socialist Party were Jaya Prakash Narayan, Abdul Bari, M. R. Masani and Purushottama Das.
- A Socialist Conference was held at Bombay (October 1934) with Sampurnanand as Chairman.
- Among the participants were Dr. Ram Manohar Lohia, F. H. Ansari, Kamaladevi Chattopadhyaya, A. Patwardhan, P. K. Pillai and other Socialist leaders mentioned earlier.
- Congress Socialist groups emerged in Delhi, Bihar, U. P., Bombay, Maharashtra, Madras, Kerala and other places. It was Jaya Prakash Narayan who was largely responsible for making anti-imperialism and support for workers and peasants, the major objectives of the Party.
- It is important to emphasize that the Communists and the Socialists had fundamental difference in their attitude to the Indian National Congress. The Communist party regarded the Congress as a party of collaborators of imperialism. But the Socialist viewed the Congress as an anti-imperialist force.
- The Congress Socialist began to organize Kisan Sabhas and actively participated in peasants movements that were taking place in different parts of India. The Congress also became active in the Trade Union movement which had so long been dominated by the Communists.
- During this period was formed the All-India Railwaymen's Federation, led by V. V. Giri, and the National Trade Union Federation. In 1936 Jawaharlal Nehru presided over the annual Congress session held at Faizpur. The session atmosphere was "surcharged with Socialist slogans, emphasising the rights of workers and peasants on the one hand and declaiming against the forces of Imperialism and Fascism on the other."
- The **Bombay Manifesto** signed in 1936 by 21 Bombay businessmen, strongly opposed the socialist ideas and contained an open indictment of Nehru's preaching of socialist ideas. It evoked support from a large section of business community from all across India."
- In 1937 the Congress condemned Japanese aggression in China and the next year a medical mission was sent to China which included **Dr. M. Atal and Dr. Kotnis**.
- Jaya Prakash, Narendra Deo and Patwardhan became members of the Congress Working Committee. But the group, in spite of Jawaharlal's backing, had no

dominant voice in the Congress organization. They were defeated on the issue of office acceptance by the Congress in 1937.

ATTITUDE OF CONGRESS TOWARDS CONSTITUTIONAL CHANGES FROM 1909 TO 1935

- Indian National Congress was dissatisfied with the constitutional system from the early stage.
- Discontent arose in congress against separate electorates for Muslims by the act of 1909.
- Indian National Congress opposed the Act of 1919.
- Some liberals like Surendra Nath Banerjee, Tej Bahadur Sapru & M.R. Jayakar gave their support to the Act of 1919. These liberals established “National Liberal Federation” in 1918.
- Rightists of the Congress were satisfied with the Act of 1935. They were agreed to participate in election and to accept the office but the leftists were against it.
- Lastly Congress accepted it at Lucknow session in 1936.

ELECTION 1937

- General elections were held in July 1937 and the Congress formed Ministries in six provinces: Madras, Bombay, Central provinces, Orissa, Bihar and U.P. Later Congress Ministries were also formed in the NorthWest Frontier Province and Assam.
- Congress won 715 out of 836 seats.
- Congress won absolute majority in 6 providence— UP, Bihar, Orissa, CP, Bombay, Madras.

Various Ministries

- Bengal — Fazl-ul-Haq (Krishak Praja Party with Muslim League) (Non-Congress)
- Punjab — Sikandar Hayat Khan (Unionist Party) (Non-Congress).
- Sindh — Allah Baksh (Non-Congress)
- Bihar — Srikrishna Sinha
- UP — Govind Ballabh Pant
- Bombay — B.G. Kher
- CP — N.V. Khare

- Madras — C. Rajagopalachari
- NWFP — Dr. Khan Sahib
- To guide and coordinate their activities and to ensure that the British hopes of the provincialisation of the

Congress did not materialize, a central board known as the Parliamentary sub Committee was formed, with **Sardar Patel, Maulana Abul Kalam Azad** and **Rajendra Prasad** as members.

ACHIEVEMENTS OF CONGRESS MINISTRIES

- All emergency powers acquired by the provincial governments during, 1932 through public safety acts and the like, were repealed. Laws on illegal political organization such as the Hindustan Seva Dal and youth leagues and on political books and journals were lifted. Though the ban on the communist party remained since it was imposed by the central government and could only be lifted on its orders the communists could in effect now function freely and openly in the congress provinces. All restrictions on the press were removed. Securities taken from newspapers and presses were refunded and pending prosecutions were withdrawn. The blacklisting of newspapers for purposes of government advertising was given up. Confiscated arms were returned and forfeited arms licenses were restored.
- One of the first acts of the congress government was to release thousands of political prisoners and detenus and to cancel internment and deportation orders on political workers. Many of the revolutionaries involved in the Kakori and other conspiracy cases were released.
- In Bombay, the government also took steps to restore to the original owners lands which had been confiscated by the government as a result of the no tax campaign during the civil disobedience movement in 1930. It too had to threaten resignation before it could persuade the governor to agree. The pensions of officials dismissed during 1930 and 1932 for sympathizing with the movement were also restored.
- The Congress could not attempt a complete overhaul of the agrarian structure by completely eliminating the Zamindari system. This was for two reasons. According to the constitutional structure of the 1935 Act, the provincial ministers did not have enough power to do so. They also suffered from an extreme lack of financial resources, for the lion's share of India's revenues was appropriated by the Government of India.

- The reactionary second chambers in the form of legislative councils, which were elected on a very narrow franchise, also hindered the work of Congress ministers. These were therefore, dominated by landlords, capitalists and moneylenders and the congress formed only a small minority.
- In November 1938, the government passed the **Industrial Disputes Act** which was based on the philosophy of class collaboration and not class conflict; as the premier B. G. Kher put it. The emphasis in the Act was on conciliation, arbitration and negotiations in place of direct action. The act was also designed to prevent strikes and lookouts. The act empowered the Government to refer an industrial dispute to the court of industrial arbitration. No strike or lock-out could occur for an interim period of four months during which the court would give its award.
- The congress governments undertook certain other measures of social reforms and welfare. Prohibition was introduced in selected areas in different states. Measure for the advancement of untouchables or Harijans (children of god) as Gandhiji called them included the passing of laws enabling Harijans to enter temples and to get free access to public offices, public sources of water such as wells and ponds, roads, means to transport, hospitals, educational and other similar institutions maintained out of public funds, and restaurants and hotels. Moreover, no court or public authority was to recognise any custom or usage which imposed any civil disability on Harijans. The number of scholarships for Harijans students was increased. Efforts were made to increase the number of Harijans in police and other government services.
- The congress ministries paid a lot of attention to primary, technical and higher education and public health and sanitation. Education for girls and Harijans was expanded. In particular, the ministries introduced basic education with an emphasis on manual and productive work. Mass literacy campaigns among adults were organized. Support and subsidies were given to khadi, spinning and village industries.
- Schemes of prison reforms were also taken up. The congress governments removed impediments in the path of indigenous industrial expansion and in fact actively attempted to promote several modern industrial ventures such as automobile manufacture.
- The congress Governments also joined the effort to develop planning through the national planning committee appointed in 1938 by the congress president Subhas Bose.
- Even though it was under a central government ban, the communist party was

able to bring out its weekly organ 'The national Front' from Bombay.

- The CSP brought out the **Congress Socialist** and several other Journals in Indian languages such as **Kirti Lehar** which the Kirti Communists of Punjab brought out from Meerut, U.P., because they could not do so in unionist-ruled Punjab.
- However, Congressman like C. Rajagopalachari and K. M. Munshi did not hesitate to use their respective state apparatus in a politically repressive manner.
- Quite often they treated all militant protests, especially trade union struggles, as a law and order problem. They took recourse to section 144 of the criminal code against agitating workers and arrested peasant and trade union leaders even in Kanpur.
- Congress Ministries in provinces resigned in protest against war policy of the British on **27th October 1939**. Gandhiji welcomed the resignations for another reason also. He thought that the resignation would help cleanse the congress of the rampant corruption. The resignations produced another positive effect. They brought the left and the Right in the congress closer because of a common policy on the question of participation in the war.
- Muslim League observed the **Day of Deliverance** on 22nd December 1939.
- **Various Parties :**

o Ambedkar

o Nawab Chattri

o Ramaswami Naicker o Sikandar Hayat Khan o Fazl-ul-Haq

— Independent Labour Party (Bombay) — National Agricultural Party (UP) — Justice Party (Madras)

— Unionist Party (Punjab)

— Krishak Praja Party (Bengal)

SECOND WORLD WAR AND RESIGNATIONS OF CONGRESS MINISTRIES

- The assurances the Congress sought from the Government were not forthcoming- only vague half – hearted phrases and pious platitudes were offered instead, Hence seven Congress Ministries tendered their resignations, and the administration of those provinces except Assam was taken over by the Governors under Section 93 of the Act of 1935.
- Mr. Jinnah made the occasion a day of deliverance and thanks giving, as a mark of relief that the Congress regime had at least ceased to function. Only in

Sind, Punjab and Bengal did popular ministries continue to function.

- To allay the resulting discontent, the Viceroy (Lord Linlithgow) in January 1940, declared that Dominion Status of the Westminster variety as soon as possible after the War” was the goal of British policy in India. So what had been denied by the Act of 1935 was to be conceded after the war.

AUGUST OFFER

- On the eve of the Battle of Britain, on August 8, 1940, British Government came out a new declaration of policy called the August Offer.
- This was a statement by the Viceroy on behalf of the British Government to the effect that
 - notwithstanding differences amongst political parties the expansion of the Governor General’s Executive Council and the establishment of an Advisory War council should no longer be postponed
 - the Government reaffirmed their desire to give full weight to minority opinion
 - subject to the fulfilment of their obligations e.g. questions like Defence , Minority Rights, the Treaties with the States, and the position of the All India Services), the British Government concurred that the framing new constitution should be primarily the responsibility of Indians themselves and the constitution should originate from Indian concept.
 - as it was not possible to settle constitutional issues at a moment, when the Commonwealth is engaged in a struggle for its existence, steps shall be taken after the conclusion of hostilities. The principal elements in India’s national life will be mobilised in order to devise the framework of the new constitution and they will lend every help in their power to hasten decisions on all relevant matters.
- In the interval it was hoped that all parties and communities in India would co-operate in India’s attainment of free and equal partnership in the British Commonwealth of Nations.
- The Congress rejected this offer and Gandhiji even went so far as to declare that the declaration widened the gulf between nationalist India and the British ruler.
- Jawaharlal Nehru said in no uncertain terms that the whole conception of Dominion Status for India was dead as a door nail.
- The Muslim League however, welcomed that part of the offer which the congress had condemned, and the clear assurance that no future constitution,

interim or final, should be adopted by the government with out concurrence of Muslim League.

- The League went on to say that the partition of India was the only solution of the most difficult problem of India's future constitution.
- Mr. L.S. Amery, the secretary of State believed that the constitutional deadlock today is not between a consentient Indian National movement asking freedom and a British Government reluctant to surrender its authority, but between the main elements of India's national life.

THE CRIPPS MISSION, 1942

- December 1941, Japan entered the war on the side of the Axis Powers and its spectacular successes during the early months of 1942 forced the British Government to make an earnest effort to resolve the deadlock in India.
- On march 11, 1942, Mr. Winston Churchill (the prime Minister) announced that the War cabinet had reached a unanimous decision on Indian policy, and that the leader of the House of commons, Sir Stafford Cripps would proceed to India as soon as possible to explain the decision and to satisfy himself in the spot, by personal consultations, that the conclusions upon which we all are agreed and which we believe represent a just and final solution.
- The Lord privy Seal who had volunteered for the task was also to strive to procure the necessary measure of assent not from the Hindu majority, but also from those great minorities amongst which the Muslims are the most numerous and on many grounds prominent.
- Soon after reaching India Sir Stafford communicated the Draft Declaration to the members of the Executive Council (on March 23, 1942) and two days later to the Indian leaders.
- Pandit Nehru and Maulana Azad were official congress negotiators with Cripps Mission.
- On March 29, these proposals were made public at a press Conference.
- Gandhiji called the declaration a post dated cheque to which some one added the words on a failing bank.

THE PROPOSALS OF CRIPPS MISSION

- Immediately upon the cessation of hostilities steps shall be taken to set up in India, in the manner described hereafter, an elected body charge with the task of framing a new Constitution for India.

- Provision shall be made for participation of Indian states in the constitution making body.
- the British Government undertook to accept and implement forthwith the constitution so framed subject only to :
- the right of any Province of British India that is not prepared to accept the new Constitution to retain its present constitutional position, provision being made for its subsequent accession if it so decides. With such non acceding provinces, should they so desire the British Government will be prepared to agree upon a new Constitution giving them the same full status as the Indian Union and arrived at by a procedure analogous to that here laid down ,
- the signing of a Treaty which shall be negotiated between the British Government and the Constitution making body covering all necessary matters arising out of the complete transfer of responsibility from British to Indian hands. It will make provisions for the protection of racial and religious minorities but it will not impose any restriction on the power of the Indian Union to decide in the future its relation with other member states of the British Commonwealth.
- Whether or not an Indian State elects to adhere to the Constitution it will be necessary to negotiate a revision of its treaty arrangements so far as this may be required in the new situation.
- The Constitution making body would be elected by the members of the Lower Houses of the Provincial Legislatures by the system of proportional representation.
- Until the new Constitution could be framed the British Government would remain responsible for the defence of India but they desire and invite the immediate and effective participation of the leaders of the principal sections of the Indian people in the councils of their country, of the Commonwealth and of the United Nations. Thus they will be enabled to give their active and constructive help in the discharge of a task which is vital and essential for the future freedom of India.
- The main features of the Draft Declaration so far as the future was concerned were provision for Dominion Status with the right of secession for the provinces for the transfer of power and safeguards for minorities. Until the new constitution could be framed, defence was to be the sole concern of the British Government and the Governor – General was to continue with all his powers as before.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE DRAFT DECLARATION

- The Declaration marked a further notable advance even over the August offer in so far as it.
- Granted the right of secession from the British Commonwealth.
- Said that the making of the new constitution would be now solely (and not only mainly as before) in Indian hands.
- Proposed a plan for a Constitution Assembly.
- Was an improvement in respect of the interim system of Central Government.

REACTIONS TO THE PROPOSALS OF CRIPPS MISSION

- Congress objected not so much to the long term proposals as to the interim arrangements. The proposed arrangement about Defence was unacceptable to the Congress. Besides, the Congress had demanded but did not receive an informal assurance that Governor General would act as a constitutional head on the advice of the National Government consisting of Indian leaders.
- The existing structure of Government would continue exactly as before, the autocratic powers of the Viceroy would remain and a few of us will become his liveried camp followers and look after canteens and the like.
- Congress also opposed the veto power of the Viceroy.
- The principle of non accession of the provinces to the Union seemed to be an axe applied to the very roots of the conception of Indian unity.
- This was the view of the Hindu Mahasabha too (which regarded the communal basis of the elections as obnoxious) as of the liberals like Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru and Mr. Jayakar.
- The Muslim League opposed the proposals because their demand for the creation of Pakistan was not clearly accepted.
- The procedure of determining the wishes of a province in the matter of accession to the Union was not at all defined. According to Cripps, a province should reach its decision by a vote in the Legislative Assembly on a resolution that the province should join the Indian Union and that if the majority for accession was less than 60% the minority would have the right to ask for a plebiscite of the adult male population which would then determine the matter by a simple majority. This weighed the scales decisively against the Hindus in securing an accession to the Union in the case of either Bengal or the Punjab.

QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT

- The Japanese were virtually knocking at the doors of the country. Gandhiji now started his campaign for orderly British withdrawal from India. He began his

campaign in April 1942. In his views whatever the consequences to India her real safety and British's too lie in an orderly and timely British withdrawal from India. The phrase quit India to denote this move somehow came into vogue and it caught on.

- The meeting of Congress Working Committee held on 27th April, 1942 at Allahabad. In this meeting the Congress criticize the policy of the British Government on war front.
- On July 1942 the meeting of Congress working committee held at Wardha. The Congress asked the British to Quit India.
- The Congress Working Committee on July 14, 1942, in a resolution demanding withdrawal of the British power from India said: Should this appeal fail the Congress cannot view without the gravest apprehension the Continuation of the present state of the affairs invest apprehension the deterioration of the situation and the weakening of India's will and power to resist aggression. The Congress will then be reluctantly compelled to utilise all the non-violent strength it might have gathered since 1920 for the vindication of political right and liberty. Such a widespread struggle would inevitably be under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi.
- On 7th August, 1942 the session of Congress started in Bombay. Gandhi presented the historical proposals of "Quit India" on 8th August.
- The All India Congress Committee meeting at Bombay on August 8th 1942 while approving of and endorsing the resolution of the Working Committee expressed the opinion that events subsequent to it have given it further justification and have made it clear that immediate ending of British rule in India is an urgent necessity both for the sale of India and for the success of the cause of the United Nations. The continuation of that rule is degrading and enfeebling India and making her progressively less capable of enfeebling India and making her progressively less capable of defending herself and of contributing to the cause of world freedom.
- As a consequence early next morning (August 9, 1942) Gandhiji and all members of the working committee were arrested and the All Indian Congress committee and the Provincial Congress Committee were banned. But the people did not take this action of the Government lying down. There were numerous acts of violence and destruction of or damage to public property and in quite a number of places there was a breakdown of Government machinery and dislocation of normal life and communications. Though the congress leaders disclaimed any responsibility for this outbreak of violence it is hard to believe

that all of them were ignorant of such large scale planning by the extremists. On the Government side severe repression went on and hundreds were put to death or thrown in prison.

- The general policy of the Government was to suppress the disturbances in the country and also to detain the Congress leaders until they gave a definite assurance and guarantee of a different line of conduct.
- Muslim League observed on March 23, 1943, the Pakistan Day; Mr. Jinnah sent a message to the Muslim population of India stating that the scheme of Pakistan was the final national goal of Muslim India. The league in a resolution on April 26 endorsed this view.
- Gandhi gave the slogan “Do or Die”.
- Gandhi and the members of Congress working committee were imprisoned on 9th August, 1942.
- Mahatma Gandhi was kept in Agha Khan Fort at Poona and others were kept in the Fort of Ahmadnagar.
- Congress was declared illegal.
- This movement as directionless and leaderless.
- It is also known as August-Revolution because it started in the month of August.
- Communist Part of India supported the British Government.
- Dr. Ambedkar opposed the movement.
- Princes kept themselves aloof from this movement.
- Merchants kept themselves aloof from this movement.
- Hindu Mahasabha also opposed this movement.
- Landlords kept themselves aloof from this movement.
- The Quit India Movement witnessed emergence of under ground movement. Some prominent leaders who participated were— Achyut Patwardhan, Aruna Asaf Ali, Ram Manohar Lohia, Sucheta Kriplani, Biju Patnaik & Jai Prakash Narayan.
- Usha Mehta established Congress Radio in Bombay.
- Parallel Governments were established during this movement at Balia, Satara & Tamluk.
- A slogan “Divide and Quit” was given by Muslim League in 1943 Karachi Sessions.
- Muslim League supported the government.
- Gandhi observed fast for 21 days during his imprisonment to confirm his strung belief in non-violence and for self purification.

- During imprisonment of Gandhi his personal secretary Mahadeo Desai and wife Kasturba died.

THE RAJAGOPALACHARI FORMULA

- In March 1944 Mr. C. Rajagopalachari evolved a formula with the full approval of Gandhiji for Congress

League cooperation on the basis of Pakistan. C. Raja Gopalachari issued a pamphlet entitled “The Way Out”.

- The scheme embodying the formula was :
- the league would endorse the demand for independence and co- operate with the Congress in forming a

provisional government for the transitional period

- At the end of the war a plebiscite of all the inhabitants in the Muslim majority areas in the north west and the north east would decide whether or not they should form a separate state
- In the event of separation agreements would be made for Defence, Communications and other essential matters
- These terms were to be binding only in case of transfer by England of full power and responsibility for the Government of India.
- Mr. Jinnah wrote to Gandhiji for elucidation of various points of Rajagopalachari formula in detail.
- Gandhiji in offering the clarifications sought added that the Lahore Resolution of the League being indefinite Rajaji had taken from it the substance and given it a shape. But Mr. Jinnah in reply claimed that Rajaji had mutilated that substance. He said that the Muslims of India as a separate nation had the right of self determination and the Muslims alone were to be entitled to vote for partition and not the whole population of the disputed areas. In other words the right of self determination which he claimed for the Muslim was to be denied to the non Muslims in the other areas.
- The Congress was concerned with the achievement of independence and to that end was prepared to pay

the necessary price for Muslim co- operation and support but the League cared nothing for the independence of the whole country and wanted the Congress to agree to two nation theory and partition without any plebiscite of the whole population.

- Mr. Jinnah was also opposed to a common center concerned with Defence, Commerce and Communications etc.

DESAI-LIAQUAT PROPOSALS

- Gandhi got convinced that the British rulers would not grant independence of India unless and until the Congress and the Muslim League reached some accord as to the future of the country and the immediate formation of an interim National Government. He lent support to Rajaji's formula, but Jinnah did not relent.
- After the failure of Rajaji formula Gandhiji asked Bhulabhai J. Desai to make another attempt to appease the League leaders.
- Bhulabhai Desai, the leader to the Congress party in Central Legislative Assembly met Mr. Liaquat Ali Khan, the deputy leader of the Muslim League party in that Assembly in January 1945 and gave him the draft of a proposal for the formation of an interim Government at the Centre consisting of

equal number of persons nominated by the Congress and the League.
representatives of minorities and
the commander in chief

But no settlement could be reached between the Congress and the League even on these lines. But a sort of parity between the Congress and the League was decided upon and this had far reaching consequences.

WAVELL PLAN

- Lord Wavell who had succeeded Lord Linlithgow as Governor General in October 1943, made an attempt to resolve the deadlock in India.
- In March 1945 he went to England for consultations. The result of his consultations was revealed on June 14. He broadcasted to the people of India the proposals of the British Government to resolve the deadlock in India.

- On the same day Mr. Amery, the Secretary of state for India made a similar statement in the House of Commons that the offer of March 1942 stands in its entirety without change or qualification.
- He proposed the reconstruction of the Governor General's Executive council pending the preparation of a new constitution. With the exception of the Governor General and the Commander in Chief (who would retain his position as war member) all other members of the Executive Council would be nominated from amongst leaders of Indian political life.
- This Council would have a balanced representation of the main communities including equal proportions of Muslims and caste Hindus.
- Though the Governor General's veto would not be abolished it would not be used unnecessarily. The portfolio of External Affairs (other than those of tribal and frontier matters which had to be dealt with as part of the defence of India) was to be transferred from the Governor General to an Indian member of the council.
- A conference of representatives chosen by the Viceroy was to be convened with a view to obtaining from the leaders of the various parties a joint list or failing it separate lists of worthy people to constitute the new Executive Council.
- It was expected also that provincial ministries in provinces would resume office and that there would be coalitions.
- The members of the Congress working Committee were let out of Jail and high hopes prevailed on all sides as invitations for the proposed Shimla Conference went out to the leaders including Gandhiji.
- The meeting began on June 25, 1945 but the conference was adjourned after there days of discussion.
- On July 11, Mr. Jinnah met the Viceroy during which he seems to have made it clear to the latter that the League should be regarded as the sole representative of Indian Muslims. League was firmly opposed to the inclusion of any non Leaguer Muslims in the Viceroy's list. But the viceroy could not agree to this point of view.
- Three days later on 14 July Lord Wavell announced that no agreement had been reached and that the Congress and Muslim League leaders had failed to agree on the allocation of seats on the Executive Council. Lord Wavell wound up the Conference by declaring a failure of the talks.
- The Congress President (Maulana Azad) put the responsibility for the break down squarely on the shoulders of Mr. Jinnah . Lord Wavell however cannot escape the responsibility either. Lord Wavell's procedure could have been easily

improved upon. He should have taken the leaders into confidence as regards the composition of his own list of members of the Executive Council . Possibly the Congress leaders might have been persuaded to accept that list either as a whole or with minor modifications mutually agreed upon. Then he should not have allowed the league practically to veto the whole plan and thus alone to block the path of progress.

- Gandhiji, on whom the Cripps Proposals had fallen flat, felt that the Wavell plan was sincere in spirit and contained the seeds of independence.
- It must be noted in this connection that the Viceroy had assured the Congress President that no party to the conference could be allowed to obstruct settlement out of wilfulness.
- The result of the failure of the Shimla Conference was to strengthen the position of Mr. Jinnah and the Muslim League which was clearly manifested in the Elections of 1945–46.

ELECTION 1945-46

- Government of Britain, formed on July 10th, 1945, installed an old friend of India, Lord Pethick Lawrence as the Secretary of State for India.
- • 46 fired the ideals and interests of those valiant soldiers, resulting in increased Congress popularity among the people of India .
- Shortly after Lord Pethick Lawrence assumed office, Lord Wavell was summoned to England for consultations. On August 21 after a special emergency meeting of the Executive council the Viceroy's decision to hold elections to Central and provincial Legislatures in India and to go to London was announced .
- On September 19, 1945, the Viceroy immediately on his return announced that after the elections in India, a Constitution making body would be convened and that his Executive Council would be reconstituted with the support of the main Indian political parties. He also expressed the hope that ministerial responsibility would be accepted by political leaders in the provinces.
- On the same day (September 19, 1945) Prime Minister Attlee reiterated the announcement of the Viceroy adding that the 1942 (Cripps) offer still stood in all its fullness and purpose and that the Government was acting in accordance with its spirit and intention this was followed
- On December 4 by a statement in the House of Lords by the Secretary of State for India regretting that the full significance of the proposals had not been

properly appreciated in India and unjustified suggestions had gained wide currency to the effect that the preparatory discussions would be a fruitful source of delay. He made it clear that the British Government regarded the setting up of the Constitution making body as a matter of urgency. He thought that the misunderstanding would be removed by personal contact between members of Parliament and leading Indian political personalities and announced the sending to India of a parliamentary delegation under the auspices of the delegation.

- Lord Wavell on December 10, 1945, addressing the annual meeting of the Associated Chambers of Commerce said Quit India will not act as the magic sesame and appealed for good-will, co- operation and patience.

- Central and Provincial elections were held in India in winter of 1945- 46. Though the Muslim League had captured an overwhelming majority of Muslim seats taken together yet it could form ministries only in Sind and Bengal. The Congress assumed office in Assam, Bihar, U. P., N.W.F.P., Bombay, Madras, C.P.. A Coalition Ministry composed of Akali Sikhs and Unionist Hindus and Muslims and all other parties except the Muslim League was formed under Malik Khizr Hyatt, the leader of the Unionist party in Punjab.

CABINET MISSION

- On February 19, 1946, Lord Pethick Lawrence made an important announcement in the House of Lords that a special mission of Cabinet Ministers consisting of the noble Lord himself, the President of the Admiralty (Mr. A. V. Alexander) and Sir Staford Cripps would go to India to seek in association with the Viceroy an agreement with Indian leaders on the principles and procedure relating to the constitutional issue.

- In a debate on the above statement held on March 15 Prime Minister Attlee declared in the House of Commons that we are very mindful of the right of minorities and Minorities should be able to live free from fear. On the other hand we cannot allow a minority to place a veto on the advance of Majority. This marked important change in the traditional policy of the British Government towards the Muslim League.

- The Cabinet Mission reached Delhi on March 24, 1946 and had prolonged discussions with Indian leaders of all parties and groups. As the Congress and the League could not come to any agreement on the fundamental issue of the unity or partition of India, the Mission put forward their own plan for the solution of the Constitutional problem . This plan was given in a joint statement

issued by the Mission and Lord Wavell on May 16, 1946.

- As regards the long – term scheme, they rejected the Muslim League’s demand for Pakistan on several grounds: First the establishment of Pakistan would not solve the problem of communal minorities because the percentage of non Muslims living in the north west zone of Pakistan would be 37- 39 % and those living in the north eastern zone 48-31 % of the total population. Moreover, there was no justification for including within Pakistan, the predominantly non – Muslim districts of Bengal, Assam and the Punjab. According to them every argument that could be used in favour of Pakistan could equally be used in favour of the exclusion of the non- Muslim areas from Pakistan. There was no virtue in creating a smaller Pakistan involving a division of the Punjab and Bengal because, according to them it would be against the wishes and interests of a very large proportion of the inhabitants of these provinces.
- Secondly, it would be injurious to disintegrate the transportation as also the postal and telegraph system of India. Thirdly to divide the armed forces of India would entail the gravest dangers. Fourthly the Princely States would find it difficult to Join one or the other Union. Lastly there is the geographical fact that the two halves of the proposed Pakistan State are separate by some 700 miles and communication between them both in war and peace would be dependent in the good will of Hindustan.
- These were very cogent arguments indeed against the partition of the country. So the Mission suggested that there should be one Central Government controlling at least some specified Subjects.
- The Mission recommended that the Constitution of India should take the following basic forms.
- There should be Union of India, embracing both British India and the states which should deal with the following subjects: Foreign Affairs, Defence and Communications and should have the powers to raise the finances required for the above subjects.
- The Union should have an Executive and a Legislature constituted from British India and States representatives. Any question raising a major communal issue in the legislature should require for its decision a majority of the representatives present and voting of each of the two major communities as well as a majority of all the members present and voting.
- The Provinces would enjoy full autonomy, for all subjects other than the Union subjects and all residuary powers should vest in the provinces.
- Moreover provinces should be free to form Groups with executives and

legislatures and each group could determine the provincial subjects to be taken in common.

- The six Hindu majority provinces viz Madras, Bombay C. P, UP, Bihar, and Orissa would form Group A. The Muslim Majority provinces in the north – west (the Panjab, the N.W.F.P, Sind) would form Group B. Bengal and Assam would form Group C. Of the Chief Commissioners Provinces three (Delhi, Ajmer-Marwar, Coorg) would join Group A and one (Baluchistan) would join Group B. The full autonomy of the provinces and the provision for grouping were meant to give the Muslim League if not the form, the substance of Pakistan. It was obvious that Group B and C would be under absolute control of the Muslims.
- The intention of the Cabinet Mission was to set in motion a Constituent Assembly the machinery whereby a constitution could be settled by Indians themselves. The Constituent Assembly would be elected by the Provincial Legislative Assemblies, adult suffrage having been ruled out as it would involve delay in the making of the Constitution. The members of each Provincial Legislative Assemblies would be divided into three groups i.e. General, Muslims and Sikhs and each group would elect its own representatives to the Constituent Assembly by the method of proportional representation with the single transferable vote. The number of representatives allotted to each province and community was to be proportional to its population, roughly **in the ratio of one to a million.**
- To these 292 members were to be added four members from the four Chief Commissioners' provinces and not more than 93 members from the Indian States whose selection would be determined by consultation.
- The Constituent Assembly thus formed, would be divided into three Sections (Section A corresponding to Group A and so on). Each Section would settle the Constitution for its own provinces and also decide whether a Group constitution should be set up. The three Sections and representatives of the States (that is the entire Constituent Assembly) would jointly settle the Union Constitution. There was to be an Advisory Committee on the rights of citizens, minorities and tribal and excluded areas.
- The Constitution of the Union and of the Groups would contain a provision whereby any province could by a majority vote of its Legislative Assembly call for a reconsideration of the terms of the Constitution after an initial period of ten years and at ten yearly intervals thereafter. Moreover the provinces were given the power to opt out of their respective groups by a decision of their Legislatures after the general elections under the new constitution.

- The Constituent Assembly would conclude a treaty with British to provide for certain matters arising out of the transfer of power.
- As regards the Indian States the Cabinet Mission declared that when the new Constitution comes into force the British Government would cease to exercise the powers of paramountcy. In that case all the rights surrendered by the states to the Paramount power were to return to them. Political arrangements between the States on the one side and the British Crown and British India on the other will thus be brought to an end. The void will have to be filled either by the states entering into a federal relationship with the successor Governments.
- The Cabinet Mission contemplated the setting up of an interim Government in which all the portfolios including that of the War member were to be held by Indian leaders having the support of the major political parties.

THE CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

- The Cabinet Mission plan was accepted by the Congress and the Muslim League though with mental reservations. The objection of the Congress to the plan was mainly its provisions of grouping that of that of the league to the rejection of its demand for a sovereign state of Pakistan. The Cabinet Mission in a statement issued before leaving India, expressed satisfaction that Constitution making would proceed with the participation of the major parties but regretted that certain difficulties prevented a multi-party Interim Government being formed, hoping that such a Government might come into existence after the election to the Constituent Assembly.
- This decision to postpone the formation of Interim Government displeased Mr. Jinnah, who accused the Viceroy of having gone back on his promise. Another shock was in store for Mr. Jinnah. The elections to the Constituent Assembly took place in July 1946. The Congress captured 205 seats including all the General seats but 9 and the League 73 out of 78 Muslim seats. As four other seats were captured by the Sikhs a little later the Congress could count upon the allegiance of 209 members in an Assembly of 296. Mr. Jinnah was greatly disturbed and alarmed at the overwhelming majority of Congress and the League being totally eclipsed in the Constituent Assembly.
- On July 29, 1946, the Muslim League in a huff resolved to withdraw its acceptance of the Cabinet Mission Plan. The League in fact went further to register its annoyance by passing the Direct Action resolution which started with condemning both the British Government and the Congress for their bad faith.

and declared that the time had come for resort to direct Action for the achievement of Pakistan. The Working committee of the League was authorised to prepare a programme for such action at once and August 16, 1946 was fixed as the Direct Action Day.

- On the D' Day began the great Killing in Calcutta, and the city then under a Muslim League Government was reduce to bloody shambles. In October 1946, the Muslims of Noakhali and Tipperah (in Bengal) perpetrated untold atrocities on the Hindu population of those districts. As a reaction communal riots broke out in some parts of Bihar and U.P. and in Bombay. A movement for the partition of Bengal into two halves one consisting of the Hindu majority areas – was set on foot as the Hindu of the province feared that they would be under the heels of a Muslim Majority.
- The Constituent Assembly with the Muslim League remaining aloof met for the first time on December 9, 1946, at New Delhi. On December 11, this Assembly elected Dr. Rajendra Prasad as its permanent president and only two days later Jawaharlal Nehru moved his famous Objectives Resolution (Passed on January 22, 1947) which declared the Assembly's firm and solemn resolve that India would be an Independent Sovereign Republic.

INTERIM GOVERNMENT

- The Interim Government came into being on 2nd September 1946.
- Muslim league did not participate in it initially.
- In the meantime the Viceroy invited the president of the Congress (Jawaharlal Nehru) to form the Interim Government which assumed office on **September 2, 1946**. The Muslim league kept out despite an offer made to it to join the Government.
- So the interim Government consisted in the first instance of Congress nominees only Pandit J.L. Nehru, Sardar Patel, Dr. Rajendra Prasad, C. Rajagopalachari, Dr. John Mathai, Sardar Baldev Singh, Shafaat Ahmad Khan, Jagjiwan Ram, Syed Ali Zaheer, C.H. Bhabha, Asaf Ali and Sarat Chandra Bose were other members. Though Jinnah had refused to co- operate the Viceroy resumed his negotiations with him as a result of which on October 13, the Muslim League decide to join the Interim Government to safeguard the interests of the Muslims and other minority communities.
- **On October 26**, five nominees of the League i.e. Liaquat Ali Khan, Ghazanfar Ali Khan, Abdul Rab Nishtar, I.I. Chundrigar and Jogendra Nath Mandal

(Scheduled Caste) joined the Interim Government. Two seats were already lying vacant and three nominees of the Congress namely Sarsat Chandra Bose, Syed Ali Zahir and Sir Shafaat Ahmad Khan resigned to make room for the League nominees.

- The new Interim Government was as expected was a house divided against itself with the Congress and the League blocs pulling in different directions. Pandit Nehru openly declared that the league pursued their aim to enlist British support and tried to establish themselves the King's Party.
- Even though the League had joined the Interim Government it persisted in its refusal to join the Constituent Assembly.

VARIOUS MINISTRIES OF INTERIM GOVERNMENT

- Pandit J.L. Nehru
- Sardar Patel
- Dr. Rajendra Prasad
- C. Rajagopalachari
- Dr. John Mathai
- Sardar Baldev Singh
- Jagjiwan Ram
- C.H. Bhabha
- Asaf Ali
- League Liaquat Ali Khan
- Ghazanfar Ali Khan
- Abdul Rab Nishtar
- I.I. Chundrigar
- Jogendra Nath Mandal Vice President of Executive council, Foreign Affairs, Commonwealth Home, Information and Broadcasting
- Food and agriculture
- Education
- Industry and Trade
- Defence
- Labour
- Constructions, Mining and Energy
- Railway
- Finance
- Health
- Communication

Commerce
Law

FEBRUARY DECLARATION (FEBRUARY 20, 1947)

- The next step on the fateful road to India's destiny was the important announcement by the British Prime Minister, Mr. Clement Attlee, on February 20, 1947, in which he referred in no uncertain terms to the pronounced differences amongst Indian Political parties hampering the functioning of Constituent Assembly according to Plan and rendering it not fully representative of India's variegated population pattern.
- He went on to make the momentous declaration. The present state of uncertainty is fraught with danger and cannot be indefinitely prolonged. His Majesty's Government wish to make clear that it is their definite intention to take necessary steps to effect the transference of power to responsible Indian hands by June 1948.
- If the League continue to boycott the Constituent Assembly the British Government would then have to consider to whom the powers of the Central Government in British India should be handed over on due date, whether as a whole to some form of Central Government for British India or in some areas to the existing Provincial Government or in such other way as may seem most reasonable and in the best interests of the Indian people. Thus the statement fixed the deadline (June 1948) by which the British would quit India and envisaged a partition of the country which the Cabinet Mission had completely refused.
- The Publication of this statement was followed by a tearing raging campaign by the League to bring about at any cost the partition of the country. Things in India were at a bad pass. The League resorted to unabashed violence in Calcutta, Assam, the Panjab and the N.W.F.P. with a view to replace the non League Ministries in the Panjab, Assam and the N.W.F.P. The statement had clearly declared that power might conceivably be transferred. In some cases to Provincial Governments. The league therefore made a vigorous attempt to install League Ministries in all the areas covered by Pakistan. The League by its tactics of attrition brought the fall of anti league Ministry in the Panjab where the Governor's rule under Section 93 was introduced. In Assam and the N.W.F.P. the League however failed in its strategy.

THE MOUNTBATTEN PLAN JUNE 3, 1947

The announcement that Lord Wavell was to be replaced by Lord Mountbatten as Viceroy was followed by the latter's speedy arrival in India. The new Viceroy a man of tact energy and determination did not let the grass grow under his feet, and almost immediately declared his intention to complete the transfer of power into Indian hands within a few months. To this end he consulted Indian leaders. The Qaid-I Azam intransigent as ever would not yield an inch in his demand for Pakistan. The Congress leaders had by now agreed to the principle of Pakistan but insisted on a partition of the provinces affected in order compulsion if Pakistan was unavoidable. Shortly after this Lord Mountbatten paid a visit to London for consultations in May 1947.

On June 3, 1947, Lord Mountbatten published a statement outlining his solution of India's political problem. Its provisions were

- It is not the intention of his Majesty's Government to interrupt the work of the existing Constituent Assembly,

it is clear that any constitution framed by this Assembly cannot apply to those parts of the country which are unwilling to accept it.

- His Majesty's Government are satisfied that the procedure outlined below embodies the best practical method of ascertaining the wishes of the people of such areas in the issue whether their constitution is to be framed (a) in the existing Constituent Assembly or (b) in a new and separate Constituent Assembly consisting of the representatives of those areas which had decided not to participate in the existing Constituent Assembly.
- The Provincial Assemblies of the Panjab and Bengal were to meet in two parts, one representing the Muslim majority districts and the other representing the rest of the Province, and the members of the two parts of each Legislative Assembly sitting separately will be empowered to vote whether or not the Province should be partitioned. If a simple majority of either part decides in favour of partition, partition will take place and arrangements would be made accordingly. The Legislative Assembly of Sind was to take its own decision at a special meeting. A decision of referendum was provided for in the case of the N.W.F.P., the Muslim majority district of Sylhet was also to decide by means of a referendum as to whether it would join East Bengal or remain in Assam.
- The Plan also made provisions for the setting up of a boundary commission to demarcate boundaries in case partition was to be effected. The statement concluded with these words: His Majesty's Government propose to introduce

legislation during the current session for the transfer of power this year on a Dominion Status basis on one or two successor authorities according to decisions taken as a result of this announcement. This will be without prejudice to the right of the Indian Constituent Assembly to decide in due course whether or not the part of India in respect of which they have authority will remain within the British Commonwealth.

- In essence the plan of 3rd June which formed the basis of the Indian Independence Act, 1947, was a further adaptation of the Cripps offer of 1942 with the two major modifications : the 3rd June plan proposed to transfer power without the slightest delay ,while the Cripps Proposals contemplated such transfer in an uncertain future . Again the cessation of British sovereignty by the Indian Independence Act was not fettered by any provision for safeguarding the interests of minorities while such a condition was an essential feature of the Cripps Proposals

PARTITION OF INDIA

- The plan of 3rd June was accepted by all the Political parties in the Country. The Muslim League was Jubilant because it had after all said and done got their homeland though it was truncated and moth eaten. The Congress Accepted the Partition of the country because it was unavoidable under the circumstances. The Sikhs gave in though grudgingly.
- The plan was put into effect without the slightest delay. The legislative Assembly of Bengal and the Panjab decided in favour of partition of those provinces. East Panjab remained within the Indian Union. The referendum in the Sylhet resulted in the incorporation of that district in East Bengal. Two Boundary Commissions one in respect of each province were constituted to demarcate the boundaries of the new Province, The referendum in the N.W.F.P. decided in favour of Pakistan.

THE INDIAN INDEPENDENCE ACT 1947

- The British Government went ahead with its Promised legislation. The Indian Independence Bill was introduced on July 4, 1947, and the Indian Independence Act was enacted after a fortnight on July 18. The Act did not provide for any new constitution of India. It was only an Act to enable the representative of Indian and Pakistan to frame their own constitutions and to provide for the exceedingly difficult period of transition. In other words the Act merely

formalized and gave legal effect to the promise made by Lord Mountbatten in his 3rd June Plan.

- The Act provided for the Partition of India and the establishment of the two Dominions (India and Pakistan) from the appointed date viz August 15, 1947 and for the legislative supremacy of these Dominions. The British Government divested itself of all power and control over the affairs of the Dominions after the 15th of August. Pending the adoption of a new constitution for each Dominion, the existing Constituent Assembly would be Dominion legislature and both Dominions and every province would be governed by the provision of the Government of India Act, 1935. Each Dominion was empowered to modify this Act through its Governor General up to March 31, 1948 and thereafter by its Constituent Assembly.
- The King's right to veto or to reserve them for His Majesty's pleasure was given up and each new Governor General was given the right to assent in His Majesty's name to any Bill passed by the Dominion legislature of his country. The Act also terminated the suzerainty and paramountcy of the British Crown over the Indian States and all treaties agreements, etc, between the two were to lapse on August 15. But existing arrangements between these States and the Government of India were to continue pending detailed negotiation between State and the new Dominions. Similarly, agreements with the tribes of the North West Frontier of India were to be negotiated by the successor Dominion.
- The office of the Secretary of State for India was abolished and his work was to be taken over by the Secretary for Commonwealth Affairs. As a mark of transfer of power to Indian hands the words Emperor of India and India Imperator were dropped from the Royal style and titles. Both the Dominions would have full powers and right to go out of the British Commonwealth of Nations should they so desire.

INDIAN NATIONAL ARMY

- Subhash Chandra Bose escaped from Calcutta on 17th January 1941 and secretly reached Kabul. From there he reached Russia and Germany.
- He was given the title of **Netaji** in Germany by Indians living there.
- He established **Free India Centre** in Germany and gave the slogan of Jai Hind.
- The idea of Indian National Army was first conceived in Malaya in 1941 by Mohan Singh, an Indian Officer in British Army who deserted and went to the Japanese for help.

- The Indian prisoners of war were handed over by the Japanese to Mohan Singh who recruited them in Indian National Army in Malaya on 15th December 1941.
- Subhash Chandra Bose left Germany on 8th Feb 1943 and reached Tokyo on 13th June 1943.
- Ras Bihari Bose organised a conference in Tokyo in March 1942 and another conference in Bangkok in June, 1942.
- Out of these conferences was born the **Indian Independence League** and it was decided to hand over the command of INA to S.C. Bose.
- The command of INA was handed over to S.C. Bose on 7th July 1943 by Ras Bihari Bose in Singapore.
- On 21st October 1943 S.C. Bose set up interim government of free India in Singapore in which H.C. Chatterjee (Finance), M.A. Aiyar (Information and Broadcasting) and Laxmi Swaminathan (Women's department) were main ministers. He set up headquarters at Singapore and later on the headquarters was shifted to Rangoon.
- Andaman and Nicobar were given to S.C. Bose by the Japanese on 6th November 1943 and they were renamed **Shahid and Swaraj** respectively.
- S.C. Bose established four brigades of INA. These were **Rani Jhansi Regiment, Subhash Regiment, Nehru Regiment and Gandhi Regiment**.
- S.C. Bose used the word Rashtrapita (Father of Nation) for Gandhiji for the first time on 6th July 1944 in address to India on Azad Hind Radio.
- Attacked India through the mountainous areas Burma in Feb. 4, 1944.
- Defeat of Japan shattered all hopes of Indian National Army and its attempt to launch a military attack on British India failed. Indian National Army had to surrender May 1945 after the defeat of Japan.
- Trail of Indian National Army soldiers was held at Red Fort in Aug. 1945.
- Some prominent INA officers put on trial were - Gen. Shah Nawaz, Gurdial Singh Dhillon and Prem Sehgal etc.
- Congress declared its support to INA soldiers at Bombay session in Sept. 1945.
- Congress formed INA defence Committee under the leadership of **Bhulabhai Desai**. Tej Bahadur Sapru, K.N. Katju, J.L. Nehru and Asaf Ali were other members of INA defence Committee.
- Gen. Shah Nawaz, Gurdial Singh Dhillon and Prem Sehgal were awarded death punishment but the British Indian Government had to set INA soldiers free after huge public uproar.

TOPIC

9 CIRCUMSTANCES LEADING TO PARTITION OF INDIA

THE MUSLIM LEAGUE

- The success of the Muslim deputation that waited upon the viceroy at Shimla enthused the Muslims to start a separate political organisation of their own.
- Consequently on 31st December, 1906 the Muslim League was formed at Dacca.
- The object of the League was defined as follows :
 - To promote among the Muslims of India feeling of loyalty to the British Government.
 - To protect and advance the political rights and interests of the Muslims of India.
 - To prevent the rise among the Muslims of India of any feelings of hostility towards other communities.
- The first conference of the All India Muslim League was held at Amritsar under the Presidentship of Sir Syed Ali Imam.
- Mr. Jinnah for many years had been an opponent of the League and in the Allahabad Session of the Congress in 1910 he moved a resolution condemning the system of communal representation.
- Maulana Muhammad Ali started an English paper Comrade and an Urdu paper Hamdard to propagate his anti League views. Maulana Azad also brought out a paper Al Hilal from Calcutta to serve as the mouthpiece of his nationalist views.
- Lord John Elphinstone. , Governor of Bombay (1853 – 60) wrote in a minute Divide et Impera was the old Roman motto and it should be ours.
- Sir John Strachey, another eminent British civilian wrote the existence side by side of hostile creeds among the Indian people is one of the strong points in our political position in India.
- Until the seventies of the 19th century it suited the Imperial interest to support the Hindus and they did it. The early British economic and educational policies benefited the Hindus more than the Muslims. The British looked upon the Muslims as Chief conspirators in the Revolt of 1857. The Wahabi movement confirmed their suspicion. The British Government deliberately adopted the policy of suppressing the Muslims.
- However a change in British policy is perceptible towards the 1870s. The Hindus politically more advanced than the Muslims, demanded more share for Indians in higher services, agitated for grant of political rights, introduction of

representative government etc. The Hindu posed a series menace to the stability if British rule in India than the politically economically and educationally backward Muslims. This marled the beginning of a change in British policy towards the two communities.

- The Anglo –Indian Bureaucracy which worked at the grass roots of British administration in India worked for a Change in British policy. W.W. Hunter’s book **The Indian Mussalman** (published in 1871) described the Muslims to weak for rebellion and pleaded for a change of official attitude towards the Muslim community.

- Mr. Theodore Beck the first British Principal of the newly started M. A. O. College at Aligarh played a notable role in mobilising Muslim opinion and influencing British policy towards the Muslims.

SIR SYED AHMAD KHAN

- Syed Ahmad Khan started his political career as an advocate of Hindu Muslim amity. He described the Hindus and the Muslims as two eyes of a beautiful bride i.e. India. **In a speech delivered in 1884 he said that Do you not inhabit the same land, remember that the words Hindu and Mohammadan are only meant for religious distinction- otherwise all persons whether Hindu or Mohammadan even the Christians who reside in this country are all in this particular respect belonging to one and the same nation.**

- Addressing a Punjab Hindu and added I am therefore sorry that you do not regard me as a Hindu. In a speech delivered at Gurdaspur in 1884 Sir Syed Said, We should try to become one heart and soul and act in unison. If untied we can support each other if not the effect of one against the other would tend to the destruction and downfall of both.

- But later he changed his views to become a staunch opponent of the Indian National Congress he fell into line with the British Imperialists. On 16 March 1888 in his speech at Meerut he said that “the Hindu and Muslims were not only two nations but as two warring nations who could never lead a common political life should ever the British quit India”.

- The three English Principals of the M. A. O. College i.e. Back, Morrison and Archbold have the pro- British and anti Hindu bias to the Aligarh Movement. The Aligarh Movement worked to instil into the minds f the Muslims a spirit of loyalty towards the British Crown and worked consciously and deliberately to keep them away from the main stream of Indian political life.

- In August 1888 Syed Ahmed Khan set up the United Indian patriotic

Association with the avowed object of countering the congress propaganda and policy in England and in India and to wean away people from The Congress.

- This was followed by **Muhammadan Anglo Oriental Defence Association** of Upper India in 1893 to keep the Muslims aloof from political agitation and to strengthen British rule in India.

THE SHIMLA DEPUTATION (1 OCTOBER , 1906)

- Inspired by Principal Archbold of M.A.O. College, Aligarh, Aga Khan waited in a deputation on Lord Minto at Shimla on 1 October, 1906. The Deputation was described by Maulana Mohammad Ali as a command performance.

- Mr. Archbold prepared the draft of the Muslim Address acted as a liaison between the Government and Muslim leaders. The Deputation expressed sentiments of loyalty to the British Crown, avowed grateful appreciation of the British Government's policy of introducing further reforms but expressed the apprehension that if the principle of election was introduced without conceding reservation of seats for the Muslims it would prove detrimental to their interests. The Deputations demanded the reservation of seats for the Muslim Community not only on the basis of their population but on the basis of their political importance and their services in the defence of the Empire. Lord Minto gladly accepted the Muslim demand for separate Communal electorates. He was appreciated by Lord Morley the Secretary of State.

FOUNDATION OF THE MUSLIM LEAGUE, 30 DECEMBER 1906

- In the wake of the fateful Shimla Deputation the Muslim leaders mooted the idea of a Central Muhammadan Association to look exclusively after the interests of the Muslim Community. The All India Muslim League was formally inaugurated on 30 December 1906 with the following aims and objectives –

- To Promote among Indian Muslims feelings of loyalty towards the British Government and to remove any misconception that may arise, as to the intentions of the Government with regard to any of its measures.

- To protect the political and other rights of the Indian Muslims and to place their needs and aspirations before the Government in temperate language

- So far as possible without prejudice to the objects mentioned under (a) and (b) to promote friendly relations between Muslims and other communities of India.

- The true political ideas of the League are apparent from Nawab Waqar-ul Mulk's speech delivered at Aligarh. The Nawab said God forbid if the British rule disappears from India. Hindus will lord over it and we will be in constant danger of our life, property and honour. The only way for the Muslims to escape

this danger is to help in the continuance of the British rule. If the Muslims are heartily with the British. Then that rule is bound to endure let the Muslims consider themselves as a British army ready to shed their blood and sacrifice their lives for the British crown.

- For about a decade after 1913 the Muslim League came under the influence of progressive Muslim leaders like Maulana Mohammad Ali, Maulana Mazhar-ul-Haq, Syed Wazir Hussain, Hasan Imam and M.A. Jinnah (then a nationalist).
- From 1920 to 1923 the activities of the Muslim League remained suspended.
- The appointment of the Simon Commission (1927- 30) and the Round Table Conferences at London (1930- 32) that followed again brought the Muslim league into activity, by 1934 M.A. Jinnah, now a communalist, became its undisputed leader. The Communal Award (1932) of the British Government further widened the gulf between the Hindus and the Muslims.

CONGRESS MINISTRIES AND THE MUSLIM LEAGUE, (1937– 39)

- The first elections for the provincial legislative councils under the Government of India Act 1935 were held in 1937. The Muslim League contested the elections to various legislative bodies but achieve moderate success. Out of the 485 reserved Muslim seats, the League could capture only 110 seats. Even in the Muslim Majority provinces of the Punjab, the North, West frontier province Bengal and Sind the League was trounced by rival Muslim parties. The Congress party gained an absolute majority in Bombay, Madras, U.P., Bihar, Orissa and Central Provinces and was the largest single party in the N.W.F.P. The Congress decided to accept office in July 1937. The Muslim league hoped to form coalition ministries with the Congress in Provinces like Bengal, Assam and the Punjab and desired the Congress to take Muslim League Ministers in U.P. and Bihar. The Congress consistent with its principles and policies and being proud of its non- communal outlook and policies liberation of the country and amelioration of the condition of the masses advised Muslim League members to sign the congress pledge and become its members if they desired to accept responsibilities of office.
- Mr. Jinnah interpreted these moves of the Congress as a calculated policy against the Muslim League. He levelled sweeping and fantastic allegations against the congress ministries, dubbed the Congress a Hindu organisation out to crush all minorities. He came to the conclusion that the Muslim could expect neither justice.
- League appointed a committee under the chairmanship of the Raja of Pirpur to report on the oppressions of the Muslims in what it called Hindu Congress

Provinces. The Pirpur Report fabricated cases of alleged horrible atrocities perpetrated on the Muslims by the Hindus. The report also observed the conduct of the Congress Government seems to substantiate the theory that there is something like identity of purpose between the Congress and the Hindu Mahasabha. We Muslims feel that notwithstanding the non-communal professions of the Congress and the desire of a few Congressmen to follow a truly national policy a vast majority of the Congress members are Hindus who look forward after many centuries of British and Muslim rule to the reestablishment of a purely Hindu Raj.

- The Muslim League observed a Day of Deliverance and Thanks giving on 22nd October 1929 when the Congress ministries resigned over the war issue.

THE TWO NATION THEORY AND THE PAKISTAN MOVEMENT

- The poet and political thinker Mohammad Iqbal is thought to be the originator of the idea of a separate Muslim State for the Indian Muslims and is believed to have given the necessary emotional content to the movement. Inspired by the spirit of Pan-Islamism Iqbal declared at the **Allahabad session** of the All India Muslim League held in 1930 that “I have no hesitation in declaring that if the principle that the Indian Muslim is entitled to full and free development on the lines of his own culture and tradition in his own Indian homeland is recognised as the basis of a permanent communal settlement. I would like to see the Punjab, North West Frontier Self government within the British Empire or without the British Empire. The formation of a consolidated North-West Indian Muslim State appears to me to be the final destiny of the Muslims at least of North West India”.
- The idea of a separate homeland for Muslims to be called Pakistan took a definite shape in the mind of a young undergraduate at Cambridge Rahmat Ali. He Visualized the Punjab, N.W.F.P. (also called Afghan province), Kashmir, Sind and Baluchistan as the national home of the Indian Muslims and he coined the word Pakistan in 1933. The word Pakistan was formed by taking the initials of the initials of the first four and the last of the fifth.
- The most unequivocal declaration of the Hindus and Muslims as desperate nationalities was made by M. A. Jinnah at the Lahore session of the League in March 1940, They (Hindu and Muslims) are not religions in the strict sense of the word but are in fact different and distinct social orders, and it is a dream that Hindus and Muslims can ever evolve a common Nationality. The Hindus and Muslims belong to two different religious philosophies, social customs, and literatures. To yoke together two such nations under a single State one of a

numerical minority and the other as a Majority must lead to growing discontent and final destruction of any fabric that may be so built up for the government of such State.

- Muslim League demanded the partition of India and passed a resolution that “it is the considered view of this session of the AIML that no constitutional plan would be workable in this country or acceptable to the Moslems unless it is designed on the following basic principle, Viz, that geographically contiguous units are demarcated into regions which should be so constituted with such territorial readjustments as may be necessary that the areas in which the Moslems are numerically in a majority as in the North – Western and Eastern zones of India should be grouped to constitute independent states in which the constituent units shall be autonomous and sovereign”.
- This resolution did not specify the areas in the proposed state of Pakistan. In 1942 Mr. Jinnah explained to professor Coupland that Pakistan would be a Muslim State or States comprising N.W.F.P., the Punjab and Sind on the one side of India and Bengal on the other. He did not mention Baluchistan and Assam nor did he claim Kashmir and Hyderabad. However in a Memorandum to the Cabinet Mission on 12 May 1946, the Muslim League demanded the six Muslim provinces (Punjab N.W.F.P., Baluchistan Sind Bengal Assam) shall be grouped together as one Group.

THE HINDU MAHASABHA

- In 1910 the leading Hindus of Allahabad decided to organise an all India Hindu Mahasabha. In 1911 the Punjab Hindu Mahasabha organised a Hindu conference at Amritsar.
- The Hindu Mahasabha set up its headquarters at Haridwar and used to organise the Akhil Bhartiya Hindu Conference at Haridwar on the occasion of important Hindu Fairs.
- The Hindu Mahasabha was organised to check the process of converting Hindus into Islam and Christianity to reconvert the already converted Hindus by organising Shuddhi and Sangathan.
- Initially Hindu Mahasabha claimed to be a socio –cultural organisation but under the leadership of V.D. Savarkar, who became the President of the Hindu Mahasabha in 1938 and was re- elected again and again, the Mahasabha developed a political programme.
- Savarkar popularized the concept of Hindu Rashtra. He maintained that India was a land of Hindus having only one nation. The Muslims must accept their position as a minority community in a single Indian state. But he promised just

treatment and equal political rights on the basis of one man one vote to Muslims. On the question of a national language Savarkar upheld that according to democratic practices the language of the majority must prevail. Against the Muslim League's demand for Pakistan it raised the slogan of Akhand Hindustan.

- After the death of V.D. Savarkar, Dr. S.P. Mukherjee became the leader of the Hindu, Mahasabha and imparted it a more nationalist outlook.

DIRECT ACTION DAY

- The Muslim League without its acceptance of the Cabinet Mission plan and observed 16th August 1946 as Direct Action Day. The League engineered communal riots in Bengal U. P. Bombay, the Punjab. Sind and the N. W. F. P.
- In the Interim Government formed on 2nd September 1946 under the leadership of Mr. J. L. Nehru the Muslim League refused to join in beginning but it later agreed to join on 26 October 1946. The intention of League was not to help in smooth working of the government but to wreck it from inside. Later on Muslim league refused to join the Constituent Assembly also.

TOPIC

INDIA 1947–64

INDIA AND SOVIET UNION

- Mrs. Vijayalakshmi Pandit, Dr. S. Radhakrishnan and after him Mr. K. P. S. Menon served as Indian Ambassadors to the Soviet Union.
- Indo – Soviet Trade Agreement was concluded on 2nd December, 1953.
- Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru and Mr. Bulganin, the Prime Minister of USSR issued a Joint Statement on 23rd June, 1955, affirming their profound faith in the five principles of Panchasheel.
- The Indo – Soviet Treaty of Peace, Friendship and Co – operation was concluded at New Delhi on 9th August, 1971.
- With the help of the Soviet Union, India has started some big projects like the steel plants at Bhilai and Bokaro and the heavy electrical plant at Haridwar.

INDIA AND UNITED STATES

- In the background of complicated world politics the relations between India and the United States have fluctuated heavily over the years. The United States announced assistance to India during the Sino – India conflict. But differences between the two countries continued because of certain factors, one of these being the support and military aid which the United States gave to Pakistan.

INDIA AND PAKISTAN

- On 5th August, 1965 a large number of Pakistani infiltrated into Kashmir. They included regular army personals and militias and their object was to incite the people of Kashmir into rebellion against the Government.
- The Indian security forces immediately started mopping up operations, and it was soon found that the number of infiltrators was not less than 3,000 and probably more. They had begun entering into Kashmir territory long before August and had established secret depots of arms.
- On 27th August regular Pakistani troops crossed the Cease – Fire Line (CFL) but retired after a heavy clash with Indian forces.

- On the first day of September, 1965, Pakistan launched a major offensive. The question was taken up by the Security Council of U.N.O., which passed a resolution asking both India and Pakistan to cease all hostile operations. In obedience to this resolution, there was a cease – fire on both sides on 23rd September and the armies of both India and Pakistan occupied the line which they held on that date. But in spite of a number of observers (military personnel of neutral countries) sent by the Security Council, Pakistan did not cease to make minor violations of the cease–fire agreement against which India lodged strong protest.
- In order to restore cordial relations between the two countries the Prime Minister of the U.S.S.R., **Mr. Kosygin**, arranged a meeting between the Prime Minister of India and the President of Pakistan, which took place at Tashkent in Russian Turkistan, early in January, 1966. A mutual agreement of peace and friendship between India and Pakistan was signed.
- Almost immediately the Indian Prime Minister, Lal Bahadur Shastri suddenly died at 1 a.m. on 11th January, 1966.

INDIA AND CHINA

- The basic tenets of India's foreign policy were outlined by Nehru in his broadcast to the nation on September 7, 1946.
- The Communist party led by Mao-tse-Tung emerged successful in Chinese civil war and declared the establishment of the People's Republic of China on 1st October 1949.
- India was the first non-communist country to recognise the People's Republic of China on 30th December 1949. India supported China during Korean War (1950-53) also.
- The Tibet issue proved to be a major irritant in Indo-China relations. Tibet was an autonomous region within China at the time of Indian independence. During British rule India enjoyed some rights and special privileges in Tibet like an agent in Lhasa, trade agencies in Gyantse and Yantung, post & telegraph offices on the trade route to Gyantse and a small military escort for their protection. The independent India inherited these privileges.
- On 25th October 1950 China suddenly invaded Tibet and forced her ruler Dalai Lama to sign a treaty by which the autonomy of Tibet was replaced by full-fledged sovereignty of China. The Indian government opposed this.
- The Panchasheel agreement was signed between India and China (By P.M.

Nehru and Chau en Lai) on 20th April 1954 at Delhi.

THE PRINCIPLES OF PANCHASHEEL

- The five principles of Panchsheel are:

Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty;

Non – Aggression

Non – interference in each other's internal affairs;

Equality and mutual benefit;

Peaceful co – existence.

- The privileges enjoyed by India in Tibbet were unilaterally abandoned by India in order to have warm and friendly relations with China after signing Panchsheel agreement.

- In June 1954 the Chinese Premier Chau-En-Lai visited India and belief in Panchasheel was reiterated.

- In July 1958 China published some maps claiming 1,32,090 sq. km. area of India.

- In 1959 the Tibetans revolted against Chinese rule. This led to Chinese invasion of Tibet and flight of Dalai Lama. China held India responsible for this and Chinese forces invaded Himalayan regions on India. India condemned this but in spite of Indian opposition Chinese forces captured 31,000 sq. km. of Indian land. This act of China completely disregarded the Sino-Indian agreement of 1954 and the ten principles of Bandung Conference (1955).

- On 8th September 1962 Chinese forces invaded India.

- V.K. Krishna Menon was the defence minister of India at this time.

- On 20th October 1962 about 30000 Chinese soldiers attacked NEFA (North East Frontier Agency) situated in north of Laddakh and Assam.

- On 21 November 1962 China unilaterally declared cease fire.

- On 1st December 1962 Indian PM J.L. Nehru wrote to Chinese PM Chou-En-Lai and asked him to restore the boundaries existing prior to 8th September 1962 so that peaceful atmosphere could be created for holding the talks.

- Nehru wrote a communication to the most of the countries of the world to seek support during this conflict and received messages of sympathy and support from 63 countries.

- To evolve a peaceful settlement of the conflict six non-aligned countries namely Ceylon, Burma, Cambodia, Indonesia, Ghana and United Arab Republic

met in conference at Colombo.

- Colombo Conference was held during 10-12 Dec 1962 to resolve Indo-China conflict. Though India agreed to abide by the Colombo declaration, China refused to accept them. China is still possessing 36,260 Sq. km. of Indian Territory in Laddakh and 5,180 Sq. km. of Indian Territory in NEFA.
- Even after Indo-China war India supported the inclusion the People's Republic of China in UN Security Council.
- In July 1976 India sent her ambassador to China and China also sent her ambassador to India.

INDIA AND NAM

- First Asian conference was held at **Delhi** in March 1947.
- Second Asian conference was held at **Delhi** in January 1949 to discuss the issue of Dutch occupation of Indonesia. 19 nations participated in it. This conference asked that Indonesia should be freed by 1st January 1950.
- In May 1950 Conference of Asian nations was held at **Bongui**, Philippines to enhance cooperation among Asian countries.
- In Dec 1954 Conference of Asian nations was held at **Bogor** to discuss Sino – Tibet issue.
- In April 1955 a Conference of Afro-Asian nations was held at **Bandung**, Indonesia. This conference was organised by India, Myanmar and Indonesia together. At this conference the principles of Panchsheel were emphasised upon and it was felt that Afro-Asian nations should enhance mutual cooperation for their socioeconomic development. The NAM movement emerged out of this conference.
- On 20th September 1961 Indian PM J.L. Nehru, Col. Nasir (the president of Egypt) and Marshal Tito of Yugoslavia met at Belgrade and this meeting resulted in formation of NAM.
- First NAM summit was held at **Belgrade**, Yugoslavia in September 1961. It was decided here NAM summit will be held once in three years. 25 countries sent their representatives and three countries sent their observers in this conference.
- Some standards/ conditions were prescribed for any nation to become member of NAM. These included –
- The nation should believe in Non Alignment and the policy of peaceful coexistence.

- The nation should support anti colonial struggle of nations.
- The nation should not be a part of any power block.
- The nation should not have bilateral military treaty with any super power.
- The nation should not allow any military station of any power block on its land.
- The Second NAM summit was held at **Cairo**, Egypt on 5 October 1964. 46 countries sent their representatives and 10 countries sent their observers in this conference.
- The Third NAM summit was held at **Lusaka**, Zambia in September 1970. 54 countries sent their representatives and 9 countries sent their observers in this conference.

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA

- The Planning Commission of India came into being on 15th March 1950 on the recommendations of “**Committee on Economic Affairs**”. The Planning Commission was set up to prepare a plan for the most effective and balanced utilization of the country’s resources.
- In 1934 Sir M. Vishveshwarya (Diwan of Mysore) raised the issue of planned economic development for the first time in his book “**Planned Economy for India**”. He was instrumental in the construction of Krishnaraj Sagar dam and Bhadravati Iron works.
- National Planning Committee was formed in 1938 under the chairmanship of Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru.
- The Department of Planning and Development was established in March 1944.
- The **Gandhian Plan** was put forward by Srimannarayan in 1944.
- In 1944 eight industrialist of Bombay prepared a 15 year development plan titled as “**A plan for economic development of India**”. This is also known as **Bombay Plan**. This plan aimed at doubling the per capita income of India from Rs. 65 per annum to Rs. 130 per annum.
- The **People’s Plan** was put forward by M.N. Roy in April 1945.
- On 1st January 1949 the RBI was nationalised.
- In January 1950 Jaiprakash Narayan put forward **Sarvodaya Plan**.
- The first five year plan began on 1st April 1951. This plan gave priority to **Agricultural development**.
- The multi purpose projects like **Bhakra Nangal**, **Damodar Ghati** and **Hirakund** began during the first five year plan.
- On 6th August 1952 the **National development Council** was set up.

- **Community Development Programme** was introduced in 1952 for rural upliftment – it was based on the concept of self – reliance and popular participation.
- The second five year plan (1956-61) gave priority to **Industrial development**.
- **Durgapur steel plant-West Bengal** (with the assistance of Britain), **Raurkela steel plant-** Orissa (with the assistance of Germany) and **Bhilai steel plant-Chhattisgarh** (with the assistance of USSR) were established during the second five year plan.
- **Bokaro steel plant** was established with the assistance of USSR during the fourth five year plan.
- LIC was established on 1st September 1956.
- The **green revolution** was initiated in 1966 with the aim to attain self sufficiency in the production of food grains.
- Bhoodan (land gift) movement was launched by Acharya Vinoba Bhave. In 1951 he was offered the first land gift in a small village in the Nalgonda district of the Telangana area of the Hyderabad State.
- On July 19th, 1969 by an ordinance the President of India nationalized **fourteen** major Indian Private commercial banks. The Banking Companies (acquisition and Transfer of undertakings) Bill was introduced on 25th July and passed by both Houses of the Parliament on 8th August. The Bill became law on 9th August, when the President gave his assent to it.
- By an Act of the Parliament the Govt. took over the management of General Insurance Companies in 1971.
- In May, 1972, the government took over the ownership of 214 cooking coal mines and by the Coal Mines (taking over of management) Ordinance, promulgated on the 30th January, 1973, the Govt. took over the entire management of the 464 private non – coking coal mines.
- After Independence, Govt. announced its **first industrial policy** on 6th April, 1948. According to it Industries were divided roughly into four categories: (1) exclusive Govt. monopoly, (2) Govt. controlled sphere, (3) Industries controlled and regulated by Govt., (4) Private sphere under general governmental control.
- To promote educational activities among the student and non – student youth the Ministry of Education was redesignated on 14th February, 1969 as the **Ministry of Education and Youth Welfare**.
- The Kothari Commission recommended that some type of Social and national service should be made an integral part of education at all stages.
- Inaugurating a seminar at New Delhi on 9th March, 1969, the then Union

Education Minister, Dr. V. K. R. V. Rao, announced that the Union Govt. proposes to draw up an action – oriented national programme of youth services.

- The Workmen's Compensation Act was amended in 1959 removing the distinction between an adult and a minor for the purpose of payment of compensation.
- According to the Trade Unions Amendment Act of 1948 the employers have to recognize Trade Unions under the orders of a Labour Court.
- In December, 1966, the National Labour Commission was appointed under the chairmanship of Mr. **P. B. Gajendragadkar**. In its Report, which came out in August, 1969, certain salutary recommendations were made to improve the relations between the employers and the employees.

MISCELLANEOUS FACTS 1947 – 1964

- Mehr Chand Mahajan was the prime minister of J&K in 1947.
- V.P Menon was made the secretary of the state department.
- V.P Menon drafted Instrument of accession for states.
- K.P.S Menon was elected chairman of the United Nations commission at Korea in 1947.
- C. Rajagopalachari became the first Indian governor of West Bengal after independence.
- Hyderabad was the largest native state. Ittihad – ul – Muslimin was a communal Muslim organization in Hyderabad whose Para – military wing was Razakars. This was headed by Kasim Rizvi.
- Operation Polo was launched by Indian forces to ensure the accession of Hyderabad state with Indian Union.
- Abdul Kalam Azad became first education minister, C.D. Deshmukh became first finance minister.
- Atomic Energy Commission was set up in 1948 with Homi J. Bhabha as chairman.
- A University Commission was appointed under the chairmanship of S. RadhaKrishnan in 1948 – it submitted its report in 1949 – it recommended establishment of rural universities on the model of Visva Bharti and Jamia Milia – it recommended for instruction in mother tongue.
- In April, 1950 Nehru – Liaqat Pact was signed to settle the issue of protection of minorities.
- First IIT was set up at Kharagpur in 1952.

- Balwant Rai Mehta Committee was set up in 1957 to review the working of CDM – it recommended for democratic decentralization. On its recommendation Panchayati Raj was introduced in 1959 at Nagaur (Rajasthan)
- Scientific policy resolution was passed in 1958.
- G.C. Nanda was the home minister who acted as the PM after the death of Nehru in 1964.
- J.L. Nehru died on May 27, 1964.
- Verrier Elwin was the greatest influence behind Govt's Tribal Policy.
- Nehru's tribal policy was to integrate the tribal into Indian mainstream at the same time maintaining their conspicuous identity.
- Shah Nawaj Bhutto was the Diwan of Junagarh.
- Govt. of India had accepted privy pursed free of taxes of the rulers, their titles and certain privileges against their signing instrument of succession.
- Asian Relations Conference was held in 1947 at New Delhi to assert Asian independence.
- Second Asian relations conference was held in December, 1948 to protest against Dutch re-colonization of Indonesia.
- Asian Leaders Conference was convened in Colombo in 1954.
- Afro – Asian Conference was called by India and other powers at Bandung, Indonesia.
- This conference was a precursor to Belgrade non – aligned conference.
- In Indo – Pak relations one important issue was the issue of the property of persons displaced. The value of Hindus property (those who left Pakistan) was Rs. three thousand crore whereas the value of the property left by Muslims in India was Rs. three hundred crore.

CHRONOLOGY OF IMPORTANT EVENTS

1947

- Asian relations conference was held at New Delhi.
- Mountbatten appointed first governor – general of free India.
- Pak forces invaded Kashmir.
- Kashmir acceded to India (27 October).

1948

- Bomb explosion in the assembly of Gandhiji in Birla House in Delhi (20 January).
- Mahatma Gandhi was shot – dead by Nathu Ram Godse (30 Jan).

- New law of congress party – the member of this party can not be he member of other party. Because of this

issue socialists left the party against this decision of Acharya Narendra dev. (march).

- C. Rajgopalachari became first Indian governor general of independent India in place of Lord Mountbatten

(21 June).

- Kashmir dispute was presented in United Nations by India (July).
- Death of General Muhammad Ali Zinna, first governor general of Pakistan (11 September).
- Hyderabad province merged in Indian federation (17 September).
- There was a cease fire agreement between India & Pakistan (13 December).
- RSS was banned.

1949

- Cease – fire in Kashmir (1 Jan.).
- General K.M. Kariappa became first Indian Commander – in – Chief (15 Jan).
- 2nd Asian relations conference in new Delhi (20 Jan).
- Adoption of Indian constitution (26 Nov.).

1950

- India became Sovereign republic (26 Jan.).
- Dr. Rajendra Prasad became the first president of the Indian republic (26 Jan).
- Constitution of planning commission.
- Sardar Patel died.
- Diplomatic relation established with China.
- India elected the temporary member of UN Security Council.
- The accession of small states in Indian federation was completed.

1951

- Delhi was the venue of Asian games (4-11 march).
- First five year plan launched (1 April).
- First general election in independent India concluded and Congress came into power.
- ‘India agreement’ was signed with France to hand over Chandra Nagar (2 Feb.).
- First amendment in the constitution (18 June).
- First Gandhian Thakkar Bappa died.

- First census of independent India.
- Foundation of “Jansangh Party” under the Presidentship – Shyama Prasad Mukherjee (11 Oct).
- Kriplani left congress and founded ‘Kisan Majdoor Praja party’ (June).
- Kriplani emphasised on the foundation of ‘Sarvodaya society’.

1952

- Dr. Rajendra Prasad elected as the president of India.
- Second amendment in the constitution.
- First general election in India.
- first meeting of the first Lok Sabha (12 may).
- “Congress Samajwadi party” merged with “Kisan Majdoor Praja party” and emergence of new party “Praja

socialist party” president – Kriplani, General, Secretary – Ashok Mehta. This was largest opposition party (September).

- Death of Potti Sri Ramulu when he was observing fast for the demand of separate Telugu state (16 December)
- Community development programme launched (2 October).

1953

- Sheikh Muhammad Abdullah was dismissed from the Prime Ministership and arrested. Bakshi Gulam

Muhammad became prime minister of Jammu – Kashmir (8 August).

- Separate Andhra Pradesh state was founded on linguistic basis.
- Decline of Hindu Mahasabha and the development of Jan Sangh.
- Decline of ‘Ram Rajya council’.
- The political activities of Muslim league took place in Kerala & Tamilnadu region.
- States Reorganisation Commission in 1953 under Fazl Ali. K.M. Pannikar and H.N. Kunzru. **1954**

- Panchsheel agreement was signed between India and China during the visit of Chinese prime minister **Chou en lie** (28 June).

- Jai Prakash Narayan isolated himself from active politics.

1955

- In the Awadi Session (Madras) of Indian national congress, the aim of socialist society was accepted (21 June).

- Visit of J.L Nehru to USSR (June).
- Resignation of Ram Manohar Lohia from “Praja Socialist Party” and the foundation of “Socialist Party”. **1956**
- Nationalization of Life Insurance (19 Jan).
- Indian states reorganized on linguistic basis. Organisation of 14 states and 6 union territory (1st November).
- Second five year plan inaugurated.
- CPI at its Palghat session accepted that India had won independence in 1947.
- France signed bilateral agreement to hand over **Pondicheri, Car Nicobar&Mahi** to India.
- Death of Narendra Deo.

1957

- Second general election completed. Congress party was in majority in all the states except Kerala.
- Nehru took the oath of the prime ministership.
- Coins of decimal system came into fashion (1april).
- Communist ministry was formed under the leadership of EMS Namboodripad in Kerala (5 April).
- Second time Dr. Rajendra Prasad elected as president.

1958

- Death of Maulana Abul Kalam Azad (22 Feb.).
- Metric system of weights and measures started (1 October).

1959

- Death of Pattabhi Sitaramaiya (17 December).
- Communist government in Kerala dismissed.
- Dalai Lama escaped to India.
- Swatantra party formed by Rajgopalachari, Minoo Masani, N.G, Ranga, K.M Munshi. This had Rightist approach and opposed the approach of the congress.

1960

- Formation of Maharashtra and Gujarat states after the division of Bombay states (1 may).
- Kriplani left the “Praja Socialist Party”.
- Chou –Nehru meeting.
- Indo – Pak Indus water treaty signed between Nehru & Ayub khan at Rawalpindi. Mediation by **Ugin Black & Elfi**.

1961

- Third five – year plan launched.
- Goa, Daman and Diu liberated.
- China occupied some part of Indian Territory.
- Census made in whole of the country including Jammu – Kashmir.
- Queen Elizabeth of Britain visited India.
- Death of Pt. Govind Ballav pant (7 march).

1962

- Third general election in India. Congress came into power in all the states and union territories.
- Nagaland was created.
- Dr. Radha Krishan was elected as the president (13 may).
- China invaded India (20 October).
- Emergency was declared.
- Death of D.K Karve (8 November).
- Unilateral cease –fire by China (21 November).
- Goa became union territory.
- Inauguration of first oil refinery in Nunmati (Assam).
- Death of Purushottam Das Tondon.

1963

- Death of former president Dr. Rajendra Prasad (21 Feb.).
- The construction of Bakhara – Nangal dam was completed (23 Oct.).
- Nagaland was given the status of a state (1 Dec.).
- Death of Maithilisharan Gupta (12 Dec.).
- Parliament accepted the use of English as a national language after 1965.

1964

- Death of Jawaharlal Nehru (27 may).
- Guljari Lal Nanda became working prime minister.
- Lal Bahadur Shastri became the prime minister.
- split in CPI and formation of Indian communist party (Marxist) (8 September).